

Copyright Information

Copyright Notice

Copyright © 1997 - 2012 Abroham Neal LLC All Rights Reserved.

Portions of the software described in this document Copyright © Microsoft Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The software described in this document is furnished under a single user [license agreement](#). The software may be used only in accordance with the terms of that agreement. No part of this document and any of the files furnished as part of this software may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the written permission of Scientific Solutions, Inc.

DXbase is a trademark of Abroham Neal LLC.

PacketCluster is a trademark of Pavillion Software.

License Agreement

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR Scientific Solutions, Inc. software

By installing the SOFTWARE PRODUCT, you acknowledge that you have reviewed and accepted the terms of this End User License Agreement.

IMPORTANT—READ CAREFULLY: This Scientific Solutions, Inc. End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Scientific Solutions, Inc. for the Scientific Solutions, Inc. software product "DXbase 2007, which includes computer software and associated media and printed materials, and may include "online or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE PRODUCT" or "SOFTWARE). By installing, copying, or otherwise using the SOFTWARE PRODUCT, you agree to be bound by the terms of this EULA. If you do not agree to the terms of this EULA, promptly return the unused SOFTWARE PRODUCT to the place from which you obtained it for a full refund.

SOFTWARE PRODUCT LICENSE

The SOFTWARE PRODUCT is protected by copyright laws and international copyright treaties, as well as other intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE PRODUCT is licensed, not sold.

1 GRANT OF LICENSE. This EULA grants you the following rights:

- Software. You may install and use one copy of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT, or in its place, any prior version for the same operating system, on a single computer. The primary user of the computer on which the SOFTWARE PRODUCT is installed may make a second copy for his or her exclusive use on either a home or portable computer.
- Storage/Network Use. You may also store or install a copy of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT on a storage device, such as a network server, used only to install or run the SOFTWARE PRODUCT on your other computers over an internal network; however, you must acquire and dedicate a license for each separate computer on which the SOFTWARE PRODUCT is installed or run from the storage device. A license for the SOFTWARE PRODUCT may not be shared or used concurrently on different computers.

2 DESCRIPTION OF OTHER RIGHTS AND LIMITATIONS.

- Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation, and Disassembly. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the SOFTWARE PRODUCT, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- Separation of Components. The SOFTWARE PRODUCT is licensed as a single product. Its component parts may not be separated for use on more than one computer.
- Rental. You may not rent or lease the SOFTWARE PRODUCT.
- Software Transfer. You may not sell or transfer the SOFTWARE PRODUCT to any other person or entity.
- Termination. Without prejudice to any other rights, Scientific Solutions, Inc. may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA. In such event, you must destroy all copies of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT and all of its component parts.

3 UPGRADES. If the SOFTWARE PRODUCT is an upgrade from another product, whether from Scientific Solutions, Inc. or another supplier, you may use or transfer the SOFTWARE PRODUCT only in conjunction with that upgraded product, unless you destroy the upgraded product. If the SOFTWARE PRODUCT is an upgrade of a Scientific Solutions, Inc.

product, you now may use that upgraded product only in accordance with this EULA. If the SOFTWARE PRODUCT is an upgrade of a component of a package of software programs that you licensed as a single product, the SOFTWARE PRODUCT may be used and transferred only as part of that single product package and may not be separated for use on more than one computer.

4 COPYRIGHT. All title and copyrights in and to the SOFTWARE PRODUCT (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text, and “applets incorporated into the SOFTWARE PRODUCT), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT are owned by Scientific Solutions, Inc. or its suppliers. The SOFTWARE PRODUCT is protected by copyright laws and international treaty provisions. Therefore, you must treat the SOFTWARE PRODUCT like any other copyrighted material. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE PRODUCT. You may not copy or reproduce the CDROM disk. You may obtain a replacement CDROM in accordance with the Scientific Solutions, Inc. replacement policy which requires that you return the damaged CDROM for inspection. Replacements are not provided unless the original CDROM is furnished to Scientific Solutions, Inc.

5 DUAL-MEDIA SOFTWARE. You may receive the SOFTWARE PRODUCT in more than one medium. Regardless of the type or size of medium you receive, you may use only one medium that is appropriate for your single computer. You may not use or install the other medium on another computer. You may not loan, rent, lease, or otherwise transfer the other medium to another user, except as part of the permanent transfer (as provided above) of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT.

6 REGISTRATION. The SOFTWARE PRODUCT incorporates a registration process that is based on the amateur radio callsign(s) of the purchaser. The software will not allow any callsign(s) to be used except those that are provided as part of the purchaser's information at the time the purchase is made. Changes to the registered callsign(s) will be accepted for a nominal charge for a period of thirty (30) days following the release of an updated version to this software product.

LIMITED WARRANTY

LIMITED WARRANTY. Scientific Solutions, Inc. provides a free downloadable trial version of the software. The trial version allows the purchaser the opportunity to determine if the software will meet his/her requirements on his/her computer before it is purchased. Scientific Solutions, Inc. does not offer any warranty on this software product. It is sold "as is" with no implied or explicit warranty whatsoever. Some states and jurisdictions do not allow limitations on duration of an implied warranty, so the above limitation may not apply to you. To the extent allowed by applicable law, implied warranties on the SOFTWAREPRODUCT are limited to thirty (30) days.

RETURNS. Installation and use of the software product requires that the customer's computer hardware and other installed software must be in proper working condition and must comply with the minimum recommended requirements for use with this software product as stated by Scientific Solutions, Inc. Failure to comply with this requirement does not represent a breach by Scientific Solutions, Inc., and is expressly excluded from the terms of this limited warranty.

CUSTOMER REMEDIES. Scientific Solutions' and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at Scientific Solutions' option, either (a) return of the price paid, or (b) repair or replacement of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT that does not meet Scientific Solutions' Limited Warranty and which is returned to Scientific Solutions, Inc. with a copy of your receipt and authorization code issued by Scientific Solutions, Inc. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement SOFTWARE PRODUCT will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or seven (7) days, whichever is longer. Outside the United States, neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by Scientific Solutions, Inc. are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source. Customer must obtain a Return Merchandise Authorization (RMA) from Scientific Solutions, Inc. before returning any materials to Scientific Solutions, Inc. The RMA number must be clearly visible on the outside packaging of any material returned. Unsolicited returns and returns that do not contain an RMA number clearly visible will not be accepted.

PRODUCT TAMPERING. This software product contains logic, algorithms, and other designs that will contain the authorized user's identification. Any attempt to alter or otherwise circumvent the registration logic in this product could result in the software becoming unusable. All warranties are void if the registration process is modified. Scientific Solutions, Inc. may require that the registration files be provided for examination when an RMA request is made.

NO OTHER WARRANTIES. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, Scientific Solutions, Inc. AND ITS SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE PRODUCT. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS. YOU MAY HAVE OTHERS, WHICH VARY FROM STATE/JURISDICTION TO STATE/JURISDICTION.

NO LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL Scientific Solutions, Inc. OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, OR ANY OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE PRODUCT, EVEN IF Scientific Solutions, Inc. HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. BECAUSE SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, THE ABOVE LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

Internet and Packet Cluster Operation

Excluding DX spots

DXbase contains functionality that allows you to exclude a specific DX spot from appearing as needed. As new countries are spotted and appear in the DX Info window as a new one, it can be a nuisance when the same station, band, and mode continues to be alerted after you have already worked them. This can be true for

DXpeditions when you need them everywhere but after you work them on a particular band and mode, they continue to be flagged as needed.

The Exclude feature allows you to exclude a particular DX spot from being treated as needed. To invoke this feature, you click on an entry in the DX spot tab of the DX Info window and right click your mouse. Choose Exclude and this will mark this callsign, band, and mode so that future spots that match this criteria will no longer be treated as needed.

To view the entries that are on your Exclude, right click your mouse in the DX Info window and choose View Excludes. This will show you the list of all entries that are currently on your Exclude list. You can periodically delete entries that are no longer needed on the Exclude List.

In the Internet and VHF packet windows, when a DX spot arrives that is on your Exclude List, the entry will be marked with the letter “E on a black background in the status column of the VHF packet or Internet window. Entries that appear with the “E will not be loaded into your DX Info window.

Auto Lock of Scrolling

A feature is available that automatically locks updates and scrolling in the VHF packet, Internet, and DX Spot windows.

During periods of high volume DX spotting, it can become difficult to click on a particular DX spot to QSY the radio and so forth because entries scroll so fast. Sometimes when you click, you actually click the next spot because the one you intended to click has scrolled.

When autolock scrolling is enabled by using the main menu VIEW | Use Autoblock Updates is enabled, DXbase will recognize when your mouse cursor enters any of these three windows. It will automatically block further updates for a period of three seconds. After three seconds have elapsed, if there has been no mouse movement in these windows, the scroll locking is automatically removed and the windows scroll as normal.

The option is toggled on/off simply by clicking the VIEW | Use Autoblock Updates. A check mark will appear to the left of the menu item when it is enabled. The check will disappear when it is disabled.

During the time while locking was enabled, some spots will be held in queue. These will be displayed in the appropriate windows as soon as the next DX spot arrives. Therefore, with

Autoblock Updates enabled, there can be a lag in time before the windows show the spots that were in this queue.

Generally, you will not need this feature enabled unless the packet activity is high.

Internet Interface

Internet Packet Overview

DXbase provides a fully functional interface to the Internet Telnet sessions. This section describes some details that are specific to the Internet functionality. Most functions described for VHF packet are identical to the Internet module and unless mentioned otherwise in this section, those features are not repeated separately. You should refer to the descriptions under the VHF Packet section.

DXbase allows for a connection to the VHF packet and also to the Internet Telnet Packet simultaneously. There is a separate set of user options for Internet where you can assign unique sound files etc. that apply to the Internet packet. There is a completely separate window for Internet packet.

DXbase implements the Internet functionality using standard Windows 95/98/NT architecture. This means that DXbase uses the standard Windows Host file to locate the IP address for the Internet site where a connection will be established. DXbase is shipped with a default HOST file.

DXbase does NOT automatically establish an Internet connection when you start DXbase. If you intend to connect to the Internet Packet, you should first establish your Internet connection to your Internet provider through normal means. Then, in DXbase you should select WINDOW/NEW INTERNET. DXbase will then automatically examine your Internet User Options to identify the Host IP that will be used to establish the connection to the Internet DX Telnet site. Upon successfully establishing the connection, the Internet Packet window will be automatically displayed on your screen. If a connection fails, an error message will usually be displayed and the internet window will also be displayed. You should close the internet window by clicking the X in the upper right corner of the Internet Window and repeat this process after correcting the problem. Sometimes a connection may fail due to a timeout condition when your internet provider fails to respond to a connect request. This is a normal occurrence when internet systems are very busy and therefore you should simply keep trying. Sometimes the DX cluster IP that you are trying to connect with is busy and is unable to make the connection quickly thus resulting in a timeout. Try switching the IP Host in Internet User Options to try a different cluster.

In addition to displaying DX spots and talk messages in the Internet Packet window, if user options are set, DX spots and Talk Messages that may be received will be populated into the DX Info window along with those that are received over the VHF packet link. The source of an entry in the Packet Info window is marked as I or V.

Remember to log off of your Internet connection before terminating DXbase.

Making an Internet Connection

Prior to trying to connect to an Internet Cluster Telnet site, you must first establish a connection to your ISP using your normal procedure for making this connection. This is performed outside of DXbase. This establishes your connectivity to the Internet. Next, you select Window/New Internet from the DXbase main menu.

This will cause DXbase to attempt to make a connection to the Internet Cluster site selected in Internet User Options. During this process, DXbase will use the parameters from user options to log on to the cluster site. If successful, you will see an Internet Packet Window automatically appear on your screen and login information will be displayed. This process can require upwards of thirty seconds depending upon how busy the internet might be at the time you try to connect.

If DXbase is unable to make the connection, you may notice that nothing appears to be happening and you may even be fooled into believing that DXbase is locked up. This will generally not be the case. What you are observing is that DXbase is making multiple attempts to try and establish the connection or it is waiting for a response from the Internet cluster site. During this process, DXbase does not respond to key strokes or mouse clicks. After approximately one minute, if a connection is not established, DXbase will abort and a message will be displayed on your screen advising of the failure. The Internet Packet window will be displayed, but no connection will have been made. Following this, you should close the internet window that appears by clicking the X, open [internet user options](#) and select a different IP HOST, and try the procedure again, this time with a different site.

Establishing a connection requires that all the parts be working. That is, the DXbase software must be working, the connection to the internet must be established, and the internet cluster site must be operational. In some cases, you will find that the internet is very busy and thus bottlenecks can occur which causes DXbase to timeout before a connection is achieved. Or, the internet site you are trying to use is down for whatever reason.

Keep Alive Feature

Internet Service Providers and telnet DX Cluster sites sometimes implement an inactivity switch. Those who are connected but do not perform any activity for a certain period of time may be automatically disconnected by either the ISP or by the DX Cluster.

DXbase provides a feature called "Keep Alive which will automatically send a c/r to the Internet DX Cluster that you are connected to. This generally satisfies the requirements of the ISP and DX Cluster so that both know that you are still active. It is not foolproof and we have no guarantee that either might implement different timeout software that defeats this feature in DXbase; however, it is effective for most connections and software in use today.

The interval at which the Keep Alive sends a command is controlled by [User Options for the Internet tab](#).

Internet-Host File Usage

DXbase adheres to the industry standard for establishing an internet connection via a telnet session. As such, the Windows HOST file is used to obtain the IP address that is to be used for a connection.

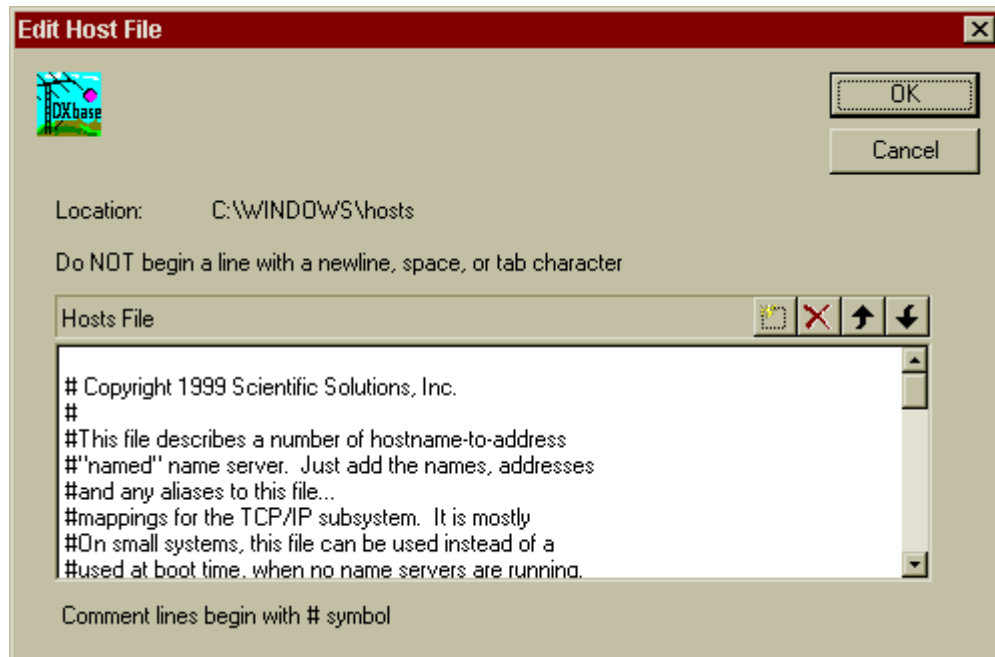
Host File placement during installation

At the time you installed DXbase, a check of your Windows directory was made to determine if you had an existing Hosts file. NOTE: there is no file extension, just the base filename.

If a file by this name was not found, then DXbase installed a its Hosts file that contains most of the currently operational IP addresses that provide Internet Cluster service. If a Hosts file was already resident in your Windows directory for Win95/98/ME or Winsystem32/drivers/etc for WinNT/2000/XP, DXbase renamed your existing Hosts file to Hosts/dxb24/bak, where dxb24 is the version of DXbase that performed this action. A copy of the DXbase Hosts file was also placed in your DXbase folder in case you need it for some use in the future. If the IP Host list box in the User Options Internet tab is empty or does not contain any valid entries for DX Clusters, then chances are that your system did not allow DXbase to rename your old Hosts file, or some other application has replaced our Hosts file. In either case, you will need to either copy the Hosts file from your DXbase folder into the appropriate folder on your system based on operating system replacing the one that is there, or, you will need to copy the data from the DXbase Hosts file and paste it into your Hosts file.

Editing a Host File

From time to time, you may discover that new IP addresses become available or old ones become disconnected. You can edit your Hosts file from within DXbase. Select from the main menu FILE/Modify Host File.



The current contents of your Hosts file will be displayed.

When making entries into the hosts file, you **MUST** follow certain predefined rules for the format of what is entered.

1. When entering an IP address the entry will be in four sections such as 24.17.21.123
2. You can follow this with a # symbol and place a short comment after it.
3. If the IP you want to enter requires a specific port, you should follow the entry described in item 1 above with a colon and the port number. No spaces before the colon or after the colon.
4. Some clusters do not use an IP address but instead use the URL description. These entries follow the same rules as above. You can look at the existing entries if you are unsure about the format.

Add a new entry

Click the “New (Insert)” button and enter the new IP on the empty line that is displayed. Click anywhere within the window to change out of edit mode.

Delete an existing entry

Click the entry you wish to delete and then click the delete button.

Change an existing entry

Double click the entry you wish to change. The line will be placed in edit mode and you can over type your changes. Click anywhere in the window to change out of edit mode. Click OK to save your changes, or click cancel to abort your changes.

Note: When modifying the hosts file, the hosts file that is being edited is the one that is located in your Windows folders and NOT the copy that was placed in your DXbase folder. So, if you routinely backup DXbase related files, you will want to backup the hosts file from your appropriate Windows folder. The copy that was placed in your DXbase folder was only put there in case you needed to refer to it when editing an existing hosts file.

Internet-User Options

These options control the operation of your interface to the Internet Cluster using Microsoft standard Telnet techniques.

The screenshot shows the 'DXbase 2007' dialog box with the 'Internet' tab selected. The dialog is organized into several sections:

- Interface:** Contains checkboxes for 'Connect interface at program startup' (unchecked), 'Disable Sound on Exit' (unchecked), a 'Max Packet Lines' text box with '500', and a 'Keep Alive Timer' section with 'Timer Minutes' set to '15'.
- DX Info Options:** Includes radio buttons for 'Do not use', 'Save all Spots', and 'Save Needed Spots' (selected).
- Screen Updates:** Includes radio buttons for 'None', 'Internet Window' (selected), and 'DX Info Window'.
- Announce DX Spots in Voice and sound events:** Features radio buttons for 'Never', 'Only for DX Spots Needed' (selected), and 'All DX Spots'. Below are checkboxes for 'Audible Mail Alert' (checked), 'Audible Call Alert' (checked), 'Audible DX Alerts' (checked), and 'Audible Bell' (unchecked).
- Packet Format:** Includes a 'DX Spot Key' text box with 'DX de', a 'Bell Sound' dropdown menu with 'dxintro5.wav', and a 'Needed Sound' dropdown menu with 'page.wav'. Below these is an 'IP Host' list box containing 'k4up.tzo.com # K4UP', 'k7ar.net:7300 # K7AR', 'k8na.com # K8NA' (highlighted), and 'k8smc.com # K8SMC'.
- Login/Password Fields:** A table-like structure with prompts and input fields:

Prompt	User Input
Login Prompt	login:
User Login	AA4LU
Password Prompt	
User Password	
Host Prompt	>
User Connect	

At the bottom are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

DXinfo Options

As DX spots are received, DXbase writes the information to the VHF Packet and/or the Internet Packet windows. DXbase also provides another window called DXinfo under the DX Spots tab where only DX spots are stored. This option controls when DXbase will place an entry into the DXinfo DX spots window. This provides a convenient place to see only DX spots. We recommend that this option be set to "Save Needed DX spots. Or, if you do not plan to use this feature, choose "Do Not Use. Saving all DX spots can cause this table to become very large and result in performance slowing down. You can eliminate performance impacts by frequently emptying the contents of the DX Info DX Spots tab.

Connect Interface at program startup

This option tells DXbase to automatically try to make a telnet connection to your DX Cluster when you start DXbase. For this option to work, you MUST first have your connection to the internet established before you start DXbase.

Auto Screen Statistics - As DX spots are received in the Internet Packet window, DXbase can automatically update your screen display to reflect statistics and manager information. Place a check here to turn this option on.

Screen Updates

This option tells DXbase when to update your screen based on incoming DX spots. You can choose to have no updates. Or, you can choose to have the screen updated each time a DX spot arrives in the VHF packet window. Lastly, you can choose to have your screen updated only when a DX spot is loaded into the DX Info window. We recommend the last entry (DX Info) because your screen will only be updated based on DX spots that you need. Screen updates refers to updates to the Summary window, QSL info window, previous QSO toolbar, etc...

Disable Sound on Exit - Place a check here to have DXbase automatically turn all sound off upon exiting the program. By doing this, the next time you start DXbase, all sound will be disabled until you turn it back on by clicking the speaker ICON located on the DXbase status bar.

Max Packet Lines - Enter the number of lines that are allowed to accumulate before DXbase begins overwriting the oldest entries. Recommended value is between 1 and 2 thousand. The higher this number, the more memory that DXbase will require.

DX Spot Key - This is the unique set of characters which represents a DX spot. The default is DX de.

Sound choices - The type of sounds that are used are based on the sound files that have been selected under the User Options [directory tab](#). There is a choice for one of the following:

1. YL sounds
2. OM sounds
3. CW sounds

Bell Sound - Select the sound file that DXbase will use whenever it received the "Bell character from the Internet host.

Needed Sound - Select the sound file that DXbase will use to announce that you need this DX spot.

IP Host - Select the IP connection that DXbase should use whenever you attempt to establish a connection to an Internet Cluster. You should see a list of choices available in this box. If you do not see any, or if you only see a few, then the DXbase Hosts file has been replaced by some other Hosts file. You will need to **correct this condition** before you can proceed. Once your system is verified to be using the DXbase Hosts file, you can use the "Modify Hosts option to add, change, or delete entries in your Windows host file.

Announce DX spots in voice - Choose this option if you want DXbase to announce the callsign and frequency of each incoming DX spot phonetically using your Windows sound system. Select Only DX Spots Needed to announce the callsign of a DX Spot only if it is needed based on Alert Options. Select All DX Spots to announce the callsign of all DX spots. Select Never to disable this feature.

Audible Mail - Check this box if you want DXbase to automatically notify you when new mail is received over the Internet Packet connection.

Audible Call - Check this box if you want DXbase to play the "Needed sound whenever it detects the callsign entered under User Options Alerts in the call alert field.

Audible DX Alerts - Check this box if you want DXbase to play the "Needed sound whenever it detects a DX spot that you need based on the parameters set in user options Alerts.

Audible Bell - Check this box if you want DXbase to play the "Bell sound file whenever it detects the bell character from the Internet Packet connection.

The following parameters control the automated connection process to your Internet Cluster.

Login Prompt - This is the series of characters received when the host wants you to enter your login. The default is login:

User Login - This is the login that DXbase will send in response to the Login Prompt. This is your callsign. Only callsigns that have been registered can be used. If you enter a callsign that has not been registered, the entry will be ignored and will not be accepted.

Password Prompt - This is the series of characters received when the host wants you to enter your password. The default is Password:

User Password - This is the password that DXbase will send in response to a Password prompt. Usually this is your first name.

Host Prompt - This is the character received when the host is ready to receive a connect request. The default is the greater than symbol>

User Connect - This is the connect command that DXbase will automatically send when it receives the Host Prompt. Usually this is DXC for DX Cluster.

NOTE: Novell installations

If your installation includes Novell's IP/IPX gateway that renames the WSOCK32.DLL to WSOCK32.N01 you may encounter an ERROR STARTING PROGRAM. The DXB2006.EXE file is linked to a missing export WSOCK32.DLL:1140

Rename the WSOCK32.N01 to WSOCK32.DLL

If your system is using a real TCP/IP address, or DHCP, or obtaining the IP address from an IP server, there is no problem.

Internet- Proxy Server Usage

DXbase will function in an environment where the proxy server is configured correctly. Some issues to take into account are:

Each computer will need to be set up with a different internal TCP/IP address and pointed out to the proxy as the default gateway unless you are using DHCP.

Configure your computer's TCP/IP properties.

Consult your operating system documentation and reference material for installing Proxy Servers for further information on configuring your system.

Packet Interface

VHF Packet Overview

DXbase provides a fully integrated interface to the VHF PacketCluster™ network. Through this interface, you can perform all of the functions that the system offers. User options in DXbase control the automated processing which can be performed by DXbase when incoming packet messages are received. **Alert user options** control the manner in which DXbase will automatically check incoming DX spots to determine whether or not it is a new one for you. Through these options you can also specify the type of sounds that DXbase should play when an incoming message is received and when DXbase determines that a DX spot is a new one. ***PacketCluster is a trademark of Pavillion Software.***

CQDS	Type	Messages
13	✗	DX de N4DW: 10111.1 8P9EM
14	✗	DX de AJ4L: 24898.0 T20FW WRKD UP 3
15	✗	DX de WA4CBF: 21295.0 ZK3RW UP
16	✗	DX de K4NA: 28081.3 T20FW RTTY/up 2/beggiDX de W4A0:
17	✗	DX de K4CW: 14236.4 RA0QW
18	✓	DX de W4TJE: 21296.0 ZL9CI 310-320
19	✗	DX de K4CW: 14246.3 RZOSR iG0R
20	✗	DX de AA4R: 21024.0 ZL9CI wrkd 032.4
21	✗	DX de K4MQG: 18074.0 ZL9CI UP 2
22	✗	DX de WA1MPB: 14082.0 T20FW RTTY UP +2

If the data content of a line exceeds the horizontal width of the window size, DXbase will automatically show the full line when you position your cursor over the line.

Serial Port Configuration:

You must configure DXbase to operate with your computer's serial port. These [TNC options](#) define the serial port parameters such as baudrate, parity, etc. that DXbase should use to communicate with your TNC.

DX Alert Configuration:

You must configure DXbase [DX Alert Parameters](#) in order for the automatic lookup process to work the way you want. These options also control the audible sounds that are associated with packet events.

Checking a DX spot

If you click a DX spot in the VHF Packet Window, the entry will be highlighted and DXbase will perform two functions. If you have set the user option to Display Screen Statistics, DXbase will automatically update all windows on your screen with the current statistics for the entry you have selected. Additionally, the callsign, frequency, and if applicable RTTY mode will be temporarily stored so that these values can be populated into your QSO Log if you click the Log Spot ICON. A new DX spot will automatically overwrite the last values that were temporarily stored.

QSY HF Radio

If you have an HF radio interface active in DXbase, your HF radio will be automatically changed to the frequency and mode of the DX spot when you click in the TYPE column of a DX spot or SH/DX entry..

NOTE: Do NOT set the TNC option to force all characters to upper case. If you do, DXbase will not recognize any DX spots.

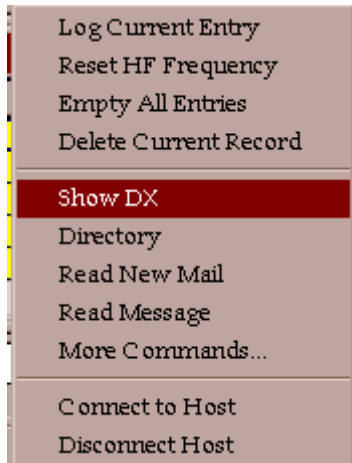
ICONS used for Incoming Packet Messages

DXbase identifies incoming PacketCluster messages in four ways:

- ▶ Red X identifies DX spots that are not needed.
- ▶ Green check identifies DX spots which are needed..
- ▶ Yellow with horizontal lines is an entry which contains the phrase “mail in it..

Packet Pop Up Menu

You can click the right mouse button anywhere in the Packet window to display the Packet popup menu.



1. Log Current Entry causes DXbase to log the DX spot or SH/DX entry that was clicked and is now current in the Packet window.
2. Reset HF Frequency causes the HF radio to be reset to whatever frequency and mode was last used prior to the current settings.
3. Empty All entries erases all entries in the Packet window.
4. Delete Current Record erases the current packet entry.
5. Show DX issues the standard SH/DX command
6. Directory issues the standard DIR command
7. Read New Mail issues the standard read command
8. Read Message issues the standard read command but additionally extracts the message number from the currently selected line. Example, right click on a line that contains a message such as

would be the case after the results of a Directory command are displayed. Then select the Read Message command.

9. More commands displays a dialog box where you can select user defined packet commands. You can also click the CMDS button on the Packet Window to activate the More Commands window.

10. Connect to Host issues the command entered in user options for.

11. Disconnect Host issues the standard Bye command.

Conserving Memory

DXbase automatically limits the number of messages that are contained in the VHF PacketCluster window to the value entered in user options for Max Packet Lines. If you have limited memory, you should make this entry as low as possible and still preserve the number of packet lines that are reasonable to you. Normally a setting of 500 is adequate.

Upload Clipboard

Uploading ASCII text from the clipboard to your local packet network can be accomplished with the following procedure:

Click in the outgoing packet transmit window and send the command to your packet network to send mail. Usually this is 'S' for send or 'S/P' to send private.

When prompted by your network, send the subject.

With the packet view or Internet view in focus, click File on the application menu and choose Upload Clipboard.

You will be prompted to insure that you have sent the above mentioned commands. This is important because once you begin the upload process, there is no method for stopping the upload.

Answer Yes if you are ready to send, or answer No if you have not already executed the commands to send mail.

When the upload is finished, a dialog box will be displayed advising that the process is complete. When you click OK, a control Z will be sent to terminate the upload.

NOTE:

During an upload, all outgoing packet commands will be disabled until the upload is completed.

We recommend temporarily turning ECHO off in your TNC before uploading a file and then turning ECHO back on after the file transfer is complete. This will overcome a limitation in the ability to properly deal with a limited buffer in the TNC and the serial communications logic in DXbase. This limitation is described below:

The file transfer process does not immediately display the outgoing lines of text; however you will be able to see the status indicators on your TNC as evidence that outgoing data is being transferred. Once the TNC buffer is full, you will see a burst of incoming lines of text from the file you are transferring. This is the result of the TNC echoing back the text. There is a limitation in the interface between the TNC and DXbase which only allows for approximately 25 lines of text to be echoed. If your file is larger than this, you will see some distorted lines of text after the first 25 lines. Please do not be alarmed. This is only the TNC echo. The actual data transferred is intact and transferred accurately. If you read the file back from the packet network, you will see that the data transfer took place without problem. This limitation will be addressed in a future release.

Upload Files

Uploading ASCII text files to your local packet network can be accomplished with the following procedure:

Click in the packet transmit window and send the command to your packet network to send mail. Usually this is 'S' for send or 'S/P' to send private.

When prompted by your network, send the subject.

With the packet view in focus, click File on the application menu and choose Upload File.

You will be prompted to insure that you have sent the above mentioned commands. This is important because once you select a file for upload, there is no method for stopping the upload.

Answer Yes if you are ready to send a file, or answer No if you have not already executed the commands to send mail.

Select the file to be uploaded. Valid files are ASCII text files and this is the default file extension that will appear in the File Open dialog box.

After selecting a file, click open to start the upload. When the upload is finished, a dialog box will be displayed advising that the process is complete. When you click OK, a control Z will be sent to terminate the upload.

NOTE:

During a file upload, all outgoing packet commands will be disabled until the upload is completed. We recommend temporarily turning ECHO off in your TNC before uploading a file and then turning ECHO back on after the file transfer is complete. This will overcome a limitation in the ability to properly deal with a limited buffer in the TNC and the serial communications logic in DXbase. This limitation is described below:

The file transfer process does not immediately display the outgoing lines of text; however you will be able to see the status indicators on your TNC as evidence that outgoing data is being transferred. Once the TNC buffer is full, you will see a burst of incoming lines of text from the file you are transferring. This is the result of the TNC echoing back the text. There is a limitation in the interface between the TNC and DXbase which only allows for approximately 25 lines of text to be echoed. If your file is larger than this, you will see some distorted lines of text after the first 25 lines. Please do not be alarmed. This is only the TNC echo. The actual data transferred is intact and transferred accurately. If you read the file back from the packet network, you will see that the data transfer took place without problem. This limitation will be addressed in a future release.

Processing Incoming DX Spots

Determining the Mode of a DX spot

In determining the mode of the DX spot, DXbase uses two factors. If the comments section of the DX spot contains the phrase RTTY or FSK, then the DX spot is considered to be the RTTY mode. Otherwise, the Band Plan settings specified in “**Band Plan**” user options will be used to determine the mode.

Previous QSOs with a DX spot

When a DX spot is received, you can click the “**previous QSO**” ICON on the main toolbar and DXbase will display all previous QSOs with the callsign of the last DX spot received. Note that if you click on a QSO record in the log after a DX spot, the callsign from the log will supersede the DX spot when you activate the Previous QSO feature.

SH/DX command

DXbase will treat the results of a SH/DX command as if they were DX spots. You may click on an entry and DXbase will process the entry in exactly the same manner as if it were a DX spot. There are no audible sounds associated with the results of a SH/DX command. The ICON indicator will remain as the default ICON since these are not actual DX spots.

Evaluating QSX, UP, and DOWN

If an incoming DX alert contains QSX in the comment section, DXbase will evaluate the QSX information as follows:

If a valid frequency is detected, DXbase will attempt to use the frequency to set your VFOb, assuming your HF radio is capable of handling split operation through the serial port interface. The format of the comment MUST be QSX 14195.0. In this example, there is one space following QSX. QSX is in upper case. The frequency contains all digits and at least one decimal place. If this format is not present, the QSX information may be ignored.

If the comment section contains the phrase QSX UP or QSX DOWN, DXbase will add or subtract 5 Khz from the frequency in VFOa and assign the result into VFOb, assuming your HF radio is capable of handling split operation through the serial port interface.

Send a Stored Command

DXbase provides several ways to automatically send a predefined command. In the VHF or Internet windows, click the right mouse button for a menu of options:

The “Read Message choice will issue a “Read command and use the message number of the line that you clicked when you activated the right mouse menu.

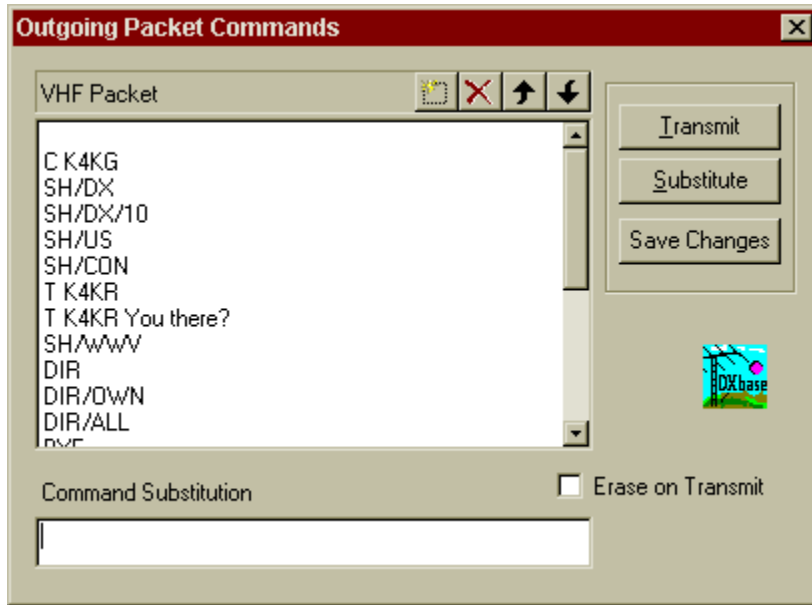
The “Read Mail choice will issue a Read command to automatically retrieve any unread mail.

The “Connect Host will issue a connect command using the parameters that were entered in user options.

The “Disconnect Host will issue the “Bye command.

The “Show DX and “Directory choices will issue these commands.

The “More Commands displays a dialog where you can choose from your previously stored list of commands. You can also access “More Commands by clicking the CMDS button located in the upper left corner of the VHF and Internet Packet Windows. To select a command and send it as listed, highlight the command and click OK.



If you wish to select a command and also modify it or add to it before it is sent, click the command you want to change and then click the “Substitute” button. This will cause the command to appear in the Command Substitution box. Overtyping with your changes and clicking the Transmit button to send your modified version. If you place a check in the “Erase on Transmit” box, the entry in the Command Substitution box will be automatically erased when you transmit the command.

Send a typed command

There are many ways to send a packet command in DXbase.

The Transmit window contains a tab for VHF packet and another for Internet. Choose the appropriate tab when typing into this window. The tab that is selected will control whether the entries are sent to the VHF packet host or to the Internet host. To transmit the line, press the enter key. If you press a control character, the line will be automatically sent including the control character that was pressed. Remember that if you intend to send some character out, your cursor must be positioned in this window. If your cursor is focused on some other window the characters you type will not be sent.



There are several ways to send outgoing PacketCluster™ commands.

1. Select a **stored command** from the right mouse menu inside the appropriate Packet window.

2. Click inside the packet transmit window and type the desired outgoing command or message. Press the keyboard ENTER key to send the displayed text. Text that you type will automatically scroll to the left if you exceed the width of the edit box.
3. To send a control character to your TNC, click inside the packet transmit window and type the control character. Any text already present will be automatically erased and the control character will be sent to the TNC.
4. To send an ESC character to your TNC, DXbase has implemented a substitute character called the tilda (~). This is necessary because Windows uses the ESC character for Windows. So, if you need to send an escape character (ESC) use the ~ (TILDA) character instead.

Send a DX Spot

A DX spot can be sent by clicking the “Send DX Spot icon located on the VHF Packet toolbar or the Internet toolbar. The last callsign that was current in your log will be pre-populated in the callsign field of the DX Spot dialog box.

To send a DX Spot, click the DX Spot button:



The first button on each toolbar will result in the Send DX Spot dialog being displayed. Note that there is a separate toolbar for VHF Packet and Internet Packet.

Callsign

The Callsign field will be auto populated with the current callsign from your log.

VFOa

If you have an HF radio interfaced with DXbase, VFOa will be retrieved from the radio. If no HF radio is connected, VFOa will be populated from the frequency field of your QSO log.

VFOb

VFOb will only be populated if your HF transceiver is in split mode and if identification of this is supported in your radio's RS232 interface. Some radios do not provide this functionality.

Use QSO Log to determine digital mode comment

Many of the newer digital modes cannot be determined by the mode setting of an HF radio. Often times the HF radio may be set to RTTY or USB even though the actual mode used might be PSK31 or BPSK, etc. For this reason, it may be more accurate to let DXbase use the QSO mode from your log. If the mode of the QSO is one of the digital modes, it will be formatted into the outgoing packet DX spot. If this option is not checked, DXbase will use the mode setting from the HF radio.

Comment

If the mode is digital, it will be populated here. Additionally, if the HF radio is in split mode as described above, the QSX frequency will be populated here. You can add additional comments by typing them here. Or, if you want to erase anything that DXbase pre-populated, just delete it.

Send

Click the Send button to transmit the DX spot. DXbase will automatically format the outgoing command.

Create Stored Commands

Frequently used packet commands can be created and stored so they are available in the "More Commands window. You can have as many stored commands as you want. You can edit or delete commands in the command file as often as you want. DXbase uses the same window that is used to send commands so that you can add, change, or delete entries in the same window.

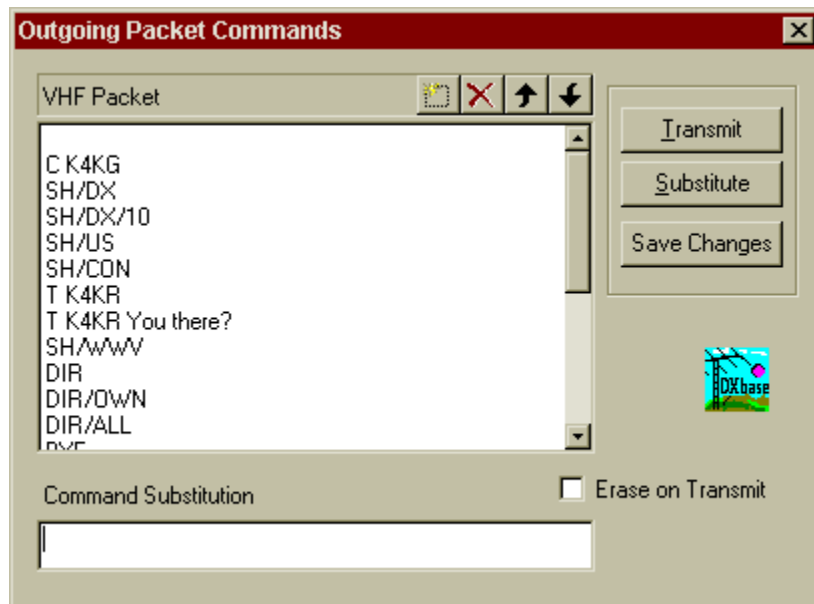
Click the CMDS button located in the upper left corner of the VHF or Internet Packet Window. Or, use the right mouse click inside the VHF or Internet Windows and select the "More Commands option.

Tooltips are active. Position your cursor over a button and a pop up window will describe the purpose for the button. The first nine (9) commands listed map directly to the nine toolbar buttons available on the [Packet Commands Toolbar](#). You can reorder your entries by highlighting

a command and then use the up and down arrow ICONs to move the command up or down in the list.

Input Rules

1. Maximum number of characters per line is 70.
2. Control characters are not permitted. Only alpha/numeric.
3. Blank lines located between lines are NOT permitted.



Adding New Commands

Click the "New (Insert) button. It is located to the left of the button with an X on it. Enter the command in the blank line that is opened at the end of the list of commands. When finished, click anywhere inside the list of commands to change out of edit mode.

Delete existing packet commands

Click the command that you want to delete. It will become highlighted. Click the "Delete button. This is the button with the red X on it.

Change existing command

Double click the command that you want to change. The line will be put into edit mode and you can overtype with your changes. Click anywhere inside the commands window to change out of edit mode.

Reposition a command

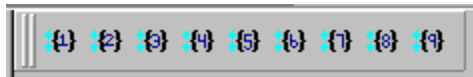
Click the command that you want moved, and then click the Up or Down arrow to move the entry to another relative position in the command list.

Save Changes

If you have made any changes to your list of commands, you **MUST** click the Save Changes button for the changes to become permanent. If you fail to do this, any changes you might have made will be erased when you close the window.

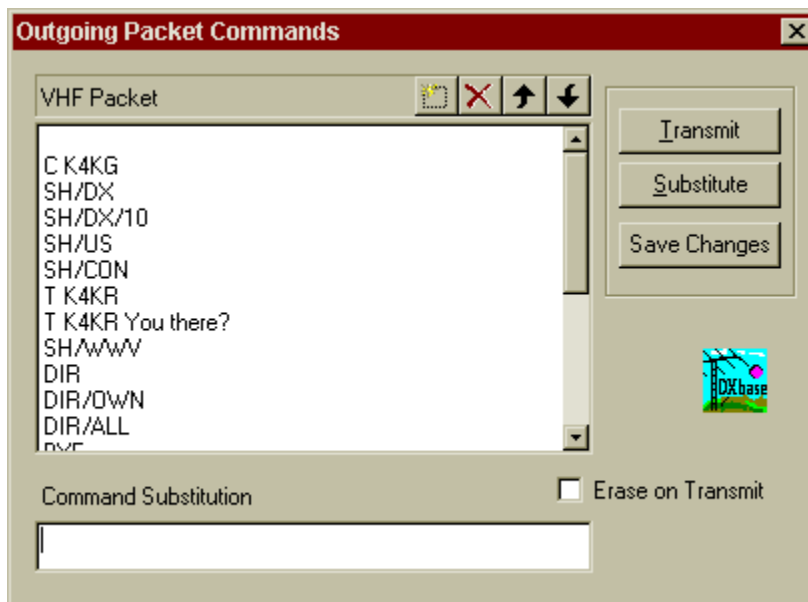
Packet Command Toolbar

There are two command toolbars available. One is for Internet Packet and the other is for VHF packet. These toolbars provide nine buttons each. Each button represents a packet command that will be sent when the button is clicked. The command that is associated with each button will be displayed in a pop up tooltip when your cursor is positioned over the button.



The toolbar for sending internet commands can be identified by the blue color of each button. The VHF toolbar uses a red color for each button. These toolbars can be hidden if they are not used by selecting the customize option under the main menu View item.

Commands for each button are obtained automatically from the first nine commands listed in the [Stored Command](#) module. There is a separate Stored Commands module for Internet and packet. So you can have different commands assigned to the buttons on each packet command toolbar.



In the above window, the commands would map as follows:

C K4KG	button 1 on toolbar
SH/DX	button 2 on toolbar
SH/DX/10	button 3 on toolbar
SH/US	button 4 on toolbar
SH/CON	button 5 on toolbar
T K4KR	button 6 on toolbar
T K4KR are you there	button 7 on toolbar
SH/WWV	button 8 on toolbar
DIR	button 9 on toolbar

The remaining commands are not assigned to the toolbar. To change the order of commands just use the Stored Commands module to reorder commands.

Deleting Packet Entries

Each VHF or Internet packet entry occupies 80 bytes of your computer's memory. From time to time you may wish to free up this memory by erasing all entries from the VHF or Internet packet window.

To erase all entries, from the Right mouse popup menu in the Packet window, select Empty All Entries.

User options for VHF and Internet specify the maximum number of lines that are allowed in each packet window. When this threshold is reached, DXbase will automatically begin deleting one line at a time beginning with the oldest line first whenever the total number of lines in the packet view has reached Max Packet Lines value from user options.

You can delete one packet line at a time by clicking the Row button on the far left and pressing the delete key. When you click the row button, the entire record will be highlighted. This serves as an indication that you can now press the delete key to remove the record.

NOTE: If you press the delete key after clicking inside a field, you will erase the contents of that field but will not delete the record.

Processing IOTA data from DX Spots

As incoming DX Spots are received, DXbase can optionally extract IOTA information if it is contained in the comments field of the DX spot. The operation of this automatic feature is controlled by the settings in the [User Options Alerts](#) tab. In order to be detected, the IOTA information must be in one of the following formats:

1. NA160
2. NA-160
3. NA 160

If IOTA information is detected, the HF IOTA statistics will be reflected in the Summary window if you have the HF IOTA category selected. In addition, when logging a DX Spot, the IOTA field of the QSO being logged will be automatically populated with the IOTA information obtained from the DX spot.

If you have selected the option in the Alerts tab of user options to have IOTA alerts, DXbase will process an incoming DX spot to determine if it contains a needed IOTA. If it is, then it will be annotated in the packet windows as well as DX Info window as a needed IOTA. NOTE that if a DX spot is needed as a new country, no IOTA checking is performed. IOTA checking is only performed if the DX spot is not needed as a new country.

Notes:

In the “real world, DX Spots are not always sent accurately by the sender or originator of the DX Spot. Sometimes the letter ‘O’ is used in place of the numeric zero and vice versa. For example the IOTA “OC111 might have been typed using a numeric zero instead of the alpha O . In this case, since the data itself is incorrect, DXbase would not recognize this as an IOTA.

Introduction

Welcome

Thank you for choosing DXbase for your logging operations. We sincerely appreciate your confidence in our products and will strive to provide the best value money can buy.

DXbase is perhaps the most sophisticated logging software ever produced. In fact, it is more complex in what it does than most other commercial software that you may have installed on your computer (unless of course you are a developer or engineer enthusiast). But, despite the complexity that goes on behind the scenes, we have tried to make DXbase very easy and intuitive to use. Nevertheless, there is a learning curve which you will face before you will completely understand all the subtle features and operations at your disposal. For most users, this will be

quite small, but for some, you may find certain operations confusing. To this end, we have a few suggestions that may help.

► Please (we mean this sincerely) take the time to review this help file and any readme files that may have been shipped with this product. We have employed the assistance of nearly a dozen individuals to prepare this information in the hope that it is presented as completely and thoroughly as we can. We have made our best effort to insure that virtually everything you will need or want to know is described in the help file. If you cannot find something, let us know so that we can make the addition the next time we upgrade the software.

► Please do not assume that DXbase does things like some other software (including our previous products). Chances are that it does not. DXbase contains the absolute latest technology in the software industry for 32 bit operating systems. It is also developed to be in compliance with Microsoft Certification requirements. Very few, if any, other logging programs are designed to these high standards. Once you use DXbase, you will no doubt recognize the difference that DXbase brings to your operation.

► We know you are probably going to be in a “hurry to get started. We appreciate your enthusiasm and have tried to make “getting started as easy as we can. But there are a few things that we just could not avoid. Be sure you set DXbase user options correctly. By taking the time to carefully consider each user option that you set, you will be well on your way to trouble free operation.

► If some feature does not work for you, please try to avoid jumping to the conclusion that it must be a software problem. We know this is only natural (we are guilty of this too). But, we can sincerely tell you that DXbase has been thoroughly tested. We have a sophisticated automatic test system that exercises DXbase 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. We also enlisted the help of many beta testers. Unless mentioned in our readme file, when DXbase is shipped, we are sure that it performs properly based on the experience of our beta testers. It may very well be that you have identified an unknown problem. If so, we certainly want you to let us know. But chances are better that you may have some user option, or configuration error that is the culprit. If you encounter trouble, be sure to check the help file, the FAQ, and our Web site.

Will you do us a favor?

The development and production of logging software is extremely time consuming and expensive. If you are like us, Amateur Radio is a hobby for which we have a limited budget. We can't always go buy all the toys we might want. In an effort to keep the cost to you as low as possible, we do not spend lots of money on advertising. If you enjoy DXbase and agree that it is of substantial benefit to you, please help us to spread the word. Tell your friends, voice your opinion on the Internet news groups, and mention us to your club members. Your help in this regard benefits everyone concerned. Obviously, we make a little more money (we surely need it ... hihi), but it also makes it much easier for us to keep the price down. In addition, it makes others aware of the benefits they might enjoy with this software. **Thank you** in advance.

Quick Start for Experts

This information is intended for the experienced user of Windows and a user who is familiar with the operation of previous versions of DXbase. Even if you are an expert user, there are a large number of features contained in DXbase for Windows that are new or work differently. We encourage even the experts to look through the help topics and become familiar with the new ways in which this product operates.

1. Windows like any other Microsoft compliant product. Run setup.exe.
2. Execute DXbase.
3. Choose Tools/Options/User Options and set all of the **user options** for every tab. Save your entries.
4. Drag the individual windows around and resize to suit your preferences for **screen display**.
5. Packet commands can be typed in the Packet Transmit Window. With your cursor inside the packet transmit window, press the Enter key to actually send the command. Click the right mouse button inside the VHF or Internet Packet View windows and choose Other commands to send a user defined command or choose one of the other choices on the pop up menu. The CMD5 header button will also activate the “More Commands module.
6. Click in any QSO record and the **statistics** in every window will be automatically updated.
7. Click on any DX spot in the Message Column and the statistics in every window will be automatically updated if you have the user option “Display Screen Statistics set. There are separate options available for **VHF Packet** and **Internet Packet**. The default QSO sort index is DATE and TIME.
9. Click on any column header to sort your QSO log by that column.
10. Click in the QSY column of the VHF Packet or Internet views for a DX spot or SH/DX list and your HF radio will automatically QSY to that frequency if one is used. Screen statistics will also be updated.
11. To log the latest DX spot, click on the spot and then click **Log DX Spot** ICON. The log will be populated with all the necessary information. Save the new QSO record by choosing Record/Update or simply click on some other record in the log to automatically save your new record and make the record you clicked current.
12. To add notes, fill in the callsign notes box in the Summary Window. The callsign of the QSO should already be displayed in the callsign field of the Summary Window. Choose Record/Update or the save Icon to save the notes.
13. Click the **previous QSOs** ICON to see past QSOs with a callsign, zone, prefix, etc. Or click on the matrix in the Summary Window for the band/mode combination you want to see.
14. Click the **QSO Label** ICON to save QSO label data for the current QSO record.

15. Customize the appearance of the QSO Log, VHF Packet, and Internet windows by setting [styles](#) and [properties](#).
16. Open the TOOLS/OPTIONS/Personal Data module. Enter your personal information, especially your callsign, since this is what DXbase will use when preparing reports and labels etc.
17. Use one of the two [Import Utility](#) programs to import data from a previous version of DXbase or some other logging software. Please be aware that there are two different import utilities. DXB Import is for anyone importing data from a past version of DXbase for Windows. The other utility is called plain Import and is for all other imports including ADIF.
18. When you start DXbase, it will prompt you for the name of your database. Unless you have already changed your database, the default will be yourcall.mdb located in your DXbase directory. This should be the default displayed in the box when prompted. If during the original installation, DXbase was not able to create a database using yourcall.mdb, then a database file called default.mdb would have been placed in your DXbase directory. You should rename this to yourcall.mdb before you use it.
19. When closing DXbase, never close Windows without first closing DXbase and allowing DXbase sufficient time to completely close itself down. DXbase may write data to the database when closing down and it must be allowed to complete this process.

Quick Start for New Users

We'd like to welcome you to the DXbase family of customers. We want your experience to be as pleasant as possible in as short a time period as we can. One point to keep in the back of your mind is that DXbase is very powerful and flexible. For these reasons, there are many subtle options that let you tune the software to operate in a manner that best meets your operating needs. All of the topics are covered in fine detail elsewhere in this help file, but we have listed some of the issues that a new user may find useful.

1. When you first run DXbase, your screen display will contain the main DXbase window and inside this there are many sub windows that are tiled one on top of the other. Using your mouse, you should click on the title bar of a sub window, drag it to the part of the screen where you want it positioned, and size it to the size you want. You repeat this for each of the sub windows. If there is a sub window that you don't care about seeing, do NOT X it out to close it. If you do this, the window will reappear the next time you start the software. Instead, [use the minimize button](#) for that sub window to hide it.
2. Near the bottom of the default screen, you will see two large white boxes side by side. One is the previous QSO toolbar, and the other is the transmit window. In the default screen, these are docked (or locked) to the bottom of the screen. You can click on the two vertical bars in these two windows to drag it to another part of the screen and lock it there by just dragging it to where you want it. You will see it change shape when it is in position to be locked. For a better idea of how you might organize your screen, take a look at the section in this help file called [Navigating the Screen](#). There you will see an example of what you might want to do.
3. There will be a horizontal bar of toolbar buttons. Actually there are many partitions of toolbars. Chances are that these will be scrolled to the right out of view so that you cannot see all the toolbars. You should click on each partition of the toolbar and holding your left mouse down, drag the toolbar to the place on your screen where you want that toolbar to appear. As you drag a toolbar, the

remaining toolbar partitions will come into view automatically. If there are toolbars that you don't need, you can use the TOOLS/Customize menu option to close the particular toolbars that are not desired.

4. After you get your screen in order, the next task is to set your user options. These options are very important for the operation of the software because this is where you tell the software about your particular interests. Each option has been carefully considered and therefore, you should not overlook anything. Use the help file for the User Option that you are setting and read about its purpose. This way you will be sure that you have set the options in the best way to meet your needs. All user options are located under the TOOLS/OPTIONS/User Options menu. There are three sets of options of interest. These are the User Options, [Personal Options](#), and [Special Events](#). User options will display a window with many tabs. Set all of the options under each tab. Personal Options is where you set your callsign and address information. This information is used throughout the software. Special Events is where you identify any special events that are coming up for which you want DXbase to notify you when you start the software.
5. After completing the above, you are now ready to import any data that you might already have in some other database. If your data is in one of the many formats supported by DXbase import logic, you can now perform that operation. First, you should close DXbase. Then, using Windows Explorer navigate to the DXbase for Microsoft Windows folder and you should find a file that uses your callsign as the name with a file extension of .MDB. This is your database file. You should make a copy of it and save it off to a safe place. This is just a precaution in case something goes wrong when you are importing records. This way you can always get back to where you started. If you are [importing data from previous versions of DXbase](#), you should review the instructions in this help file for the procedures to follow. If you are importing data from some other logging program you should open the Import Help file which is located in the DXbase for Microsoft Windows program group. If you are importing from DXbase for DOS v5, use the ADIF import option from the Import utility. If you are importing past versions of DXbase for Windows, use DXB Import.
6. Next, you will want to know how to log QSOs. It's simple, just click in the callsign field of the last empty record, type in the callsign and press the tab key. All fields will now be populated. Overtyping any you want to change and then click the save ICON (looks like a disk) to save the record. There are lots of other ways to log QSOs directly from a packet spot, from an internet spot to name a few. To learn all about these processes, you should review the documentation for those modules and the section called Logging. Before logging, make certain you have reviewed the user options under the log tab. You will see many choices for how DXbase treats date/time. Make sure you read about these and set them accordingly. Pay particular attention to the Update Date/Time option.
7. DXbase makes extensive use of the right mouse pop up menu feature of Windows. In each of the sub windows, you may find that if you position your cursor anywhere in that sub window and click the right mouse, you will see a pop up menu of choices.

Now, we recommend that you begin to explore the help file. DXbase is clearly the most powerful and feature rich logging software on the market. Most features are intuitive and easy to recognize; however, many are not so obvious and you'll be missing out on these if you don't take a look at the help file and review all that the software has to offer. You can also gain some additional quick tips by looking the [Quick Start for Experts](#) section.

Closing DXbase

Never shut down Windows without first closing DXbase.

When you close DXbase, the software will save all of its internal statistics data to the hard drive before the screen is destroyed. You can recognize that this process is underway by observing the progress bar on the lower left side of the DXbase status bar. DXbase uses intelligent logic so that it will only perform this process when it is necessary.

Be careful that you do not interrupt this process by shutting windows down before this completes. If you do, you may experience problems the next time you start the software. Symptoms may be that DXbase reports that it cannot find “such and such in the numeric statistics table. If this happens, refer to the Error Messages section of this help file.

Printing DXbase Documentation

In order to conserve costs and keep the price of DXbase as low as possible, a printed manual is not shipped with this product. Instead, the Microsoft Word document files are included in the DOCS directory on the master CD.

The following documentation is available:

1. ADIF specification .doc that describes the Amateur Data Interexchange Format for exchanging data between logging programs. It is located in your DXbase folder.
2. Label and List designer documentation. This information is extensive and is provided in both a .doc and a .pdf format. To use the .pdf formatted file, you will need to open it with Adobe Acrobat that is available on the internet. It contains detailed information about using the designer capabilities in DXbase. Note: There is reference in these documents to some capabilities such as “bar coding that is not implemented in DXbase. These are in the doc folder on your DXbase CD.
3. All of the .doc files that make up the DXbase help files are in the doc folder of the DXbase CD. For improved efficiency, we recommend you copy them to your hard drive before printing them.

Using Microsoft Word or Wordpad, you can open the associated .DOC files contained on the CD and print them. The result will be a complete manual complete with table of contents and index pages. Simply insert the DXbase CD, open Windows Explorer, and navigate to the DOC directory, double click the .DOC file. Alternatively, open Microsoft Word, and using FILE/OPEN, open the .DOC file from the CD.

If you are using Office 97, be sure you have installed the latest patches from Microsoft. Without this patch, you may see a large red X printed in places where screen images should appear.

NOTE: In some cases, the DXbase documentation may be available in translated form to other languages. Since this information is subject to change, you should consult the DXbase Web Site for information on availability, if any.

Before you ask, yes, we realize that it would be more convenient to have everything in one .doc file; however, this is not feasible because the files are too large to be supported that way. Therefore, we are forced to break the contents into separate .doc files.

Getting Information

For what it's worth!

We have tried to insure that every topic associated with DXbase is included in the help file, tips at startup, FAQ, or as a Knowledge Base article on our web site. Take advantage of all the sources at your disposal.

Some users deprive themselves of valuable information by choosing to turn off "Tips at Startup, or they would rather click around the screen trying to find something instead of using the help file. Some will never go check the web site and still others will never look at the FAQ. You would be amazed at some of the discussions we have had with long time customers who have used our products for years and "never knew it would do this or that.

DXbase is a very powerful and feature rich software product. But, if you don't know about all its capabilities they won't do you much good. Please don't ignore the information that we provide. It's there to help you get the most out of DXbase, but you'll never see it if you choose not to look.

Sources at your disposal

1. On line help system
2. Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) in the on line help
3. Tips at Startup
4. DXbase Knowledge Base on the web at <http://www.dxbase.com>
5. DXbase Reflector (signup information is on our web)

You can access the DXbase web site directly from within DXbase by choosing the HELP/DXbase Web menu option.

Best Wishes

Scientific Solutions, Inc.

Our Policy

Third party Software and Hardware support in DXbase

We sometimes receive inquiries asking us questions like the following:

When will DXbase support such and such?

Why doesn't DXbase support such and such?

Some other software supports such and such, why doesn't DXbase?

Whenever we receive these kinds of inquiries, we usually contact the particular vendor in question and request information about their product and any software interfaces that they include. For those products that include a Microsoft compliant 32 bit .DLL, we are pleased to move forward with an interface assuming there is sufficient customer demand. For those products that do not provide a Microsoft compliant 32 bit .DLL, we tell the manufacturer that this is needed in order for us to provide support. Some have accommodated this and developed the necessary .DLL, and others have either ignored the request or outright refused.

DXbase is, in every sense of the phrase, "Leading edge technology. We have devoted thousands of hours in development time to insure that we comply with industry standards. Why? The simple answer is that this is the best guarantee that we have to insure that DXbase will continue to perform as expected even though Windows operating systems may change; updated DLL files shared by DXbase which are installed with other Windows products don't cause harm to DXbase; And, that DXbase causes no harm to other software. These are compelling reasons when you stop to consider how rapidly the software technology is changing.

Our years of experience in the software development business have taught us the value of this approach. It is a lesson well learned and for this reason, we will only endeavor to provide a software interface to those products that are Microsoft Windows 95 and NT compliant for the 32 bit operating systems. In other words, even though it may be possible, we will not "hack in some

non standard code just to be able to interface with some other product at the risk of causing DXbase to become “non standard.

We hope you will appreciate the importance of this issue and our reasons for adopting such a strict policy in this matter. If you want DXbase support for some other product, tell the makers of that product that they must provide a Microsoft compliant 32-bit .DLL or equivalent. In some cases, we may require that they furnish a sample of their product for testing purposes.

Thanks,

DXbase Development Staff



Registration of DXbase

Registration Overview

DXbase incorporates a registration process that allows it to be distributed in trial or demo mode and after the user obtains the registration key, the software automatically reverts to a fully functional registered version. DXbase does NOT use any hardware locking in its registration approach. This allows the software and the registration key to be used on a licensed user's second machine. The same registration key that is used on one machine can be used on a second machine.

ONLY those callsigns that are registered will be used within DXbase. If you attempt to use an operator callsign that is not registered, you will encounter difficulties with DXbase.

When requesting a registration key for DXbase, the user will be required to **submit the callsigns** that are to be used.

The following steps explain the overall process:

1. User downloads the DXbase software from our web site, or they obtain the CDROM.
2. User installs the DXbase software on their machine.
3. DXbase can now be run in trial or demo mode. Trial mode will expire after 15 days and the software will not run after that time has passed.
4. User obtains the registration key after purchase. This registration key is a very small 1k file that contains the user's authorized callsigns and other information encoded into the registration key. The registration key file will usually be provided by email to the user.
5. User double clicks the registration key filename that is provided and Windows will automatically place the registration information in the user's registry. User also saves the registration file to a safe place such as a floppy disk in case they need to reuse it after a hardware change.
6. DXbase now becomes fully functional.

Registering Callsigns

When purchasing/registering DXbase, the user will be required to submit any callsigns that are going to be used in DXbase. In order for a callsign to be registered, it must fit the requirements for ownership as follows:

1. A callsign must be the official current callsign of the purchaser.
2. A callsign must be a previous callsign officially issued to the purchaser.
3. A callsign must belong to a second operator family member in the same household as the purchaser.
4. A callsign must be a DX station and the purchaser is publicly authorized to serve as his QSL manager.

Only the base callsign must be provided. For example, if the purchaser's callsign is AA4LU, and the purchaser also operated as AA4LU/HK0, FG/AA4LU/FS, and so forth, ONLY the base callsign of AA4LU is required. The registration will automatically allow portable without the need to register each different portable callsign. Only one registration key file is used for all callsigns. In other words, each registration key will allow multiple callsigns.

If you once had a callsign, but you do not plan to enter QSOs for that old callsign into DXbase, then it does not need to be included in the registration request.

Common Questions:

1. What if I change callsigns? Answer: A new registration key must be obtained that includes your new and old callsigns before the new callsign can be used in DXbase.
2. What if I forgot one of my callsigns at the time I requested a registration? Answer: A new registration key must be obtained that includes your callsigns before the left out callsign can be used in DXbase.
3. I have used three callsigns, W1ABC, FK8ABC, and W1ABC/PY. What must be submitted for registration? Answer: You must submit W1ABC and FK8ABC. The portable callsign for W1ABC/PY does not need to be submitted and can be used in DXbase.
4. I just purchased a laptop computer and I want to use DXbase on my laptop. Do I have to obtain a new registration key? Answer: No. The registration key that was originally provided can be applied to your laptop following the normal process for using a registration key.
5. My hard drive crashed and I had to replace it. Do I have to obtain a new registration key? Answer: No. The registration key that was originally provided can be applied after you reinstall DXbase on your new hard drive.
6. What happens if I lose my registration key? Answer: A replacement registration key will need to be obtained if you do not have a saved copy of the registration key that was originally provided to you.
7. How many callsigns can be included in one registration key? Answer: It depends on a number of factors, but generally up to ten callsigns can be registered.
8. I have several callsigns. Do I have to apply separate registration files for each callsign? Answer: No. One registration file will cover all callsigns that were submitted for registration.

Using a Registration File

After submitting your callsigns for registration, a small 1k file will be returned to you. It can be sent to you as an attachment to email or on a floppy disk (charges for mailing a disk would apply).

Registration File by Email

If the file is received by email, simply double click the filename attachment in the email and Windows will ask you if you want to have the information placed in your computer's registry. Answer "yes and the registration process is complete. Alternatively, you could save the

attachment to a folder on your hard drive or to a floppy. If you do this, locate the file after it is saved using Windows Explorer and double click it.

Registration File by Disk Mailing

If the registration file is received on floppy, open Windows Explorer and locate the file on the floppy disk. Double click the filename and windows will ask you if you want the information stored in your computer's registry. Answer "yes and the process is complete.

Save the registration file in a safe place in case it becomes necessary to reinstall DXbase and re-register it.

Using Non Registered Version

The non registered or "trial/demo version of DXbase is offered for prospective users to give it a test drive. DXbase is a very powerful software package and there are many subtle features that a user will generally not know about unless they first take some time to review the on-line help system located from the Help menu item on the main DXbase menu, or from the DXbase program group on the Windows start menu.

If DXbase has not been registered, it will operate in "trial mode subject to the following limitations:

1. The trial period will only last 15 days from the time the software is installed.
2. The only database that can be used in the trial version is a trial database that is provided. Any QSO information that is saved into this database will not be available for use except in the trial version. There are no capabilities to import this later. It is assumed that the "trial or demo version is only used to evaluate features and is not to be used as any kind of a permanent log until after it is registered. The trial database cannot be used in the registered version.
3. A maximum of five QSOs can be added each time you run DXbase in trial mode.
4. Various places in the software where a callsign is used will contain a default callsign.
5. Technical support for questions that are addressed in the on-line help file contained in DXbase will generally not be addressed by direct email. Trial users are welcome to subscribe to the DXbase Reflector and pose questions there; however, it is expected that the internal on-line help file will be used as first choice for answering questions.

New Callsigns

After using DXbase with a particular callsign, you may have occasion to change your callsign. Maybe you obtained a new callsign through the US Vanity callsign process. Whatever the reason, the following process will allow you to change your DXbase software for the new callsign.

NOTE: Prior to being able to use a new callsign in DXbase, the new callsign must be registered. You can request a new registration from the DXbase web site.

Please note that you do not necessarily have to create a new database just because you change callsigns. You may wish to continue to use the same database and change the Opr Call in user options to your new call. This way, past QSOs and new QSOs will share the same database and the Opr Call field of the QSO log will distinguish which callsign was used for that QSO.

This process assumes that you want to keep your existing QSO data and simply change the name of your database:

1. Open User Options General tab and put a check in the "Prompt for database name at startup.
2. Close DXbase.
3. Open Windows Explorer and navigate to your DXbase folder. If you used the default installation, it will be located under Program Files/Scientific Solutions/DXbase xxxx where xxxx is the version number.
4. Copy your existing .MDB file to a new file by clicking on the .mdb filename, use the menu Edit/Copy, then do Edit Paste. On the right side of Windows Explorer, scroll to end of the file list and you will a file called Copy of whatever the filename of your database was. Edit the name to the new name that you want. Be sure to include the .mdb file extension.
5. Close Windows Explorer.
6. Start DXbase and when asked for the Database name, use the selection arrow to select the new database name that you want to use.
7. You can now uncheck the user option from item 1 above.

If you want to start a new empty database for a new callsign, use the DXbase FILE/New Database option to create a new empty database. Perform steps 1, 2, 6, and 7 from above.

Awards

Creating a WAS Award

This feature automatically selects QSO records for the Worked All States award based upon the band and mode selections checked. From the application menu, choose OUTPUT/AWARDS/WAS. Each time you create a report, any previous report is automatically erased and repopulated with the new award information.

Select the source for the records that are to be used to compute this award

Use QSO Log Records – all records in your QSO log will be considered.

Use Wizard Records – only records that were extracted the last time you used the DXbase Wizard are considered.

Select whether you only want to include QSOs that have the CFM field marked as card, or only marked a CFM with Logbook of the World, or both.

Select the band

Select the mode

Select an optional category if you **ONLY** want QSO records of that type used on the award form

Click the COMPUTE button.

QSO Selection Rules

Only QSOs marked as confirmed are eligible

Only QSOs that contain a US State entry are eligible

Only QSOs that contain a Prefix of KH6, KL7, or K are eligible

QSOs marked as satellite will only be chosen when the SAT indicator is checked

Only States contained in the [US States database](#) table will be selected.

Click the QSOFORM button to view your award form. The **callsign** field of the report is populated using the callsign specified in DXCC user settings. To print the award form click the printer ICON located at the top of the screen display of your QSO form. The worksheet button displays your QSO form but also includes information about the confirmation type. This is useful for determining whether an entry is confirmed by LoTW, Card, or both.

Creating a WPX Award

The information here applies to the WPX, 10/10, Special 1, and Special 2 award categories. Creation of these awards is very similar and therefore we explain these awards together here.

DXbase provides an award module that automates the selection of QSO records eligible for submission for the WPX, 10/10, Special 1, and Special 2 award. This module creates a QSO worksheet that lists information for use on the actual award submission form. The form itself is not created in DXbase.

To qualify for selection, QSO records must be marked confirmed, must be marked valid for DXCC, and must satisfy the selection criteria chosen from the Worksheet dialog window at the time the process is started.

To access the Award module, select OUTPUT/AWARDS and the award category from the main menu.

WPX Worksheet

Award Type

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MIXED	883	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	0
<input type="checkbox"/> PHONE	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	0
<input type="checkbox"/> CW	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 30	0
<input type="checkbox"/> RTTY	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 20	0
<input type="checkbox"/> DIGITAL	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 17	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 160	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 15	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 80	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 12	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 40	0		
<input type="checkbox"/> 10	0		

Band Selection: MODE

Select only this type QSO

☐ SAT ☐ QRP ☐ YL

☐ User-1 ☐ User-2

QSO Record Filters

☒ Only QSOs valid for WPX band and mode

☐ Use QSOs with Select Checked

☒ Exclude Past Submissions

☐ Combine RTTY and DIGITAL

Exclude QSOs before: 19451115

Only QSOs with remarks:

Only QSOs Special 1

Only QSOs Special 2

Use Records from

☒ QSO Log ☐ Wizard Records

☒ Cards only ☐ LOTW only ☐ Both

Number Entries 882

Done!

Compute

Abort

QSO Form...

Worksheet

Select the options that you want used to select QSO records and click the Compute button.

Select whether you want to only include QSOs that have the CFM field marked as card, only marked as Logbook of the World, or both.

Use Records From

QSO Log – All records in your QSO log will be considered in computing the award

Wizard Records – Only records extracted the last time you used the DXbase Wizard will be considered.

Award Type

This section allows for identifying the bands that should be used for the award selection process. You can select as many different categories as you want. Place a check mark in the boxes beside each band that DXbase should select. DXbase uses an additive process in selecting QSO records. This means that a single QSO record may qualify for multiple categories and will be used accordingly. For example, if you select Mixed and also 20, DXbase may use a 20 meter QSO for both the mixed and the 20 meter category. This reduces the number of QSO records that are required and selected. The assumption in this approach is that when a QSO is submitted for an award, it will be applied simultaneously to all award categories for which it qualifies. This is similar to the manner in which the ARRL DXCC award is handled.

Select Only QSOs of this Type

This section allows for narrowing the QSO record selection to only those that fit the category chosen. For example, if you check the SAT box, only QSOs that contain a satellite will be chosen. If you place a check in the User 1 box, only QSO records that have the User 1 flag checked will be selected. And so forth.

QSO Record Filters

This section allows for additional narrowing of the QSO record selection process as follows:

Use QSOs with Select checked allows you to specify that DXbase should select as first choice any QSO record which has a check mark in the Select box for the award you have chosen. If this filter is checked, DXbase will review all QSO records and use the ones that are needed which have the Select field marked before it begins selecting records automatically. Remember that even though you may have a check mark in the Select field for a particular QSO record, DXbase will only select that QSO if it is needed to meet the criteria of the award you have chosen. This means that for example, if you have marked the select field of a 20 meter QSO record, but you already have some other 20 meter QSO marked as "credited", DXbase will not use the one marked as Select.

Exclude Past submissions checked causes DXbase to only select new QSO records that qualify for an award. Records will not be selected if you already have credit.

Exclude QSOs before establishes the cut off date for QSOs to be considered eligible. Only QSOs greater than the date selected will be eligible for selection. The Default Date button sets the cutoff date back to the default.

Only QSOs with Remarks allows you to narrow the selection of records to only those that contain the phrase that you enter here. Leave this field empty to ignore the remarks as a filter criteria. Be careful not to enter a space in this field. This might cause filtering for the space character and would be difficult to see.

Only QSOs Special 1 allows you to narrow the eligible records to only those that contain the entry that you enter here.

Only QSOs Special 2 allows you to narrow the eligible records to only those that contain the entry that you enter here.

Combine RTTY and Digital results in DXbase using either a QSO mode of RTTY or a value of Digital when it selects QSOs for the RTTY award. This allows backward compatibility with the RTTY award where digital modes were lumped together as RTTY. If this option is not selected, then only QSOs marked as RTTY will be selected for the RTTY award.

After the record extraction is completed, you will be asked if you want DXbase to update the AWARD field in the QSO log to show that these QSO records have been credited for the type of award just processed. If you answer YES, DXbase will automatically mark the appropriate checkbox in the AWARD field of each QSO record used. It will also remove the check mark, if any, from the SELECT field of each QSO record used.

Click the QSO Form button to view the award worksheet. You can also print the worksheet while viewing.

NOTE: DXbase reuses the same QSO form table when storing the QSOs that are selected for each award module. Therefore, if you click the QSO Form button prior to computing an award, you may see QSOs from a previous award. You should only use the QSO Form button after computing an award.

Creating a WPX Award

The information here applies to the WPX, 10/10, Special 1, and Special 2 award categories. Creation of these awards is very similar and therefore we explain these awards together here.

DXbase provides an award module that automates the selection of QSO records eligible for submission for the WPX, 10/10, Special 1, and Special 2 award. This module creates a QSO worksheet that lists information for use on the actual award submission form. The form itself is not created in DXbase.


To qualify for selection, QSO records must be marked confirmed, must be marked valid for DXCC, and must satisfy the selection criteria chosen from the Worksheet dialog window at the time the process is started.

To access the Award module, select OUTPUT/AWARDS and the award category from the main menu.

WPX Worksheet

Award Type

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MIXED	883	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	0
<input type="checkbox"/> PHONE	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	0
<input type="checkbox"/> CW	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 30	0
<input type="checkbox"/> RTTY	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 20	0
<input type="checkbox"/> DIGITAL	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 17	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 160	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 15	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 80	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 12	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 40	0		
<input type="checkbox"/> 10	0		

 Number Entries 882

Use Records from

☒ QSO Log
 ☐ Wizard Records
☒ Cards only
 ☐ LOTW only
 ☐ Both

Done!

Band Selection: MODE

Select only this type QSO

☐ SAT
 ☐ QRP
 ☐ YL
☐ User-1
 ☐ User-2

QSO Record Filters

☒ Only QSOs valid for WPX band and mode
☐ Use QSOs with Select Checked
☒ Exclude Past Submissions
☐ Combine RTTY and DIGITAL

Default Date

Exclude QSOs before: 19451115

Only QSOs with remarks:

Only QSOs Special 1

Only QSOs Special 2

Compute
 Abort
 QSO Form...
 Worksheet

Select the options that you want used to select QSO records and click the Compute button.

Select whether you want to only include QSOs that have the CFM field marked as card, only marked as Logbook of the World, or both.

Use Records From

QSO Log – All records in your QSO log will be considered in computing the award

Wizard Records – Only records extracted the last time you used the DXbase Wizard will be considered.

Award Type

This section allows for identifying the bands that should be used for the award selection process. You can select as many different categories as you want. Place a check mark in the boxes beside each band that DXbase should select. DXbase uses an additive process in selecting QSO records. This means that a single QSO record may qualify for multiple categories and will be used accordingly. For example, if you select Mixed and also 20, DXbase may use a 20 meter QSO for both the mixed and the 20 meter category. This reduces the number of QSO records that are required and selected. The assumption in this approach is that when a QSO is submitted for an award, it will be applied simultaneously to all award categories for which it qualifies. This is similar to the manner in which the ARRL DXCC award is handled.

Select Only QSOs of this Type

This section allows for narrowing the QSO record selection to only those that fit the category chosen. For example, if you check the SAT box, only QSOs that contain a satellite will be chosen. If you place a check in the User 1 box, only QSO records that have the User 1 flag checked will be selected. And so forth.

QSO Record Filters

This section allows for additional narrowing of the QSO record selection process as follows:

Use QSOs with Select checked allows you to specify that DXbase should select as first choice any QSO record which has a check mark in the Select box for the award you have chosen. If this filter is checked, DXbase will review all QSO records and use the ones that are needed which have the Select field marked before it begins selecting records automatically. Remember that even though you may have a check mark in the Select field for a particular QSO record, DXbase will only select that QSO if it is needed to meet the criteria of the award you have chosen. This means that for example, if you have marked the select field of a 20 meter QSO record, but you already have some other 20 meter QSO marked as "credited", DXbase will not use the one marked as Select.

Exclude Past submissions checked causes DXbase to only select new QSO records that qualify for an award. Records will not be selected if you already have credit.

Exclude QSOs before establishes the cut off date for QSOs to be considered eligible. Only QSOs greater than the date selected will be eligible for selection. The Default Date button sets the cutoff date back to the default.

Only QSOs with Remarks allows you to narrow the selection of records to only those that contain the phrase that you enter here. Leave this field empty to ignore the remarks as a filter criteria. Be careful not to enter a space in this field. This might cause filtering for the space character and would be difficult to see.

Only QSOs Special 1 allows you to narrow the eligible records to only those that contain the entry that you enter here.

Only QSOs Special 2 allows you to narrow the eligible records to only those that contain the entry that you enter here.

Combine RTTY and Digital results in DXbase using either a QSO mode of RTTY or a value of Digital when it selects QSOs for the RTTY award. This allows backward compatibility with the RTTY award where digital modes were lumped together as RTTY. If this option is not selected, then only QSOs marked as RTTY will be selected for the RTTY award.

After the record extraction is completed, you will be asked if you want DXbase to update the AWARD field in the QSO log to show that these QSO records have been credited for the type of award just processed. If you answer YES, DXbase will automatically mark the appropriate checkbox in the AWARD field of each QSO record used. It will also remove the check mark, if any, from the SELECT field of each QSO record used.

Click the QSO Form button to view the award worksheet. You can also print the worksheet while viewing.

NOTE: DXbase reuses the same QSO form table when storing the QSOs that are selected for each award module. Therefore, if you click the QSO Form button prior to computing an award, you may see QSOs from a previous award. You should only use the QSO Form button after computing an award.

Creating a WPX Award

The information here applies to the WPX, 10/10, Special 1, and Special 2 award categories. Creation of these awards is very similar and therefore we explain these awards together here.

DXbase provides an award module that automates the selection of QSO records eligible for submission for the WPX, 10/10, Special 1, and Special 2 award. This module creates a QSO worksheet that lists information for use on the actual award submission form. The form itself is not created in DXbase.

To qualify for selection, QSO records must be marked confirmed, must be marked valid for DXCC, and must satisfy the selection criteria chosen from the Worksheet dialog window at the time the process is started.

To access the Award module, select OUTPUT/AWARDS and the award category from the main menu.

WPX Worksheet

Award Type

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MIXED	883	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	0
<input type="checkbox"/> PHONE	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	0
<input type="checkbox"/> CW	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 30	0
<input type="checkbox"/> RTTY	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 20	0
<input type="checkbox"/> DIGITAL	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 17	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 160	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 15	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 80	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 12	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 40	0		
<input type="checkbox"/> 10	0		

Done!

Band Selection: **MODE**

Select only this type QSO

☐ SAT ☐ QRP ☐ YL

☐ User-1 ☐ User-2

QSO Record Filters

☒ Only QSOs valid for WPX band and mode

☐ Use QSOs with Select Checked

☒ Exclude Past Submissions

☐ Combine RTTY and DIGITAL

Default Date

Exclude QSOs before: 19451115

Only QSOs with remarks:

Only QSOs Special 1

Only QSOs Special 2

Buttons: Compute, Abort, QSO Form..., Worksheet

Number Entries: 882

Use Records from:

☒ QSO Log ☐ Wizard Records

☒ Cards only ☐ LOTW only ☐ Both

Select the options that you want used to select QSO records and click the Compute button.

Select whether you want to only include QSOs that have the CFM field marked as card, only marked as Logbook of the World, or both.

Use Records From

QSO Log – All records in your QSO log will be considered in computing the award

Wizard Records – Only records extracted the last time you used the DXbase Wizard will be considered.

Award Type

This section allows for identifying the bands that should be used for the award selection process. You can select as many different categories as you want. Place a check mark in the boxes beside each band that DXbase should select. DXbase uses an additive process in selecting QSO records. This means that a single QSO record may qualify for multiple categories and will be used accordingly. For example, if you select Mixed and also 20, DXbase may use a 20 meter QSO for both the mixed and the 20 meter category. This reduces the number of QSO records that are required and selected. The assumption in this approach is that when a QSO is submitted for an award, it will be applied simultaneously to all award categories for which it qualifies. This is similar to the manner in which the ARRL DXCC award is handled.

Select Only QSOs of this Type

This section allows for narrowing the QSO record selection to only those that fit the category chosen. For example, if you check the SAT box, only QSOs that contain a satellite will be chosen. If you place a check in the User 1 box, only QSO records that have the User 1 flag checked will be selected. And so forth.

QSO Record Filters

This section allows for additional narrowing of the QSO record selection process as follows:

Use QSOs with Select checked allows you to specify that DXbase should select as first choice any QSO record which has a check mark in the Select box for the award you have chosen. If this filter is checked, DXbase will review all QSO records and use the ones that are needed which have the Select field marked before it begins selecting records automatically. Remember that even though you may have a check mark in the Select field for a particular QSO record, DXbase will only select that QSO if it is needed to meet the criteria of the award you have chosen. This means that for example, if you have marked the select field of a 20 meter QSO record, but you already have some other 20 meter QSO marked as "credited", DXbase will not use the one marked as Select.

Exclude Past submissions checked causes DXbase to only select new QSO records that qualify for an award. Records will not be selected if you already have credit.

Exclude QSOs before establishes the cut off date for QSOs to be considered eligible. Only QSOs greater than the date selected will be eligible for selection. The Default Date button sets the cutoff date back to the default.

Only QSOs with Remarks allows you to narrow the selection of records to only those that contain the phrase that you enter here. Leave this field empty to ignore the remarks as a filter criteria. Be careful not to enter a space in this field. This might cause filtering for the space character and would be difficult to see.

Only QSOs Special 1 allows you to narrow the eligible records to only those that contain the entry that you enter here.

Only QSOs Special 2 allows you to narrow the eligible records to only those that contain the entry that you enter here.

Combine RTTY and Digital results in DXbase using either a QSO mode of RTTY or a value of Digital when it selects QSOs for the RTTY award. This allows backward compatibility with the RTTY award where digital modes were lumped together as RTTY. If this option is not selected, then only QSOs marked as RTTY will be selected for the RTTY award.

After the record extraction is completed, you will be asked if you want DXbase to update the AWARD field in the QSO log to show that these QSO records have been credited for the type of award just processed. If you answer YES, DXbase will automatically mark the appropriate checkbox in the AWARD field of each QSO record used. It will also remove the check mark, if any, from the SELECT field of each QSO record used.

Click the QSO Form button to view the award worksheet. You can also print the worksheet while viewing.

NOTE: DXbase reuses the same QSO form table when storing the QSOs that are selected for each award module. Therefore, if you click the QSO Form button prior to computing an award, you may see QSOs from a previous award. You should only use the QSO Form button after computing an award.

Creating a WPX Award

The information here applies to the WPX, 10/10, Special 1, and Special 2 award categories. Creation of these awards is very similar and therefore we explain these awards together here.

DXbase provides an award module that automates the selection of QSO records eligible for submission for the WPX, 10/10, Special 1, and Special 2 award. This module creates a QSO worksheet that lists information for use on the actual award submission form. The form itself is not created in DXbase.

To qualify for selection, QSO records must be marked confirmed, must be marked valid for DXCC, and must satisfy the selection criteria chosen from the Worksheet dialog window at the time the process is started.

To access the Award module, select OUTPUT/AWARDS and the award category from the main menu.

WPX Worksheet

Award Type

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MIXED	883	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	0
<input type="checkbox"/> PHONE	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	0
<input type="checkbox"/> CW	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 30	0
<input type="checkbox"/> RTTY	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 20	0
<input type="checkbox"/> DIGITAL	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 17	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 160	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 15	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 80	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 12	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 40	0		
<input type="checkbox"/> 10	0		

Use Records from

☒ QSO Log ☐ Wizard Records
☒ Cards only ☐ LOTW only ☐ Both

QSO Record Filters

☒ Only QSOs valid for WPX band and mode
☐ Use QSOs with Select Checked
☒ Exclude Past Submissions
☐ Combine RTTY and DIGITAL

Exclude QSOs before: 19451115

Only QSOs with remarks:

Only QSOs Special 1:

Only QSOs Special 2:

Buttons: Compute, Abort, QSO Form..., Worksheet, Default Date

Select the options that you want used to select QSO records and click the Compute button.

Select whether you want to only include QSOs that have the CFM field marked as card, only marked as Logbook of the World, or both.

Use Records From

QSO Log – All records in your QSO log will be considered in computing the award

Wizard Records – Only records extracted the last time you used the DXbase Wizard will be considered.

Award Type

This section allows for identifying the bands that should be used for the award selection process. You can select as many different categories as you want. Place a check mark in the boxes beside each band that DXbase should select. DXbase uses an additive process in selecting QSO records. This means that a single QSO record may qualify for multiple categories and will be used accordingly. For example, if you select Mixed and also 20, DXbase may use a 20 meter QSO for both the mixed and the 20 meter category. This reduces the number of QSO records that are required and selected. The assumption in this approach is that when a QSO is submitted for an award, it will be applied simultaneously to all award categories for which it qualifies. This is similar to the manner in which the ARRL DXCC award is handled.

Select Only QSOs of this Type

This section allows for narrowing the QSO record selection to only those that fit the category chosen. For example, if you check the SAT box, only QSOs that contain a satellite will be chosen. If you place a check in the User 1 box, only QSO records that have the User 1 flag checked will be selected. And so forth.

QSO Record Filters

This section allows for additional narrowing of the QSO record selection process as follows:

Use QSOs with Select checked allows you to specify that DXbase should select as first choice any QSO record which has a check mark in the Select box for the award you have chosen. If this filter is checked, DXbase will review all QSO records and use the ones that are needed which have the Select field marked before it begins selecting records automatically. Remember that even though you may have a check mark in the Select field for a particular QSO record, DXbase will only select that QSO if it is needed to meet the criteria of the award you have chosen. This means that for example, if you have marked the select field of a 20 meter QSO record, but you already have some other 20 meter QSO marked as "credited", DXbase will not use the one marked as Select.

Exclude Past submissions checked causes DXbase to only select new QSO records that qualify for an award. Records will not be selected if you already have credit.

Exclude QSOs before establishes the cut off date for QSOs to be considered eligible. Only QSOs greater than the date selected will be eligible for selection. The Default Date button sets the cutoff date back to the default.

Only QSOs with Remarks allows you to narrow the selection of records to only those that contain the phrase that you enter here. Leave this field empty to ignore the remarks as a filter criteria. Be careful not to enter a space in this field. This might cause filtering for the space character and would be difficult to see.

Only QSOs Special 1 allows you to narrow the eligible records to only those that contain the entry that you enter here.

Only QSOs Special 2 allows you to narrow the eligible records to only those that contain the entry that you enter here.

Combine RTTY and Digital results in DXbase using either a QSO mode of RTTY or a value of Digital when it selects QSOs for the RTTY award. This allows backward compatibility with the RTTY award where digital modes were lumped together as RTTY. If this option is not selected, then only QSOs marked as RTTY will be selected for the RTTY award.

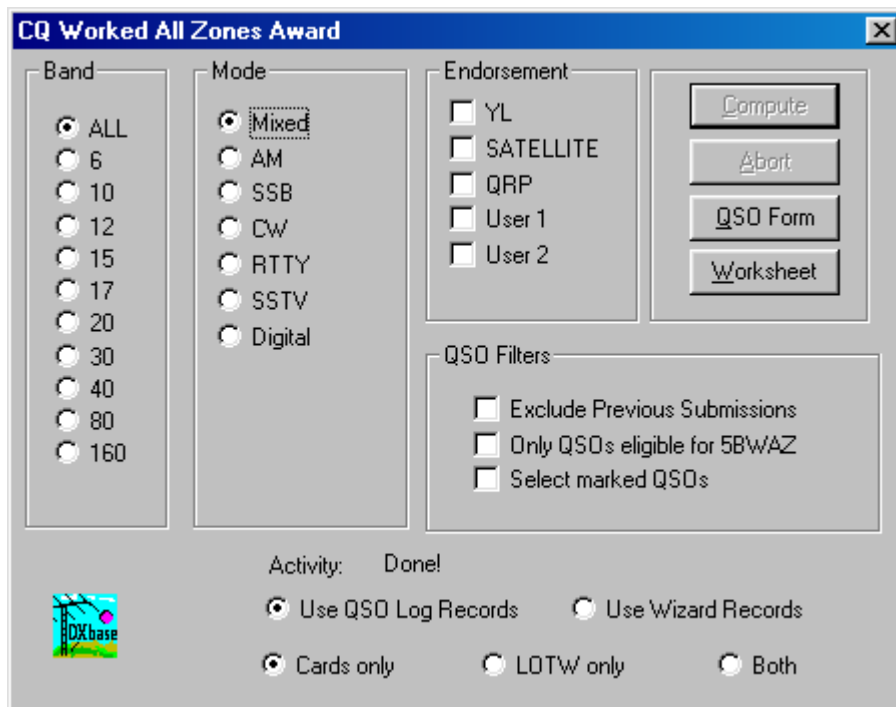
After the record extraction is completed, you will be asked if you want DXbase to update the AWARD field in the QSO log to show that these QSO records have been credited for the type of award just processed. If you answer YES, DXbase will automatically mark the appropriate checkbox in the AWARD field of each QSO record used. It will also remove the check mark, if any, from the SELECT field of each QSO record used.

Click the QSO Form button to view the award worksheet. You can also print the worksheet while viewing.

NOTE: DXbase reuses the same QSO form table when storing the QSOs that are selected for each award module. Therefore, if you click the QSO Form button prior to computing an award, you may see QSOs from a previous award. You should only use the QSO Form button after computing an award.

Creating a WAZ Award

This feature automatically selects QSO records for the CQ Worked All Zones award, based upon the band and mode selections checked. From the application menu, choose OUTPUT/AWARDS/CQ WAZ. Each time you create a report, any previous report is automatically erased and repopulated with the new award information.



Select the band

Select the mode

Select an optional category if you ONLY want QSO records of that type used on the award form

Select any optional QSO record filters. If you do NOT exclude previous submissions, a '*' will be placed next to the entry on the form for any previously submitted QSOs.

Select whether you want to only include QSOs that have the CFM field marked as Card, or only marked CFM with the Logbook of the World, or both.

Click the COMPUTE button.

QSO Selection Rules

Choose the source for the records that are to be used in computing this award:

Use QSL Log Records - all records in your QSO Log will be checked.

Use Wizard Records – only records extracted the last time you used the DXbase Wizard will be used.

Only QSOs marked as confirmed are eligible

Only QSOs dated 790101 and later are eligible for 5 Band WAZ

Only QSOs dated 730101 and later are eligible

QSOs marked as satellite will only be chosen when the SAT indicator is checked

Only QSOs dated 750101 and later are eligible for 160m.

5 Band WAZ

To prepare the 5 Band WAZ submission, you must run the process for each of the five bands. Select each single band, compute and print the form, then repeat for each band.

Click the QSOFORM button to view your award form. The **callsign** field of the report, including Name and address, is populated using the user information specified in DXCC user settings. To print the award form click the printer ICON located at the top of the screen display of your QSO form.

Creating an IOTA Award

DXbase provides an award module that automates the selection of QSO records eligible for submission for the IOTA award. This module creates a QSO worksheet that lists information for use on the actual IOTA submission form. The submission form itself is not created in DXbase. To qualify for selection, QSO records must be marked confirmed, must be marked valid for DXCC, and must satisfy the selection criteria chosen from the IOTA dialog window at the time the process is started.

To access the IOTA Award module, select OUTPUT/AWARDS/IOTA from the main menu.

Select the options that you want used to select QSO records and click the Compute button.

Select whether you want to include only QSOs that have the CFM field marked as card, only marked as Logbook of the World, or both.

Compute – this button initiates the process of extracting records for inclusion on your Award listing based on the options selected.

QSO Form – this button displays a listing of the QSOs that were selected after the compute was finished.

IOTA Form – this button creates an IOTA .UPF file that can be imported into your IOTA software obtained from the RSGB. This allows you to update your master IOTA disk.

Use Records from

QSO Log – all records in your QSO Log are considered.

Wizard Records – only records that were extracted the last time you used the DXbase Wizard are considered.

Exclude Past Submission – This option controls how DXbase will treat QSOs that have already been submitted to the ARRL as reflected by having a check in the DXCC box of the Award field in the QSO record. If you place a check mark in this option, DXbase identifies all QSOs that have already been submitted and does not allow selection of any additional QSOs where the band/mode/country have already been credited. If you do not place a check mark in this option, DXbase ignores the fact that QSOs have already been submitted and it will instead assemble a brand new DXCC award without regard for what might be in the Award field of your QSOs.

Select Marked QSO Records results in DXbase choosing any QSOs which are marked in the DXCC box of the "Select" field in your QSO database. QSOs that are marked in the Select field will be chosen as first choice when the award is being computed. However, QSOs will only be selected if they are needed. Note that if the particular award category does not require a marked QSO then it will not be selected. In addition, if you have already marked some other QSO as submitted in the Award field of the QSO database AND you have chosen to Exclude past submissions, DXbase will not select a QSO that is marked if some other QSO has already been submitted.

Combine RTTY and Digital results in DXbase using either a QSO mode of RTTY or a value of Digital when it selects QSOs for the RTTY award. This allows backward compatibility with the RTTY award prior to the changes made by the ARRL approximately 2004. If this option is not selected, then only QSOs marked as RTTY will be selected for the RTTY award.

After the record extraction is completed, you will be asked if you want DXbase to update the AWARD field in the QSO log for IOTA to show that these QSO records have been credited for the IOTA award. If you answer YES, DXbase will automatically mark the IOTA checkbox in the AWARD field of each QSO record used. It will also remove the check mark from the IOTA SELECT field of each QSO record used. Click the QSO Form button to view the IOTA QSO form. The worksheet button displays the QSO form but also includes information about the type of confirmation. This is useful for determining if the selected QSOs are confirmed by LoTW, Card, or both. You can also print the worksheet while viewing.

NOTE: DXbase reuses the same QSO form table when storing the QSOs that are selected for each award module. Therefore, if you click the QSO Form button prior to computing an award, you may see QSOs from a previous award. You should only use the QSO Form button after computing an award.

Creating a US County Worksheet

DXbase provides an award module that automates the selection of QSO records eligible for submission for the USACA (County Hunters) award. This module creates a QSO worksheet that lists information for use on the actual submission form. The submission form itself is not created in DXbase. To qualify for selection, QSO records must be marked confirmed, must be marked valid for DXCC, and must satisfy the selection criteria chosen from the USACA dialog window at the time the process is started.

To access the USACA Award module, select OUTPUT/AWARDS/USACA from the main menu.

USACA Worksheet

Award Type

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MIXED	8	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	0
<input type="checkbox"/> PHONE	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	0
<input type="checkbox"/> CW	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 30	0
<input type="checkbox"/> RTTY	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 20	0
<input type="checkbox"/> DIGITAL	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 17	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 160	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 15	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 80	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 12	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 40	0		
<input type="checkbox"/> 10	0		

Done!

Band Selection: MODE

Select only this type QSO

☐ SAT ☐ QRP ☐ YL

☐ User-1 ☐ User-2

QSO Record Filters

☐ Not Used

☐ Use QSOs with Select Checked

☒ Exclude Past Submissions

☐ Combine RTTY and DIGITAL

Default Date

Exclude QSOs before: 19451115

Only QSOs with remarks:

Only QSOs Special 1

Only QSOs Special 2

Use Records from

☒ QSO Log ☐ Wizard Records

☒ Cards only ☐ LOTW only ☐ Both

Number Entries 8

Buttons: Compute, Abort, QSO Form..., Worksheet

Select the options that you want used to select QSO records and click the Compute button.

Select whether you want to only include QSOs that have the CFM field marked as card, only marked as Logbook of the World, or both.

Compute – this button initiates the process of extracting records for inclusion on your Award listing based on the options selected.

QSO Form – this button displays a listing of the QSOs that were selected after the compute was finished.

Use Records from

QSO Log – all records in your QSO Log are considered.

Wizard Records – only records that were extracted the last time you used the DXbase Wizard are considered.

QSO Record Filters and Type Filters

These options allow you to filter the QSOs that will be eligible for use on the Award. Set these to suite your needs.

After the record extraction is completed, you will be asked if you want DXbase to update the AWARD field in the QSO log for USACA to show that these QSO records have been credited for the USACA award. If you answer YES, DXbase will automatically mark the USACA checkbox in the AWARD field of each QSO record used. It will also remove the check mark from the USACA SELECT field of each QSO record used. Click the QSO Form button to view the USCA worksheet. You can also print the worksheet while viewing.

NOTE: DXbase reuses the same QSO form table when storing the QSOs that are selected for each award module. Therefore, if you click the QSO Form button prior to computing an award, you may see QSOs from a previous award. You should only use the QSO Form button after computing an award.

DXCC

DXCC Award Process Overview

To the greatest degree possible, DXbase will conform with the ARRL established rules for computation of a DXCC Award. In the "old days", it was necessary to submit a card for each different award classification that you wanted to apply for. Those days are gone, and DXbase will carefully only select QSOs that are required for submission. Today, when you submit a card, it is automatically credited for all possible DXCC awards. The card only has to be submitted once.

DXbase allows you to create an award submission for multiple awards simultaneously and it will only select one card that meets the criteria for all the award combinations that you have marked. For example, if you selected the CW award and also selected the 160 meter award, DXbase will select all the 160 meter cards eligible for the 160 meter award and also select all those that are eligible for the CW award. Note that the individual band selections on the award screen do NOT mean that you only want QSOs for that band, they represent award categories. Therefore, when you select for example "Mixed" and also select 15 meters, this does NOT mean to select only 15 meter QSOs. It means select all cards that are eligible for both the 15 meter award and the mixed award.

Before a QSO will be eligible for selection by DXbase, the QSO must meet certain criteria:

1. The QSO must be confirmed.
2. The Valid field of the QSO record must be checked. If it is only checked for mixed, then this QSO will only be available for use on the mixed award. If the Valid mode box is not checked, then the QSO will not be eligible for use on any of the individual band awards.
3. If a QSO has been checked in the DXCC box of the Award field, then this QSO is considered to be already on record at the ARRL. Therefore, DXbase will NOT select another QSO for award submission for the same criteria that was already satisfied by the previous submission.
4. Some award categories only accept QSOs that were made after a certain date. DXbase has internal logic that knows about these and it will not select a QSO that does not meet this rule.
5. DXbase provides a field in the QSO record called Select. This allows you to specify that you want this QSO selected as first choice when DXbase looks for QSO records that qualify for award submission. However, be ware that even though you mark a QSO to be selected, DXbase will not select this QSO unless it

is needed for the award that you are computing. For example, if you already have a QSO for Germany marked as credited (meaning that the ARRL already has seen this card), and you mark some other QSO for Germany under the Select column of the QSO, DXbase would not use the second card for a mixed award since it knows that you already have credit for this country. The exception is if you choose the option on the Award screen to exclude past submissions.

6. Remember that QSOs prior to 1975 are not eligible for band/mode awards. DXbase automatically marks these QSOs as not Valid for the mode when you log the QSO record. Therefore, these QSOs will not be selected by DXbase when you request a specific mode award such as CW.

When you select the DXCC Award module and perform a compute for an award, a number of tables are created to keep track of this award computation. If you want to recompute a different award, it is necessary that you first close the award module and reopen it so that all the necessary tracking tables can be reinitialized.

In general, the ARRL does not require the submission of a QSO form any more. However, for your convenience, DXbase will create this form for your use. Please note that the information provided here and the design of the DXCC Award module is based on the rules in effect by the ARRL at the time the software was released to the market.

Creating a DXCC Award

The ARRL DXCC Award Submission forms can be automatically created based on the January 1, 2002 formats specified by the ARRL. Each time you create an award list, any previous list is automatically erased and repopulated with the new award information.

From the application menu select OUTPUT/AWARDS/DXCC.

DXCC Award Submission

DXCC Award Type

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MIXED	324	<input type="checkbox"/> 6	0
<input type="checkbox"/> PHONE	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 2	0
<input type="checkbox"/> CW	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 30	0
<input type="checkbox"/> RTTY	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 20	0
<input type="checkbox"/> DIGITAL	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 17	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 160	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 15	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 80	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 12	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 40	0		
<input type="checkbox"/> 10	0		

Band Selection: MODE

Select only this type QSO

☐ SAT ☐ QRP ☐ YL

☐ User-1 ☐ User-2

QSO Record Filters

☒ Exclude Past Submissions

☐ Select Marked QSO Records

☐ Select Only Valid for Field Check

☒ Select Deleted Countries

☒ Combine RTTY and DIGITAL

ARRL Date

Exclude QSOs before: 19451115

Only QSOs with remarks:

Only QSOs Special 1

Only QSOs Special 2

Select Records From

☒ QSO Log ☐ Wizard Records

☒ Cards only ☐ LOTW only ☐ Both

Number Pages: 1

Number Entries: 8

Done!

Compute

Abort

Front Sheet...

QSO Form...

Worksheet

Select Records from

QSO Log – DXbase uses the contents of your complete QSO log to compute the award results

Wizard Records – DXbase only looks at the records that were extracted the last time you used the DXbase Wizard to create a subset of your QSO log. This is useful when you want to create an award listing based on a subset of your QSO log.

DXCC Award Type

Check the award categories that you wish to have generated. Note that DXbase allows for some selections that are not valid ARRL DXCC categories. These selections are provided for your convenience in the event that they are eventually added as valid awards or if you need this option to compete in club competition.

Select only this type QSO

If you check SAT, QRP, YL, USER1, or USER2 boxes ONLY QSOs that are marked as this type in your QSO database will be selected.

QSO Record Filters

Check the options that are of interest to you in producing your DXCC Award:

Cards | LOTW | BOTH

You can elect to only include QSOs for each of these categories in the award compilation. You can only allow QSOs that are marked CFM with a Card, or only marked CFM with the Logbook of the World, or both.

Exclude Past Submission – This option controls how DXbase will treat QSOs that have already been submitted to the ARRL as reflected by having a check in the DXCC box of the Award field in the QSO record. If you place a check mark in this option, DXbase identifies all QSOs that have already been submitted and does not allow selection of any additional QSOs where the band/mode/country have already been credited. If you do not place a check mark in this option, DXbase ignores the fact that QSOs have already been submitted and it will instead assemble a brand new DXCC award without regard for what might be in the Award field of your QSOs.

Select Marked QSO Records results in DXbase choosing any QSOs which are marked in the DXCC box of the "Select" field in your QSO database. QSOs that are marked in the Select field will be chosen as first choice when the award is being computed. However, QSOs will only be selected if they are needed. Note that if the particular award category does not require a marked QSO then it will not be selected. In addition, if you have already marked some other QSO as submitted in the Award field of the QSO database AND you have chosen to Exclude past submissions, DXbase will not select a QSO that is marked if some other QSO has already been submitted.

Select Only Valid for Field Check results in DXbase only choosing QSO records that are valid for submission to an ARRL Field Check representative. This decision is based on the following rules:

In order for the country to be eligible, it must be marked valid for field check in the primary prefix database.

160 meter QSOs are not eligible for field check and are automatically excluded.

QSOs that are more than ten years old from the date of Award submission cannot be field checked. Therefore, to insure that DXbase does not select any of these QSOs, make sure that you change the cutoff date listed so that QSOs prior to ten years ago are not selected.

Exclude QSOs before results in DXbase ignoring any records where the QSO data is earlier than the date entered in this field. ARRL rules state that only QSO records after 45/11/15 are valid; however, DXbase allows you to specify any cutoff date so that you can prepare submissions for club competition if desired. The format for entry in this field is YYMMDD with no other characters.

Combine RTTY and Digital results in DXbase using either a QSO mode of RTTY or a value of Digital when it selects QSOs for the RTTY award. This allows backward compatibility with the RTTY award prior to the changes made by the ARRL approximately 2004. If this option is not selected, then only QSOs marked as RTTY will be selected for the RTTY award.

Drop Down Calendar - Use the drop down calendar for selecting a cutoff date different from the standard ARRL default. Click the downward arrow button to activate the calendar selection window.

ARRL Default - Click this button if you want DXbase to overwrite the current data in the Exclude QSOs before field with the standard ARRL default.

Only QSOs with remarks results in DXbase excluding any QSO records that do NOT contain the exact characters entered in this field. Leave this field blank to allow DXbase to consider all QSO records. Be careful that you do not accidentally enter a blank space in this field. If you do, DXbase will look for QSOs with a space in the remarks field. Probably not what you want!

Only QSOs with Special 1 results in DXbase excluding any QSO records that do NOT contain the exact characters entered in this field. Leave this field blank to allow DXbase to consider all QSO records. Be careful that you do not accidentally enter a blank space in this field. If you do, DXbase will look for QSOs with a space in the Special 1 field.

Only QSOs with Special 2 results in DXbase excluding any QSO records that do NOT contain the exact characters entered in this field. Leave this field blank to allow DXbase to consider all QSO records. Be careful that you do not accidentally enter a blank space in this field. If you do, DXbase will look for QSOs with a space in the Special 1 field.

After selecting the appropriate options, click the COMPUTE button to begin the Award creation process. When the process is finished, the magnifying glass will stop moving and "DONE" will appear at the top of the dialog box. Click the FRONT SHEET button to see the DXCC Application form, or click the QSO FORM button to view the QSO submission form. This is the QSO form suitable for submission to ARRL field checkers. Under current ARRL rules, the form is not required when submitting your application directly to the ARRL. The worksheet button displays the same contents as the QSO form but in addition it shows the type of confirmation that you have for this record. This is handy for identifying whether the award entry is based on LoTW, Card, or both.

Set your Personal Options

Be sure that you have set your Personal Options located under [TOOLS/OPTIONS/Personal Options](#). If you have not done this, the information contained on the Front Sheet will have default name, address, and callsign information instead of your information.

QSO Selection Rules

Only QSOs marked as confirmed are eligible

Only QSOs marked as valid for DXCC are eligible

Only QSOs marked as valid for the mode are eligible for awards dependent on the QSO mode, such as CW

QSOs marked as satellite will only be chosen when the SAT indicator is checked

Only QSOs that contain a valid ARRL prefix. Usually this will always be true unless you changed prefixes in the [Primary Prefix database](#) but neglected to update the prefixes in your QSO records

NOTE: DXbase reuses the same QSO form table when storing the QSOs that are selected for each award module. Therefore, if you click the QSO Form button prior to computing an award, you may see QSOs from a previous award. You should only use the QSO Form button after computing an award.

DXCC Awards

This screen allows you to record information about DXCC Awards that you may have received. Use of this screen is optional. The information is not used by DXbase for any purpose. It is here just for your convenience. To access this screen, choose TOOLS/OPTIONS/Personal Options from the main menu.

Personal Data and Callsign [X]

Operator DXCC Awards **VUCC**

General Categories		Band Categories	
	Date Last Submitted	Certificate Number	
Mixed	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	160 M
Phone	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	80 M
CW	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	40 M
RTTY	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	30M
Satellite	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	20M
5BDXCC	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	17M
6 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	15M
2 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	12M
			10 M

OK Cancel Help

We recommend using the MM/DD/YY format in all date fields. Although these entries are not currently used by DXbase, they may be used in the future. Any future release will expect this date format.

Enter the appropriate data in the fields provided. Click OK to save your entries or cancel to abandon them.

Multiple QSOs on same card

As of this publication, the ARRL specifies that if you submit a QSO listing form with your application any cards that contain multiple QSOs should be listed at the end of your DXCC QSO form. DXbase provides the capability for this requirement to be met, but it requires the user to populate the QSL# field in the QSO log for any QSLs that contain multiple QSOs. If the QSL# field is not used, then this support will not work in DXbase and any qualifying QSOs for your award submission form will be inserted in your form according to the band/mode of the QSO.

The value that can be put into the QSL# field is arbitrary and can be made up by the user. For example, you might wish to make up a QSL# value of 200401 showing that it was the first card of year 2004. Or, maybe you want to use 040301 showing it as year 04, month 03, and card number 01. Or still, you might use 12358. The value that you put into this field is not important except for the following three rules:

1. The value must be unique for the QSL card and the value must be entered for each QSO that is being confirmed by this card. So for example, if I receive a card containing two QSOs, I would locate both QSOs in my log and enter the same value in the QSL# field. We urge you to develop a numbering scheme that is easy to remember and that allows you to insure that you do not use duplicate numbers inappropriately.
2. The value entered in the QSL# field cannot be used for more than one QSL card. If you enter the same value from QSOs that are not confirmed on the same card, the award generation process will not work properly.
3. The value entered in the QSL# field must be numeric.

VUCC Award

VUCC Award Creation

DXbase provides two different modules for creating VUCC Worksheets for award preparation. This module provides the means to automatically select QSO records that would qualify for the VUCC award based various VHF/UHF bands. HF bands are excluded in the selection process. To access this module, choose OUTPUT/AWARDS/VUCC/UHF VUCC from the main menu.

VUCC Worksheet

Award Type

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MIXED	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 1240	0
<input type="checkbox"/> PHONE	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 2300	0
<input type="checkbox"/> CW	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 3300	0
<input type="checkbox"/> RTTY	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 5650	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 6	0		
<input type="checkbox"/> 4	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 10G	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 2	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 24G	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 222	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 47G	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 432	0	<input type="checkbox"/> 75G	0
<input type="checkbox"/> 902	0		

Band Selection: MODE

Select only this type QSO

☐ SAT ☐ QRP ☐ YL

☐ User-1 ☐ User-2

QSO Record Filters

☐ Use six character grid square

☐ Use QSOs with Select Checked

☐ Exclude Past Submissions

Exclude QSOs before: 19451115

Only QSOs with remarks:

Only QSOs Special 1

Only QSOs Special 2

Buttons: Done!, Compute, Abort, QSO Form..., Worksheet, Front Sheet

Number Entries: 0

Options:

☒ Use QSO Log Records ☐ Use Wizard Records

☒ Cards only ☐ LOTW only ☐ Both

Award Type

These settings establish the bands that will be selected for the worksheet. Place a check mark beside each of the categories of interest. DXbase will not choose duplicates. The assumption that when a QSO is selected, it will be applied for each Award Category for which it qualifies.

Select Only this Type QSO

These settings allow for narrowing the selection to one or more of these categories. If a check mark is placed in any of these categories, only QSOs of that type will be considered eligible for selection.

QSO Record Filters

Use Six Character Grid Square. The default (unchecked) is the first four characters. If you select this option, DXbase will treat each six- character grid as unique and will select each one for inclusion.

Select whether you only want to include QSOs that have the CFM field marked as card, only marked as Logbook of the World, or both.

Use QSOs with Select Checked. This option causes DXbase to select as first choice, any QSO record that has the VUCC checked in the Select field of the QSO record. Even though you may have a check in the VUCC Select field, DXbase will only use this QSO if it qualifies for submission based on the Award Type you have selected.

Exclude Past Submissions. This option causes DXbase to ignore any previous submissions and reselect all eligible QSO records.

Exclude QSOs before. This setting causes DXbase to exclude any QSO records with a date prior to the date entered in this field. Use the arrow button to activate the drop down calendar for date selection. If you click the Default button, DXbase will restore the original date in this field.

Only QSOs with Remarks. If you enter text in this field, DXbase will only select QSO records that contain this text in the remarks field of the QSO record.

Only QSOs special 1. If you enter text in this field, DXbase will only select QSO records that contain an exact match with the Special 1 field in the QSO record.

Only QSOs special 2. If you enter text in this field, DXbase will only select QSO records that contain an exact match with the Special 2 field of the QSO record.

After setting options, click the Compute button. Upon completion, DXbase will ask you if you want the Credit and Select VUCC fields automatically updated for the QSO records that were selected. If you answer Yes, DXbase will put a check mark in the Credit VUCC field of each QSO, and it will remove any check marks that were present in the Select VUCC field.

Click the QSO form button to see the QSO worksheet that was produced. You can print the QSO form while viewing it on your screen.

VUCC

This screen is used to save information about any VUCC awards you may have received. It is not used for any purpose within DXbase. It is here simply to offer you a convenient place to record VUCC award information. To access this screen, select Tools/Options/Personal from the main menu.

	Date Last Submitted	Total Grids		Date Last Submitted	Total Grids
50 MHz			10 GHz		
144 MHz			24 GHz		
222 MHz			47 GHz		
432 MHz			75 GHz		
902 MHz			119 GHz		
1296 MHz			142 GHz		
2.3 GHz			241 GHz		
3.4 GHz			Laser		
5.7 GHz			Satellite		

OK Cancel Help

We recommend using the MM/DD/YY format in all date fields. Although these entries are not currently used by DXbase, they may be used in the future. Any future release will expect this date format.

Enter the appropriate data in the fields provided. Click OK to save your entries or cancel to abandon them.

Reports related to Awards

Award Utility Reports

For your convenience, several sample user designed list reports have been provided which produce printouts of Award related information for some of the awards supported in DXbase. These are not the same as the awards forms that are create when you run the awards module. These are supplementary reports that give you further ability to view related QSO information. These reports are categorized as User Designed Lists since they were created as a user designed list. The default awards related reports include the following:

Awddxcc includes the Prefix, Credited for DXCC, and Select for DXCC fields

Dxcccred shows QSOs marked as credited for DXCC in the Award field of the QSO.

Dxccselst shows QSOs marked for selection in the Select field of the QSO.

Awdwaz includes the CQ Zone, Credited for WAZ, and Select for WAZ fields

Awdvucc includes the Grid Square, Credited for VUCC, and Select for VUCC fields

Awdiota includes the IOTA, Credited for IOTA, and Select for IOTA fields

Awdwpx includes the WPX, Credited for WPX, and Select for WPX fields.

Awdten includes the TenTen, Credited for TenTen, and Select for TenTen fields.

Awdspec1 includes the Special 1, Credited for Special 1, and Select for Special 1 fields.

Awdspec2 includes the Special 2, Credited for Special 2, and Select for Special 2 fields.

In addition, all of the above include the Callsign, Date, Mode, Band, and QSL# fields.

Printing Awards Related Reports

1. From the main menu, select OUTPUT/User Designed List.
2. Select the source and sort order for the QSO records that will appear.
3. Follow the prompts that are presented.

Record Selection Filtering

If you want to restrict the type of QSO records that appear on these reports, use the DXbase Wizard to select the QSO records, and select Wizard Data as your source data when printing the report.

Produce Special Award info by reports

There are many special award programs available throughout the world. Some of the more popular award programs can be tracked through the use of the special 1, special 2, and notes field in the DXbase QSO record. By entering the necessary information, standard reports can be used to give you information about that awards progress. Some of the standard reports available include:

AJD - All Japan Districts Award

ARLHS - Amateur Radio Lighthouse Society

BCA - Belgian Castles Award

CISA - Canadian Islands Award

CLHA - Croatian Lighthouses Award

DCE - Spanish Castles Award

DCI - Italian Castles Award

DFCF - French Castles and Forts Award

DIE - Spanish Islands Award

DIEI - Spanish Interior Islands Award

DIFM - French Islands Award

DIFO - French Overseas Islands Award

DIP - Portugese Islands Award

DLD - German Districts (DOK)

DLI - Italian Lakes Award

DMF - French Mills Awards

DPLF - French Lighthouses Award

GIA/DID - German Islands Award

IIA - Italian Islands Award

ILIA - Italian Lake Islands Award

IOCA - Croatian Islands Award

IOSA - Islands of Scotland Award

JCC - Japan Century-Cities Award

JCG - Japan Century-Guns Award

JIA - Japan Island Award

MIA - Mediterranean Islands Award

RDA - Russian Districts Award

RFFA - Russian Flora Fauna Award

RIIA - Russian Internal Islands Award

RLHA - Russian Lighthouses Award

RRA - Russian Robinson Award

SCOTIA - Scottish Islands Award

TPEA - Worked Spanish Provinces Award

UIA - Ukrainian Islands Award

USI - U.S. Islands Award

WABA - Worked all Antarctica Bases

WAIL - Worked all Italian Lighthouses

WAJA - Worked All Japan prefectures Award

WLH - World Lighthouses

CW Interface

CW-Interface Overview

DXbase supports three different ways to accomplish computerized CW:

1. **Internal DXbase Keyer** – this support is a carry over from the days of MSDOS. We urge users to review the topic, "how Windows works to understand some of the significant limitations of this methodology. This interface creates the morse code within DXbase and uses a special driver to turn the DTR lead of your serial port on and off to correspond to the dits and dahs. This methodology requires an external keying circuit connected to your serial port consisting of a diode and resister. It also requires the use of a legacy driver that is provided with DXbase. But the driver has its own limitations and will only work on vintage serial ports. Additionally, the use of the driver automatically disables the standard Windows hypernate functionality. The driver may not work on modern day serial ports since their design is much different than the "old days.
2. **W5XD Multiport+** - this support provides an interface to an external board that is connected to your serial port. Characters to be sent are delivered to the board that translates them into morse code. This device contains its own CPU for processing the CW and is therefore not subject to any time slicing that might be occurring on your computer under Windows. It allows for uninterrupted CW. As of this writing, the W5XD Multiport+ was designed to handle more than just CW. It is a companion product for the Writelog contest software and it provides for a rig control interface in Writelog. This device requires an external power source. DXbase only supports the CW interface functionality of this device. This device can deliver "perfect cw" and there are no adverse conflicts with standard Windows features.
3. **K1EL Winkey** – this support provides an interface to an external board that is connected to your serial port. Characters to be sent are delivered to the board that translates them into morse code. This device

contains its own CPU for processing the CW and is therefore not subject to any time slicing that might be occurring on your computer under Windows. It allows for uninterrupted CW. As of this writing, the K1EL Winkey does not require any external power source and its sole functionality is to perform computerized CW sending. This device can deliver "perfect cw and there are no adverse conflicts with the standard Windows features.

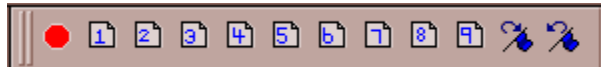
How Windows Works

The generation of CW is a very time sensitive process. The quality of the CW dots and dashes is controlled entirely by timing. Unfortunately, the Windows operating system is a time slicing design. This means that you can have many active programs and processes running simultaneously. In most cases, you will not be aware of the fact that each running application is only being given a percentage of the CPU. Windows lets program 1 run for some period of time, then program 2, then program 3, and so forth. The transition is very fast. However, for something like CW, this time slicing process is not conducive to the critical timing that is required to produce quality CW. Because of this fundamental design in Windows, it is necessary to consider your needs and choose the type of interface that will best serve you.

CW-Sending CW

There are two ways to send CW from within DXbase. You can send a stored message. Or, you can type the characters to be sent into the transmit entry window.

Sending a Stored Message

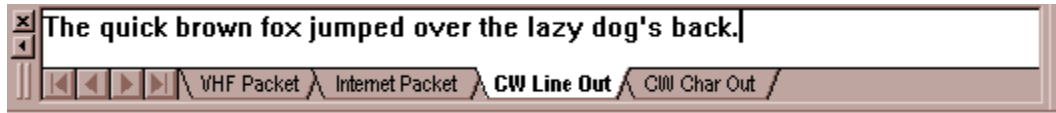


1. Click the Stop ICON to cancel outgoing CW. (You may have to click it more than once depending on how much data is already stored in the outgoing buffer).
2. Click the buttons numbered 1 to 9 to send a stored message. When you position your cursor over a button, the text of the stored message will be momentarily displayed. You will find that the user interface performs more effectively if you do not click more than one button at a time. If you do, there might be a slight freezing of the screen while both messages are read into the outgoing buffers.
3. To increase or decrease the CW speed, click the blue flag ICONs respectively. You can change the speed while CW is being sent.

The WPM speed will be displayed in the DXbase status bar at the bottom of your screen.

Sending Typed Text

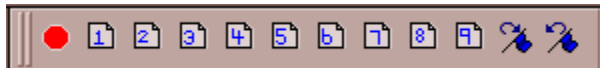
DXbase provides two ways to send typed text. One method allows you type an entire line of text that is not sent until you press the return key. The second method sends each character immediately as it is typed.



Select the appropriate tab for the type of operation you desire.

CW-Changing Speed

At the time you start DXbase, the initial WPM that will be used is based on the setting you have made in CW user options for the type of keying interface that you have selected. You can also change the WPM while sending CW by using the arrows on the CW toolbar.

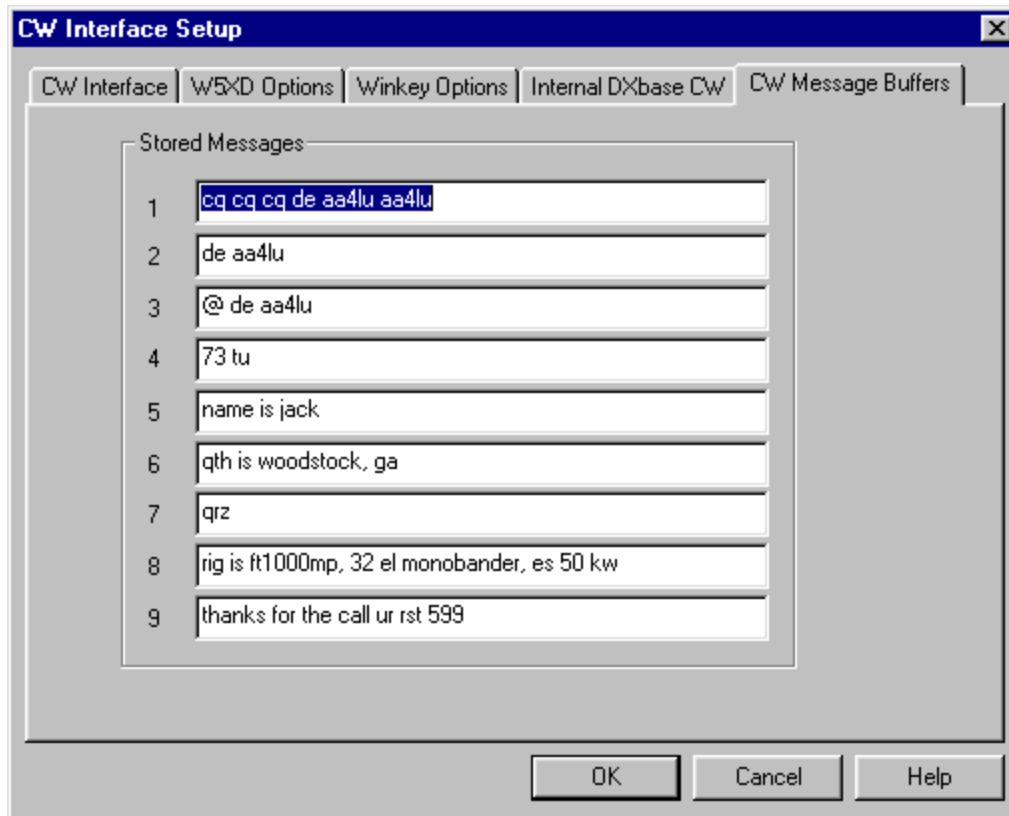


Click the flag ICON to change the speed up or down. Each time the speed is changed, the new speed is automatically saved as the default in user options.

The current CW speed is displayed in the DXbase status bar located at the bottom of your DXbase screen.

CW-Memories

DXbase allows you to predefine nine stored messages. Once stored in options, you can send each message by simply clicking the appropriate button on the CW Toolbar. These stored messages can be used for each of the three CW interface types in DXbase.



To store CW messages, open user options by selecting Tools/Options/User Options from the main menu. Then select the CW Messages tab. Enter the text for each message and click OK when finished.

The character sign @ may be placed in the text of a message. This character tells DXbase to substitute the current callsign from the log whenever it encounters the @ character in the text of a message. For example, if you entered:

@ de aa4lu

If the current log entry was LA7QI, then DXbase would send LA7QI de AA4LU in CW.

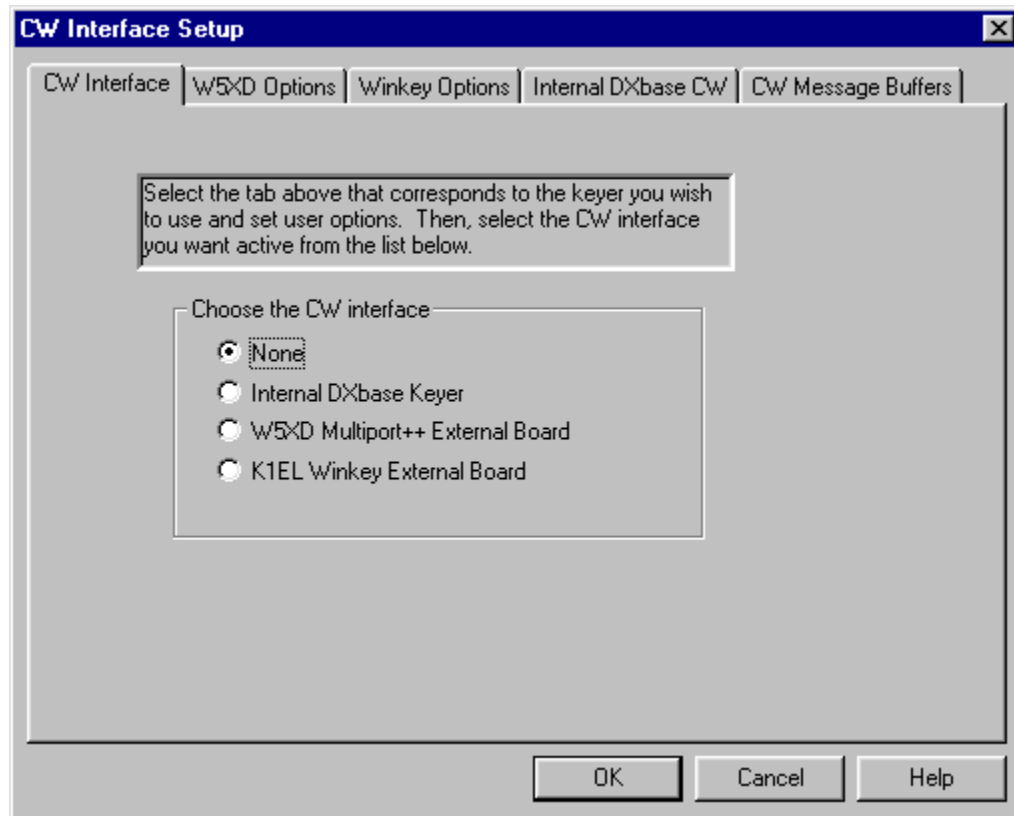
If you wish to have trailing space characters at the end of a cw message, enter an asterik (*) for each trailing space that you want. DXbase will automatically convert the asterik character to a space when sending your stored message.

Activating a CW Interface

The process of activating a CW interface requires the following steps:

Obtain and install the CW interface components for the type of CW interface that you wish to use. Then, set user options in DXbase.

1. Select from the main menu Tools | Options | CW Options.



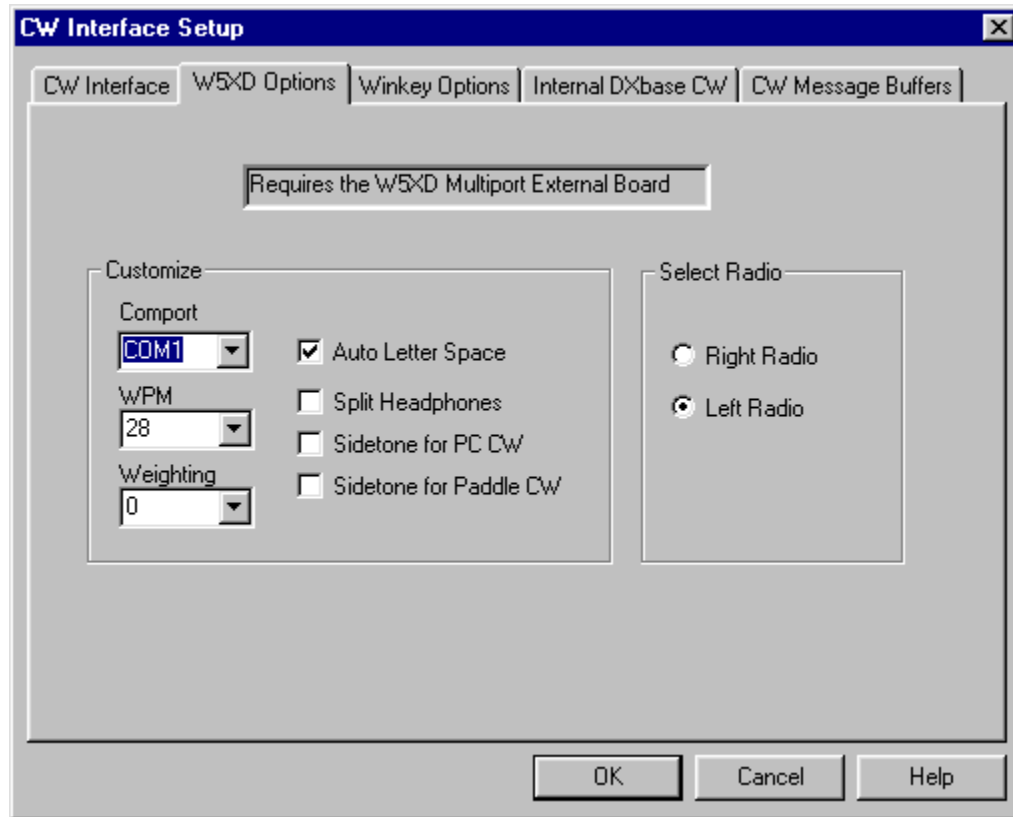
2. Select the tab for the type of CW interface that you wish to use. There are three different types of CW interfaces supported in DXbase: Internal CW keying, W5XD Multiport+, and K1EL Winkey.
3. Set the options on the page chosen in step 2 above.
4. Select the CW Interface tab and click the type of interface that you wish to use.
5. Click OK to save your changes and activate the interface

W5XD Multiport+

W5XD Multiport+ User Options

Review the documentation that was received with your W5XD Multiport+ hardware so that you are familiar with the various option terminology for this device. The support that is provided within DXbase for this device is limited to the CW sending capabilities of the board. DXbase does not use this board for HF radio interface.

1. Install the device in your shack and connect the serial cable between your computer and the device.
2. Select Tools | Options | CW Options from the DXbase main menu and click the W5XD tab.



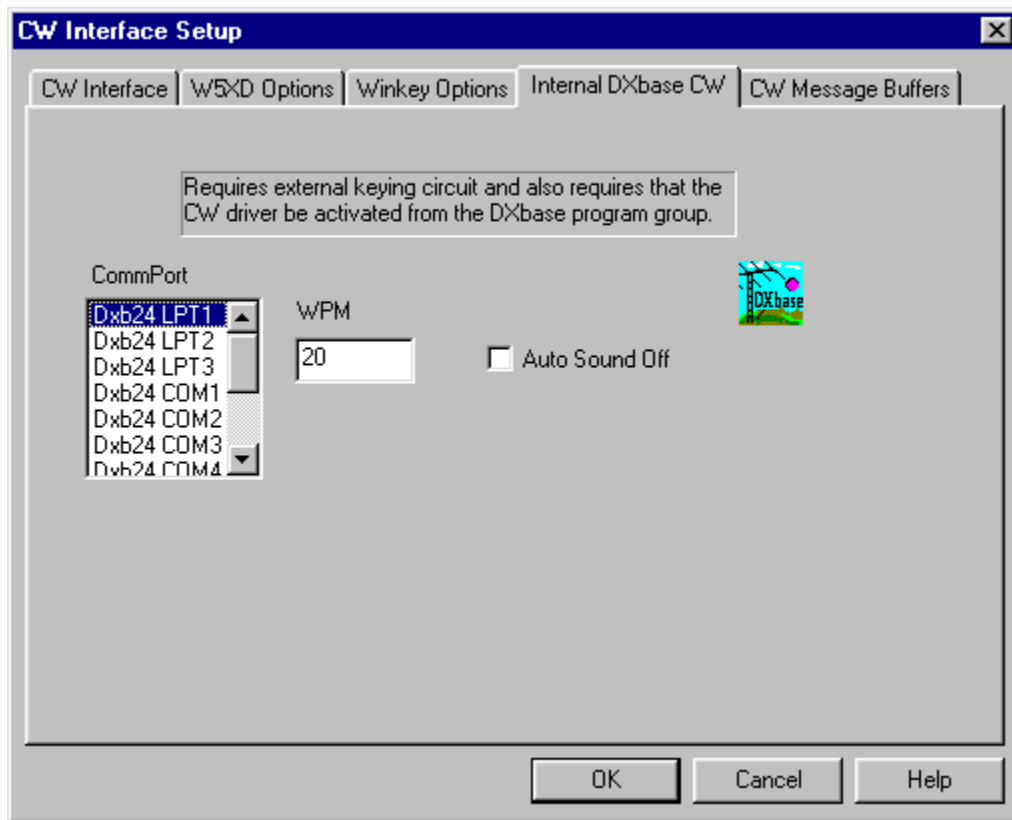
3. Select the serial comport. Remember that DXbase does NOT use this serial port for rig control. This port will only be used to send cw to the W5XD board.
4. Select the default WPM. You can adjust the WPM from the CW toolbar on the main DXbase screen.
5. Select the remaining options for personal preference. Be sure to select the right or left radio based on your options set on the W5XD board and also your wiring connections between the board and your radio keyjack.
6. After setting these options, select the CW Interface tab and click the W5XD Multiport+ entry to activate your CW interface.

Internal DXbase Keyer

Internal DXbase Keyer

This legacy interface may work in some installations; however, newer hardware and operating systems may preclude this interface from working under modern day Windows.

1. Review the diagram of the circuit required and configure this externally on your serial port.
2. Connect the output side of the circuit to your radio keyer.
3. Set user options for comport and WPM.



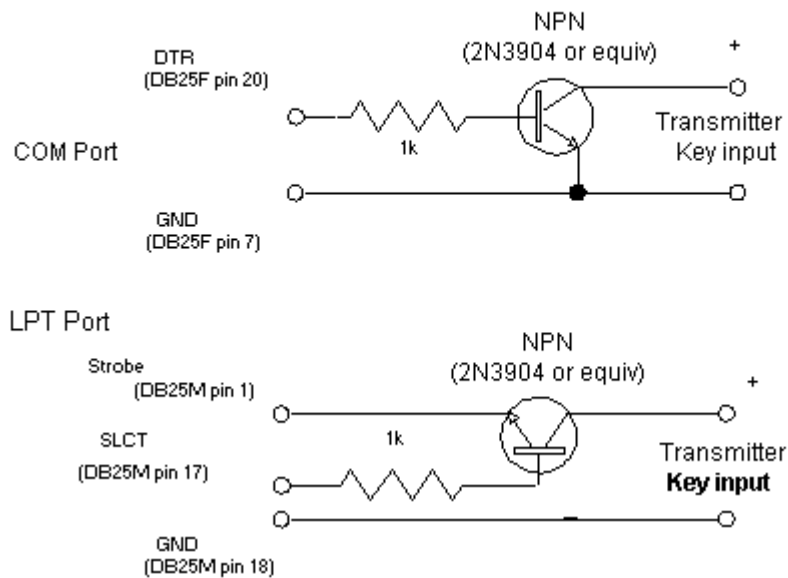
4. Auto Sound off is a feature that automatically turns sound playing within DXbase off when you first send CW. This is important to reduce the likelihood of jerky CW when sounds play. If you set this option, you must click the sound icon to turn sounds back on after you finish using the CW interface.
5. Click the CW Interface tab and select the Internal Keyer option.
6. Click OK to save your options.

CW-Simple Keying Circuit

This schematic illustrates a simple keying circuit that can be constructed for use with the internal DXbase CW interface. This is the same circuit that is used in many of the contest programs around. DXbase allows you to use the same serial port for CW that is used for your TNC or HF radio provided it does not use the DTR leads. Some TNCs do use the DTR leads, so we recommend that you check your TNC and/or HF radio specifications to determine its suitability for sharing the leads. If necessary, you may need to use the CW keying circuit on its own serial or parallel port. To install this circuit, run the leads out of the RS232 connector and connect the circuit as shown below. You may place the components inside the RS232 shell cover.

Important

If you use the same serial port for your TNC and for CW keying, you must uncheck the DTR high option in the TNC user options. Failure to do this will result in a constant keydown condition. DXbase supports a standard serial port designated as COM1 through COM8. It will also support LPT1, 2, and 3.



Note: This circuit is NOT used with the W5XD Multi+ external keyer or the K1EL Winkey keyer.

DXbase Registry Entries

As part of the installation of DXbase, a number of entries are required to be present in your Registry in order to use the internal CW keyer functionality contained in DXbase. These entries are required to properly establish the software interface between DXbase and your serial or parallel port. These entries cause a special hardware driver to be loaded on your machine that is necessary for the internal CW module of DXbase to operate. If you are using the W5XD keyer interface, these entries and special driver are not used. These entries are not used for any of the other DXbase features.

For your convenience, [a utility is provided that will populate your registry](#). You access this utility from the DXbase Program group from your Windows Start button.

The registry entries for Win95/98/ME are located as follows:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE

System

CurrentControlSet

Services

VxD

DriverX

DXB24 COM1

DXB24 COM2

DXB24 COM3

DXB24 COM4

DXB24 COM5

DXB24 COM6

DXB24 COM7

DXB24 COM8

DXB24 LPT1

DXB24 LPT2

DXB24 LPT3

The registry entries for WinNT, XP, and Windows 2000 are located as follows:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE

System

CurrentControlSet

Services

DriverX ErrorControl 0x0001

Start 2

Type 1

Parameters

DXB24 COM1

DXB24 COM2

DXB24 COM3

DXB24 COM4

DXB24 COM5

DXB24 COM6

DXB24 COM7

DXB24 COM8

DXB24 LPT1

DXB24 LPT2

DXB24 LPT3

There are three keys assigned for each port entry:

Ignoreconflicts = 0x01

PortCount = 0x7

PortBase = as described below

Notice that DXbase makes an entry for eight serial ports and three parallel ports. If your computer does not contain this many serial or parallel ports, the entries will do no harm. For each entry, one of the parameters that is placed in the registry is the hex address for the port. DXbase assumes the standard address to be as follows:

COM1 3f8

COM2 2f8

COM3 3e8

COM4 2e8

COM5 2f0

COM6 3e0

COM7 2e0

COM8 260

LPT1 378

LPT2 278

LPT3 3BC

If you are unsure, or having difficulty with CW working, you can check your system by doing the following:

From the Windows Start Button, activate Control Panel and select the System ICON.

Click on Device Manager tab

Double click on the serial or parallel port entry in question

Click the Resource tab.

The address being used by your system will be displayed.

If it is different than the default assigned by DXbase, you will need to modify the registry entry.

To modify the registry:

From the Windows Start menu, choose Run and enter regedit

Navigate the tree to the index as listed above.

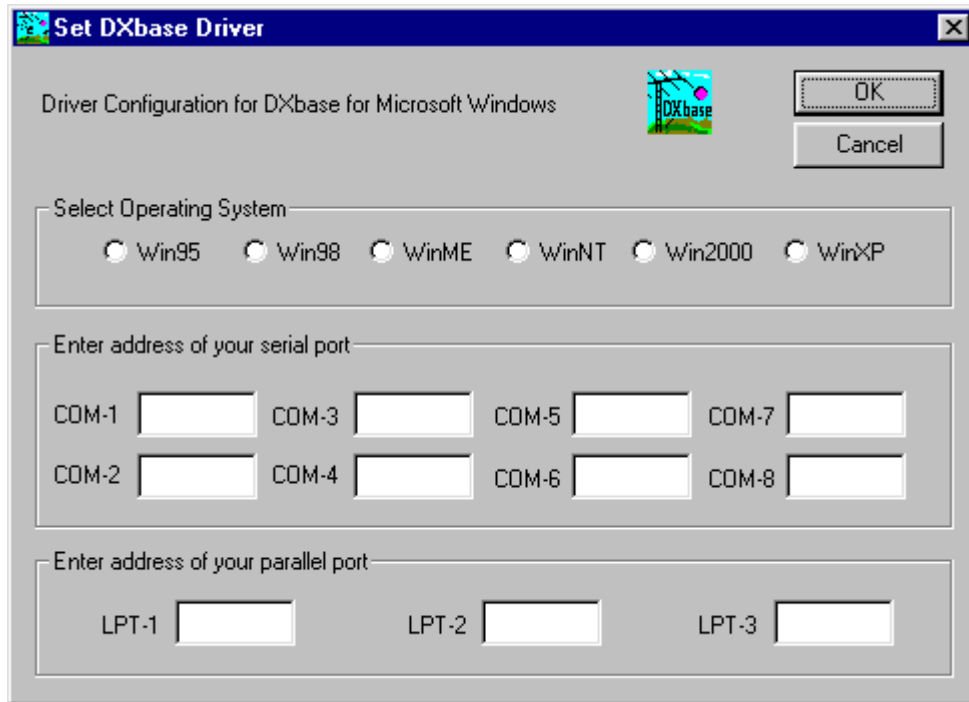
Double click on the address entry for the port

In the dialog displayed, modify the entry to agree with your system. Entries should be in HEX.

Installing the CW Driver

At the time DXbase is installed, the necessary driver files are placed on your system. However, the driver is NOT automatically loaded and the **registry entries necessary to force the driver to be loaded** are not populated. This is done like this so that other Windows features such as Hibernate are not interrupted. To install the driver so that it is loaded each time you start DXbase, navigate to the DXbase program group from your Windows start button and select DXBDVR utility.

Note: This driver is ONLY required if you are using the Internal DXbase CW keying module. If you are not using this feature, there is no need to run this utility.



The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Set DXbase Driver". The title bar is blue with a small icon on the left and a close button on the right. The main area is light gray. At the top, it says "Driver Configuration for DXbase for Microsoft Windows" next to a small DXbase logo. On the right side, there are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons. Below this, there is a section titled "Select Operating System" with a horizontal line above it. Underneath, there are six radio buttons labeled "Win95", "Win98", "WinME", "WinNT", "Win2000", and "WinXP". Below that is a section titled "Enter address of your serial port" with a horizontal line above it. This section contains two rows of input fields. The first row has four fields labeled "COM-1", "COM-3", "COM-5", and "COM-7". The second row has four fields labeled "COM-2", "COM-4", "COM-6", and "COM-8". Below that is a section titled "Enter address of your parallel port" with a horizontal line above it. This section contains three input fields labeled "LPT-1", "LPT-2", and "LPT-3".

When initially displayed, the port address fields are blank. After you select your operating system, the default port addresses are displayed. The port address that is listed **MUST** agree with the actual port address you are using for each of your ports. Modern serial ports don't always use the default addresses, so you will need to explore your hardware configuration from control panel to determine what port address your system actually uses. Overtyping any incorrect port addresses on this screen. If your system does not have a particular comport installed, for example you do not have a comport six or perhaps you don't have an LPT3, then just leave the default addresses for those devices as they are.

When you click OK, you will be prompted to allow DXbase to write the entries to your registry. You must reboot your machine for the changes to take effect.

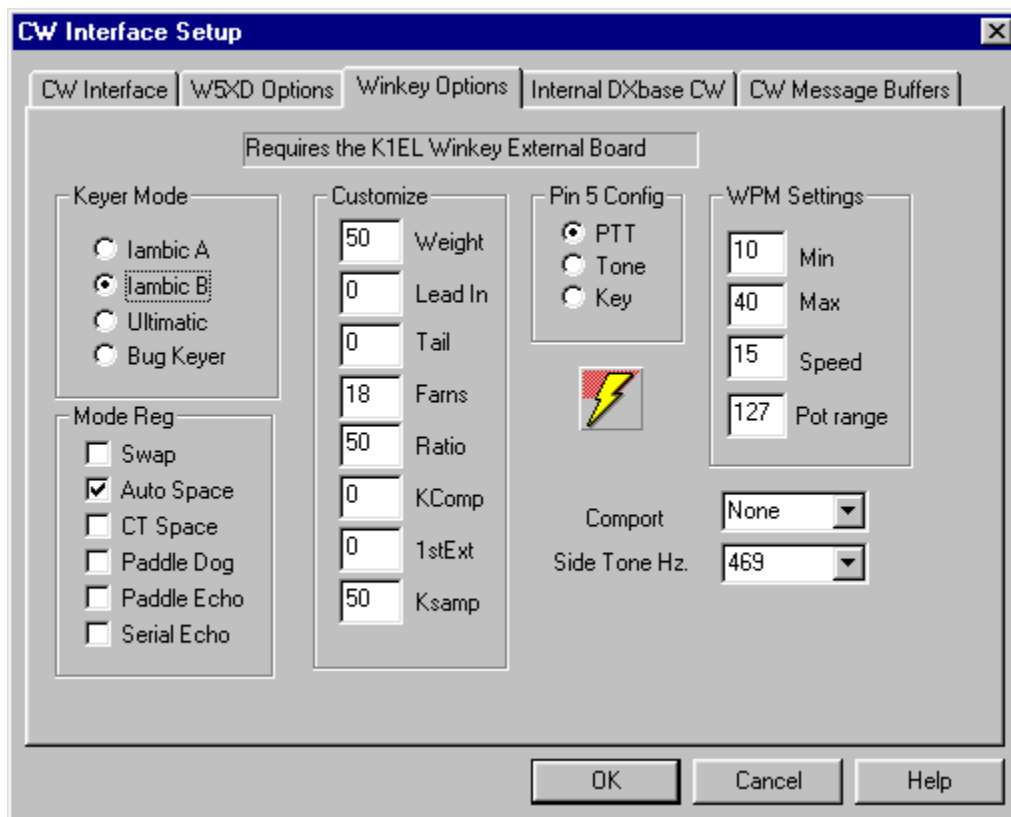
If you add or change serial ports, you can rerun this utility to make the necessary changes. Each time you run this utility, pre-existing registry entries will be overwritten with your new settings.

K1EL Winkey

K1EL Winkey Options

Review the documentation that was received with your K1EL Winkey hardware so that you are familiar with the various option terminology for this device.

1. Install the device in your shack and connect the serial cable between your computer and the device.
2. Select Tools | Options | CW Options from the DXbase menu and click the K1EL Winkey tab.



3. Select the serial comport. The comport cannot be shared for other features. It must be dedicated for the CW interface.
4. Select the default WPM. You can adjust the WPM from the CW toolbar on the main DXbase screen.
5. Other options are displayed with default settings for this device. Modify these for your personal preference.
6. After setting these options, select the CW interface tab and click the K1EL Winkey entry to activate your CW interface. Be sure the device is connected, otherwise you will receive an error and the CW interface will be automatically turned off in user options and you will have to set this again after you connect the device.

Database Safeguards

Copy Database from CDROM

You may wish to make a copy of your database onto a CDROM. This is a convenient way of saving a large database. A special point must be considered when using this approach.

When you copy a file onto a CDROM, its properties are set as read-only. Therefore, when you later copy the file from your CD back onto your hard drive, the file properties are still set as read-only. DXbase will not be able to open your database file if the read-only flag is set.

After copying the file onto your hard drive, locate the file using Windows Explorer. Right click on the file name and select properties. Remove the check mark from the read-only box.

Failure to do this will result in an error message when trying to open this file with DXbase. The error will inform you that the file is already in use.

Database Repair

This section describes a general process to repair a damaged DXbase database. There are many possible symptoms that could occur when a corruption of your database occurs:

1. Errors when starting DXbase that indicate that a particular country, IOTA, State etc... cannot be found.
2. Errors when performing the initialize tables process indicating that a record cannot be found in a statistics table.

3. Errors when performing the initialize tables process indicating no current record.
4. Others.....

The process of repairing your database involves replacing your existing (corrupted) database with a new fresh copy. Then, the old data is imported from the damaged database into the newly created fresh copy.

Repair Process:

1. From within DXbase, use the File menu item to create a new database. Be sure and put it into your DXbase folder and also remember the name you give it.
2. Set user options in DXbase to prompt for database name at startup. This option is located on the General user tab in user options.
3. Close DXbase.
4. From the DXbase Program group, run the DXB Import utility. The TARGET will be the newly created database that you created in step 1 above. The SOURCE will be the original database that is now corrupted. The import type will be version of DXbase you are running.
5. Perform the import. Be sure you check the option on the import screen to Load all Records.
6. When the process completes, close the import screen.
7. Run DXbase. You will be asked for the database name. Use the button to the right of the field and select the newly created database from step 1 above.
8. When DXbase boots up, you should see all of your QSOs. Run the Initialize tables module so that your statistics tables can be rebuilt now that you have a working database.
9. After you have satisfied yourself that the newly created database is working properly, you may wish to delete the old “corrupted database.
10. Remember to make a new backup of your database. This insures that you have a backup of a “working and non corrupted database.

How did my database get corrupted?

Well, corruption of a database can occur for a variety of reasons. It is difficult to identify all the possible reasons, but here are some issues that will almost certainly cause you difficulties.

1. Shutting down Windows without following the prescribed shut down process. This can typically happen when you suffer power failures. Whether or not a power failure will impact you depends on what was happening in your database at the moment the power failure occurred.
2. Shutting down Windows without first closing DXbase and allowing it to store your statistics.
3. Flakey hardware. This covers hard disks with bad sectors, corrupted or failing memory, controller board problems, and other hardware issues.

4. Viruses. If you access the web and do not have antivirus software running, you will certainly encounter viruses on your machine that can destroy your database.

File Backups

Backup Database



Have you ever stopped to consider what it would take to re-input all of your QSO data? Certainly the idea isn't pleasant. Your only protection from having to face this unpleasant task is to be absolutely sure that you maintain a working backup. In DXbase, this means that you have the .mdb file(s) safely stored somewhere and that you know it is a "good backup. We do not pretend to be the "backup experts of the industry. There are many commercial software companies who specialize in the production of backup software. We recommend you choose one with a good reputation and invest in a high quality backup software product.

Today, one thing is true about Windows software. It is big. The demand by users for more and more features and the nature of Windows itself suggests that in the future, the size of Windows software and associated databases will only get bigger. Hardware manufacturers have responded to this by producing hardware capable of handling the needed storage requirements. Hard drives are now much larger, floppy disk drives are now in the standard 2.8meg size, and plug in Zip drives are now available. In our development environment, we use zip drives exclusively to safeguard our important files. These drives can plug directly into your parallel port and provide you with the capability to store up to 100 megabytes of data on one disk. They work just like a floppy drive. We urge you to consider this alternative for safeguarding your data.

All of the DXbase database information is contained in one file that contains multiple independent databases. This database file has the .MDB file extension and it is quite large. It will not be possible to copy this file onto one 1.4m diskette as it is too large. You will have to employ the use of some archive software that is designed to handle large files and store them on multiple diskettes, or, you might consider storing backup information on a second hard drive if you have one. This should be a separate physical hard drive and not simply a different directory on the same physical hard drive.

In addition, DXbase maintains some settings in files with the .INI file extension that are located in your primary DXbase directory. You should also safeguard these files; however these are less critical because DXbase will recreate these automatically if they do not exist. They typically contain column widths for various database displays.

Files to Back Up

In your DXbase directory:

Your database files ending in the file extension “.MDB. If you are using more than one .MDB database with DXbase, make sure you back up each one.

Your reference data database called REFDATA.MDB.

All files ending in the .WCF file extension. These contain your Wizard configurations.

All files ending in the .CO file extension. These contain user configuration files for QSO field order.

All “.INI files in your DXbase directory. These contain field sizes and hidden status.

Bands.INI contains your frequency to mode parameters.



A few suggestions may be of interest on how to handle backups.

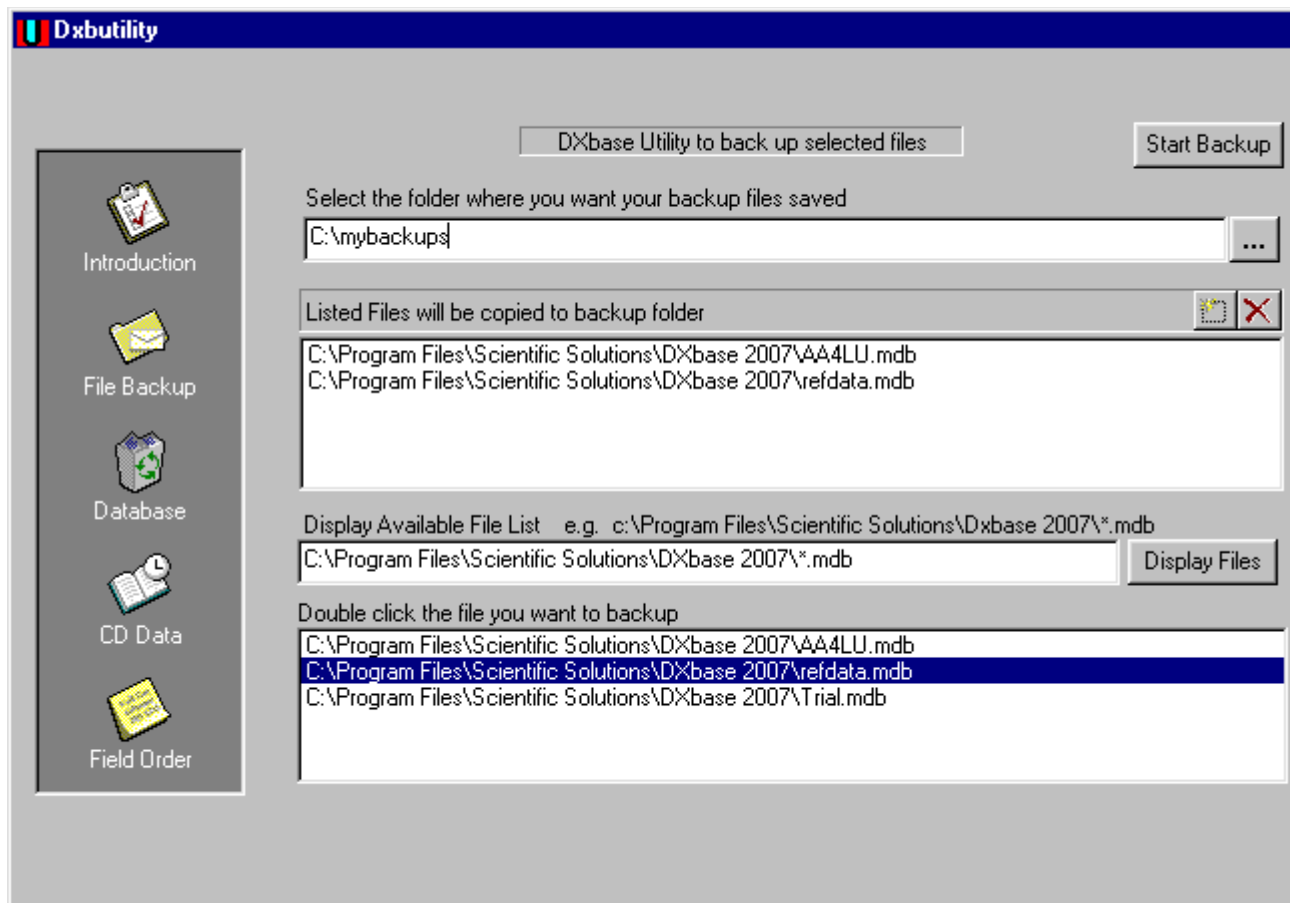
- ▶ Always verify that your database is working properly before performing a backup. Try all the various features that use your database and make sure everything seems correct. It does you no good to backup a database that is already corrupted.
- ▶ Always perform a backup prior to importing data.
- ▶ Use a commercial backup program and make sure it was designed to work with your operating system.
- ▶ Always set the verify data option in your backup software ON. This way you know for certain if the data was stored accurately.
- ▶ Periodically restore from your backup just to be sure that the restore process works. No sense waiting until you are stuck to find out that your backups aren't usable.
- ▶ Keep several backups and rotate them. On our development machines, we backup our data files once every hour. This way we have many backup versions so that if something goes wrong with one, we can revert to the next previous version.
- ▶ With the advent of Windows 95 and NT, file sizes are big. You will need to insure that your backup software supports writing files across multiple diskettes or else invest in some form of tape backup or zip disk system.
- ▶ Always perform a backup after entering a large amount of data.
- ▶ Do not mix backups between different versions of a software product.
- ▶ Always backup your data prior to doing any software upgrade.
- ▶ Always backup your data files immediately after performing a software upgrade.
- ▶ Keep your backups in a safe place and label them. Magnetic fields destroy backups and so do high power amplifiers.

- ▶ Be careful about upgrading your operating system. You might discover that if you upgrade to Windows 9999 your backup software will no longer work and you will have to upgrade that too.
- ▶ Be careful to insure that your backup software handles the new Windows Long Filenames. This is especially important if you are using some form of compression software such as PKZIP, to be sure the version you use has this support.
- ▶ Run scandisk or similar utility frequently to make sure that your hard disk is not deteriorating in performance
- ▶ Make sure you have a backup before running any disk defragmenting tools.
- ▶ Always perform a backup prior to making any hardware changes. We once replaced a motherboard and discovered that it was defective and caused both hard drives to become totally corrupted!
- ▶ If you have Microsoft Access installed, you may wish to compact your DXbase database. This will remove any unused space in the database thus making the .mdb file as small as possible before doing a backup.

The important point is to make certain you perform backups religiously, that they are backups of working data, and that you safeguard them. This is not specifically a DXbase issue, but since DXbase depends on the database to perform properly, we thought we would take the time to share our ideas. You probably know some other precautions that are useful and we encourage you to take whatever steps guarantee that your data will never be permanently lost.

DXbase Backup Utility

The DXB Utility Program contains a backup utility that allows you to easily perform backups of your **important files**. From the DXbase Program Group, select the DXB Utility Module. On the screen that appears, click the backup ICON.



In the Display Available list box, overtype the file extension for the type of files you want to select and press the enter key. Now double click the files you want to back up. As you double click a filename, you will see that its full pathname is placed into the "Listed files will be copied to backup" box. Repeat this process for each different type of file you want to backup.

After all the files are selected, just click the Start button. The entries made in this module are saved and restored each time you run the backup utility. So, you will most likely only need to make file selections one time.

It is best to close DXbase before performing a backup because sometimes if a file is open, it is possible that when you try to make a copy of it, the copy will not be reliable.

Maintaining Database Size

Database Size

Unlike many other logging programs that use separate database files and index files for each of the various parts of a database such as file for prefixes, another for QSOs, another for IOTAs, and so forth, the database used in DXbase is completely self contained. This means that all database related files are contained in one .mdb file. This has the advantage of allowing more complete database validations and it keeps all your data in one place. Instead of having many different files to be concerned about, you have only one. This will mean that your .mdb file can become large, but when considering that it contains all your data, it's not really much larger than other software when you stop to add up the file size of everything.

There are several things that will contribute to the size of your database file:

1. Data created with the DXbase Selection Wizard is stored in its own part of the database and will thus increase the size of the overall .mdb depending upon how many records you have saved.
2. Labels are also stored and will increase the size.
3. Number of QSO records will impact the size.
4. Number of different WPX entries.

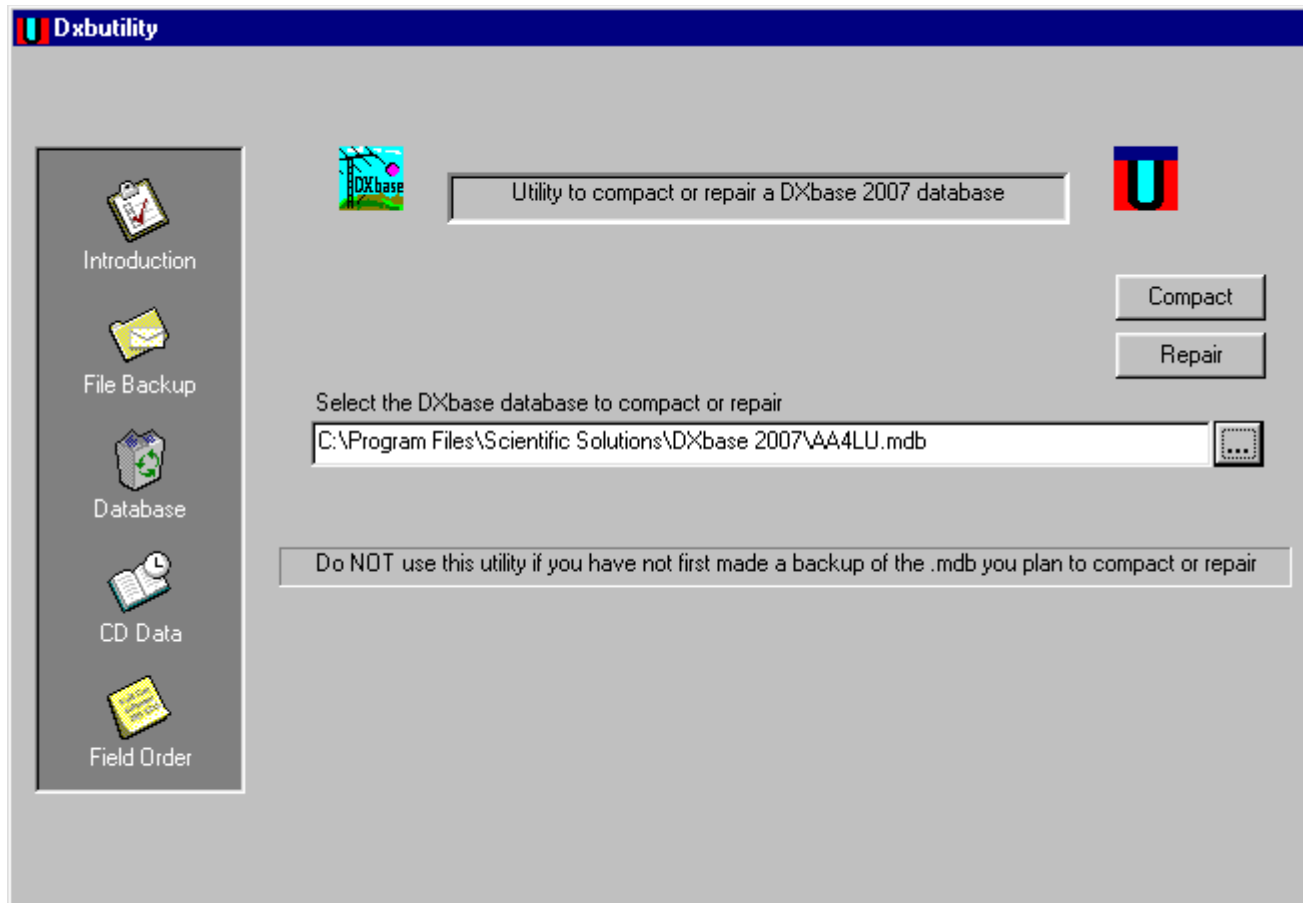
The database will automatically expand in size to handle as much data as you need to store in it; however, it does not return this space to the system when the space is no longer needed. Instead, it keeps this space reserved and will reuse it whenever possible. Therefore, the database size will never decrease in size. It will always remain at the largest size that was needed to accommodate data that you stored in it.

From time to time, you could use a third-party utility designed to compress a Microsoft Access database file. If you own Microsoft Access, it provides a utility option to compress a .mdb file. There are also some shareware programs available for download on the web that can perform this process.

If you feel the need to reduce the size of your .mdb file by eliminating unneeded space, you can use one of these utilities to perform this process.

DXbase Compression Utility

The DXB Utility Program contains a compression/compact utility that will remove any unnecessary space from your .mdb database files. From the DXbase Program Group, select the DXB Utility module. On the screen that appears, click the database ICON.



Close DXbase before using this utility.

Select the database name that you wish to compact by using the button to the right of the field.

Click the Compact button to start the process.

This utility is very powerful and will reduce the size of your database to its smallest size possible.

NOTE: This screen also provides an option to repair a DXbase database that has become damaged. It's difficult to describe the types of problems that the "repair" feature can fix. But, it does not harm to run the "repair" option on a non damaged database. So, if in doubt and you are having some database problems, give it a try. The repair utility does not correct a condition where you receive an error message advising that something could not be found in numeric statistics. If you encounter this problem, **you will need to rebuild a database.**

Error Messages

Database Repair

This section describes a general process to repair a damaged DXbase database. There are many possible symptoms that could occur when a corruption of your database occurs:

5. Errors when starting DXbase that indicate that a particular country, IOTA, State etc... cannot be found.
6. Errors when performing the initialize tables process indicating that a record cannot be found in a statistics table.
7. Errors when performing the initialize tables process indicating no current record.
8. Others.....

The process of repairing your database involves replacing your existing (corrupted) database with a new fresh copy. Then, the old data is imported from the damaged database into the newly created fresh copy.

Repair Process:

11. From within DXbase, use the File menu item to create a new database. Be sure and put it into your DXbase folder and also remember the name you give it.
12. Set user options in DXbase to prompt for database name at startup. This option is located on the General user tab in user options.
13. Close DXbase.
14. From the DXbase Program group, run the DXB Import utility. The TARGET will be the newly created database that you created in step 1 above. The SOURCE will be the original database that is now corrupted. The import type will be version of DXbase you are running.
15. Perform the import. Be sure you check the option on the import screen to Load all Records.
16. When the process completes, close the import screen.
17. Run DXbase. You will be asked for the database name. Use the button to the right of the field and select the newly created database from step 1 above.
18. When DXbase boots up, you should see all of your QSOs. Run the Initialize tables module so that your statistics tables can be rebuilt now that you have a working database.
19. After you have satisfied yourself that the newly created database is working properly, you may wish to delete the old "corrupted database.
20. Remember to make a new backup of your database. This insures that you have a backup of a "working and non corrupted database.

How did my database get corrupted?

Well, corruption of a database can occur for a variety of reasons. It is difficult to identify all the possible reasons, but here are some issues that will almost certainly cause you difficulties.

5. Shutting down Windows without following the prescribed shut down process. This can typically happen when you suffer power failures. Whether or not a power failure will impact you depends on what was happening in your database at the moment the power failure occurred.
6. Shutting down Windows without first closing DXbase and allowing it to store your statistics.
7. Flakey hardware. This covers hard disks with bad sectors, corrupted or failing memory, controller board problems, and other hardware issues.
8. Viruses. If you access the web and do not have antivirus software running, you will certainly encounter viruses on your machine that can destroy your database.

DxbPSK Performed Illegal Operation

If you attempt to run the DxbPSK program and receive an error message before the program boots up that says DxbPSK attempted to perform an illegal operation, it probably means that the WinPSKX.DLL file did not get registered properly during our installation. You can register the file yourself by following these steps:

Locate the file called regsvr32.exe that will be located in your Windows/System folder on Win95/98/ME. On NT and Win2000 it is located in your WinNT/System32 folder. Copy regsvr32.exe into your DXbase folder.

Open a command box (sometimes called a DOS box) and using the standard MSDOS command for change directory, perform a CD to the full path of your DXbase folder. At the DOS prompt in your DXbase folder, type the following command:

`Regsvr32 WinPSKX.dll` (note there is one space between the 2 and the W).

You should see a message that indicates that the file was successfully registered.

Now, you can try to run the DxbPSK program again. If you continue to have the same problem, then there is some other problem.

Port Cannot be Opened

This error message occurs when DXbase attempts to open a serial port for such features as W5XD CW, K1EL CW, TNC, HF Radio, etc., but is unable to successfully open the port.

The error may occur because you have some other application in use that has already opened the port you are trying to use in DXbase. It may also occur if you have assigned the same port to two different DXbase features. You may also have hardware trouble with the port you are trying to use, or the port does not exist.

Getting More Help

Don't forget about the DXbase Knowledge Base maintained on our Web Site. The issue you are looking for may be described there if it is something that was not identified prior to the sale of DXbase.

Entry not found in Numeric Statistics Table

This type of error message can identify a Prefix, IOTA, Zone, State, or WPX that involves a corrupted database table. The symptom is that you try to add a QSO or initialize tables and you get this error. DXbase maintains a separate database table for statistics. The entries in this table must agree with those in the reference data tables. When this error occurs, something on your system or in our software has allowed this relationship to become damaged.

This condition might appear while you are attempting to Initialize Tables, or add/delete/change a QSO record. We have provided the step by step process for correcting this condition under the section called [database repair](#) in the Error Messages topic of this help file.

Correcting this Error

The basic concept for fixing this issue is to create a new empty database, import your QSOs from the damaged database into the newly created one, initialize tables, and that's it.

1. Open Tools | Options | User Options | general tab and place a check in the option for Prompt for database at startup.

2. Use the File menu to create a new database. Be sure select the same folder that your other DXbase databases are located in. Also, select a unique name for this database. This will become your new database after we complete this repair process.
3. Close DXbase.
4. From the DXbase program group, select DXB Import. Your target database will be the one that you created in step 2 above. Your source will be the old one that is corrupted. Be sure to select the option to load all records.
5. After importing your data, close the import screen.
6. Run DXbase. You will be prompted for the database name. Use the button to the right of the database field to select the new database.
7. Initialize tables.

This completes the process. After verifying that all is back in working order, be sure you make yourself a backup of the new database. You will also want to remove the old (damaged) database by deleting it so that you don't get confused in the future and try to use it.

How did this error happen?

The primary reason this can occur is due to something abruptly terminating DXbase while it was in the process of closing down. One of the last things that occurs when you close DXbase is that it writes statistics data to the database. If something abnormal happens to interrupt this process, you could be left with a partially empty database table because all of the entries were not saved. Typically, a user may have closed DXbase and nearly immediately tried to close Windows or otherwise shuts down their machine. You should always allow DXbase to properly shut down.

Toolbars Vanished

In the past, we have had some reports that all of sudden, when DXbase was started, the toolbars with the bitmap buttons have disappeared. A check of the VIEW/Toolbars menu indicates that they are turned on but yet they are not on the screen.

Among the dozens of clean up activities that occur when you exit DXbase, one event is that all screen coordinates and other information about your various toolbars is saved to the DXbase INI file located in your Windows directory. We have never been able to determine the cause for this condition. We suspect that perhaps DXbase was not closed properly, or there was a write error to the hard drive when the settings were being written to your INI file, but with only a few reports we have been unable to find any cause/effect.

Follow this process for correcting this problem:

- ▶ Close DXbase.
- ▶ Using Wordpad, open your DXbase INI file located in your Windows directory.
- ▶ Inside the INI file, you will find a large number (approximately 15 of them) of sections which have the title [Dt.....] followed by a number of entries within each of these sections.
- ▶ Delete every section which begins with [Dt.....] AND, all entries within each of these sections.
- ▶ Save your changes to text format.

Now when you start DXbase, your toolbars will be displayed in the default locations. Reposition them etc. to meet your needs.



File is in Use

You may receive this error message when attempting to open DXbase. The error is produced by the Jet Database Engine and reports that the file xxxxx is in use by another user. The DXbase database file cannot be used by more than one application at a time. If you have the database opened by some other application, you must close it before you can use the same database in DXbase.

You may also experience this error if you have **copied your database from a CDROM** onto your hard drive.

Duplicate Key or Index

This message can be generated when you attempt to add or change a record and another record already exists in your database that contains the same entries. For example, when logging a QSO record, you cannot save a record that contains the same callsign, date, time, mode, and band as some other record.

Record is Deleted

You may encounter this error if you have added a number of records to a database and then attempt to delete these records one at a time. After deleting some of these records, this error

message may be produced and you will be unable to continue to add records. We have been unable to track this down but believe it is a DAO Jet Database error. If you encounter this situation, exit DXbase and restart the program. Under normal operation, this problem will rarely occur and will do no harm when it does.

Value does not exist

This error message may indicate that a Prefix, CQ Zone, IOTA, US State, etc. does not exist.

In many parts of DXbase, validations are made to make sure that your database tables are all kept in sync. DXbase will not accept a log entry where one of these fields that you enter does not contain valid data. Prefix, State, County, and IOTA values must be in the appropriate database table before the entry will be accepted.

During initialize tables, DXbase again verifies that each QSO record contains valid data in these fields. If you receive an error message during the initialize table process, you must find the invalid data in your QSO records and correct it. The simplest way to accomplish this is to move to the first record in your QSO log and click in the column for the type of error detected. For example, if you get a "CQ zone not valid error, then click in the CQ zone column, choose find and enter the INVALID data that was detected. Correct the invalid data when the record is found and continue searching to make sure that no other records have a similar error. When you are finished, run the initialize tables process again.

Windows 2000 Hibernate/Suspend

In order to perform the necessary communication with your serial and parallel ports for the CW interface with DXbase, we install a commercial third party driver. Windows 2000's Hibernate/Suspend functionality is not compatible with the requirements of this driver. As a result, Windows 2000 will automatically disable the Hibernate/Suspend functionality.

The disabling of this capability does not harm to your system and does not impact any other operations of your system. For those who need a way to allow the hibernate/suspend to work when not using DXbase, the following procedure should allow you to restore that capability, but may prevent DXbase from running. So, you would have to follow these steps to activate/deactivate the hibernate feature. This information was tested courtesy of Chris, W2PA. It is provided for your convenience (as is), but is not intended to be used by an inexperienced user of Windows 2000. Scientific Solutions cannot offer support for problems that you encounter or for diagnosing any mistakes that might be made in trying this procedure.

1. Log on to your system with administrator privileges.
2. Open Control Panel
3. Double click on System – the system properties window will open.
4. In System Properties, click on the hardware tab at the top.
5. Click the device manager button – the device manager opens in a new window.
6. In device manager, pull down the View Menu and select “Show hidden devices.
7. There should now be an entry in the list called “Non-Plug and Play drivers.
8. Click on the plus sign next to this entry. This opens a long alphabetical list of devices.
9. Find the entry in this list for “DriverX. You may have to scroll to find it.
10. Right click on the DriverX entry, and select “Properties from the menu that appears. This opens the DriverX properties window.
11. In the DriverX properties window, click on the Driver tab at the top.

Now you can modify the operation of DriverX as follow:

1. To temporarily stop DriverX so that you can use hibernate/suspend as usual, click the Stop button. Using this procedure will only stop DriverX until you reboot your machine. To restart DriverX so that you can use DXbase, follow the procedure above but click the Start button in the DriverX properties window.
2. To disable DriverX so that it doesn't start again when you reboot, follow the above procedure. In the DriverX properties window, locate the “Startup section at the bottom of the window. Click on the pull down arrow to the right of the “Type field (the only field in the Startup section) – “Automatic should be currently selected if you haven't previously modified it. Select “Disabled in the pull down menu. Now DriverX will not restart the next time you reboot. In fact, it will never restart again unless you follow the above procedure and set the Startup setting back to “Automatic. To run DXbase it isn't necessary to reset this to “Automatic, you only need to restart the driver using the DriverX Properties window (as in # 1 above).

Click the OK button.

Close the Device Manager Window.

Click OK to close the System Properties window.

Close the control panel.

Once you have stopped the DriverX driver, your laptop's suspend and hibernate functions should work normally. If you have also disabled DriverX, your laptop will continue this way until you set it back to automatic startup and reboot the machine. With DriverX stopped, you won't be able to use DXbase – you'll need to first follow the above procedure to restart DriverX.

Trouble with CDROM Address Databases

Third Party CDROM Trouble

The interface from within DXbase to the supported address CDROMs is very straightforward. If you are unable to access the CDROM, the problem can only be one of the following:

1. Make sure you have properly installed the CDROM per the instructions supplied by the manufacturer.
2. Make sure you have user options under [the Directory tab](#) in DXbase set correctly.
3. If you purchased an updated CDROM and now it doesn't work but earlier versions did, the problem is most likely that an updated .DLL file for the new CDROM is needed. If you suspect this is the issue, obtain the updated .DLL from the manufacturer and replace the file by the same name located in your DXbase directory.
4. Make sure you have the proper CDROM inserted into your CD drive.

Questions concerning why an older version of a CDROM worked, but newer CDROM does not, should be referred to the manufacturer of the CDROM in question.

The actual data contained on a CDROM varies and is not always consistent. For example, although DXbase can attempt to retrieve the operator name from the CDROM while you are logging, if the format of the name field on the CDROM for that station is not correct, the name will not be retrieved. For the most part, data will be properly retrieved, but we know there are some cases where the source data on the CDROM is not as expected and these small number of cases, the data will be ignored if it violates the expected format.

At the time the DXbase CDROMs were manufactured, they contained the latest .DLL files associated with the major makers of Address CDROMS such as QRZ, RAC, and Buckmaster. If you have correctly set [DXbase User Options](#) and still have difficulty using new versions of one of these products, chances are that they have released an update to their product that requires that you install a more recent .DLL for their product. You should visit the Web page for the product in question and download any updated .DLL file for their product. If any are available, they should be copied into your DXbase directory.

Scientific Solutions, Inc. explicitly rejects responsibility for changes that other manufacturers may make to their products that causes them to no longer function with DXbase. We strive to accommodate these manufacturers and to make reasonable adjustments to DXbase; however, often times they make changes and fail to inform us about them. This is unfortunate but nevertheless it does happen. If this happens to you, we encourage you to contact the maker of your Address CDROM and discuss the matter with them.

CDROM Reported Unknown Error

When attempting to look up an address, some CDROM address products do not have all addresses in their database. In some instances, they do not report the proper error code to identify this. Instead, they simply report a "catch all error message that an unknown error was reported.

This error condition can occur when looking up something by clicking the appropriate ICON in DXbase, or if you have the option to automatically look up an operator's name while logging.

Since the operation of the CDROM is not within the control of DXbase, there is nothing else that can be done in this matter and you should simply ignore the error when it happens.



HF Radio Related

Program lockup if HF radio turned off

Some HF radios output "garbage characters when they are turned off. If this happens, DXbase may become fooled into thinking that it should be receiving a valid message from the HF radio when in fact, it is simply garbage characters. The software may become stuck in a loop waiting for the remainder of the message that will never come.

Some HF radios will change the state of the RS232 leads when the radio is turned off. In some cases, the changed state of the RS232 leads causes DXbase to believe that characters are being sent from the HF radio when in fact they are not.

If your HF radio causes this symptom, you should either leave the HF radio on while using DXbase, or, you should deactivate the HF radio in user options prior to turning the HF radio off.



HF Radio Failed to Respond

DXbase expects to receive a response within a maximum of one second after making a request for information to the HF radio. If no response is detected after one second, you will receive an error dialog.

If you choose to disable further interface to the HF radio, DXbase will cancel any pending requests and it will change your HF Radio user option automatically to show “Do NOT Connect HF Radio. If you later wish to reconnect with the HF radio, you must access user options and set HF Radio options to a check mark in the “Connect HF Radio box. Be sure you click OK to leave user options.

If you choose “NO when the error dialog appears, DXbase will cancel the request that caused the “Failure to Respond condition and will process the next pending request. For example, when making an outgoing Packet Spot, DXbase queries the HF radio for the frequency of VFOa, VFOb, and split mode. If no response was obtained when the request for VFOa was made, after the error message dialog is closed, DXbase will request VFOb. If the request for VFOb was successful, your outgoing packet dialog will appear but it will not contain the frequency for VFOa since the radio previously failed to furnish this information. If the request for VFOb is not successful, you will receive the error message dialog again, and so forth.

If you receive the “Radio failed to respond error dialog, the condition can occur for several reasons:

- ▶ User options must be set incorrectly. Verify baudrate, parity, stop bits, and word length
- ▶ Be sure you selected the correct comport
- ▶ Be sure no other device is using the same comport, IRQ, or address.
- ▶ Be sure the radio is powered on and connected correctly.
- ▶ Be sure you do not operate the controls on the radio while DXbase is attempting to query for information.
- ▶ Did the symptom start after making a change to radios.ini.
- ▶ If you use an A/B data switch be sure it is set correctly.

If all the above is correct, you may have developed a problem with the radio or level control box.



Printing Related

Trouble Printing

Most of the logic necessary to print to your printer is not controlled by DXbase. Printing is performed by Windows and your printer drivers. If you are having trouble printing, it is most likely caused by improper setup of your printer, an outdated printer driver, or some other Windows setup parameter. We are aware of some possibilities and have listed them here for your convenience.

Standard Reports

If you receive an error message suggesting an improper report format, this is probably caused by some earlier version of a .DLL file already loaded on your system. This can happen if you are running, or have recently run, some application that performs printing that uses a .DLL with the same name as the one in DXbase. But that version of the .DLL is different than ours. This can happen because some applications place all of its .DLLs in its own directory instead of the Windows/system directory. When you run that application, it loads its version of the .DLL. Then we come along and try to load our .DLL, but ours does not load because Windows reports that a .DLL of the same name is already loaded into memory. This all happens transparently to you. But, then DXbase attempts to print. This is where the process breaks, because the .DLL we are accessing is not the one we provided. This is particularly likely if you have some other application which uses the CRPE32.DLL file, but other .DLLs could be involved. If you suspect this to be the case, we suggest you reboot your system and try printing in DXbase before you load any other software. Make sure that you have configured your printer correctly in Windows.

Before printing in DXbase, make sure that you have set your default printer in Windows to be the one that you intend to use with DXbase. We look for the default printer assigned in Windows and attempt to print using the parameters for this printer. DXbase printing is performed in graphics mode only. If your printer stores graphics images into its internal memory before it prints a page, then it will be necessary for your printer to have enough memory to handle the graphics page that is sent by DXbase. Usually this will not be a problem because our output contains minimal amounts of complex graphics images. DXbase uses only fonts that are standard Windows. If you have removed any of the fonts that are shipped with Windows, there may be a problem if you happen to try to use one that was removed from your system. Page alignment is controlled by your printer and you. Make sure that you position the page to be printed correctly at the top of the page.

Can't open jet engine

This error when you attempt to print a standard report indicates that DAO is not properly installed on your system. Most often the error involves the registration of the DAO jet engine .DLLs. To correct this problem, you should attempt to reinstall DXbase or refer to your Windows documentation or the Microsoft Knowledge Base for information on registering a .DLL.

QSO Log

The same issues described above for Reports also apply to printing the QSO log. In addition, there are some other issues to be careful about. Although DXbase provides for a large number of color selections for your QSO log which appear nicely on your screen, some of these colors will not allow for proper printing. You will know this is the case if your print is distorted and very dark. If you experience this, you will have to change the color selection for the fields in the log to some more basic color. It is not reasonably possible for us to overcome this issue in DXbase because it is partly a Windows problem and partly a printer driver problem. Our only suggestion here is for you to experiment until you find a combination that works for you.

GPF in module XXX while printing

This error condition can occur when attempting to print labels. It may take the form of:

DXbase caused a General Protection Fault in module UNIDRV.DLL, but it could also list a different .DLL. The problem occurs when you attempt to print labels but you have failed to set your printer configuration first.

To correct the problem you must first configure your printer so that DXbase knows the kind of printer that is to be used for printing labels. Open TOOLS/User Labels and select your label project. Select Page Setup and select your printer and then save your label project again.

You can also cause problems if you select a label project that does not agree with your selection for number of QSOs per label. For example, if you select 3 QSOs per label but you select a label project that is only designed for one QSO per label, unpredictable errors will occur. Be sure you select the proper label project for the number of QSOs per label that you intend to print.



Starting DXbase

Error Opening Database at Startup

If you receive an error message while trying to start DXbase that mentions the DAO Jet Engine, there is a high probability that you selected a non DXbase database file. Make sure you select ONLY a DXbase database for the release of DXbase that you are using.

You may encounter this error message if you attempt to reuse your DXbase INI file from your windows folder when reinstalling DXbase. NEVER do this. The INI file contains specific data about your installation, screen resolution, and database paths. If you attempt to use an INI file that was previously created, these entries may not be consistent with your new installation and thus you will be unable to run DXbase.

External Program Interfaces

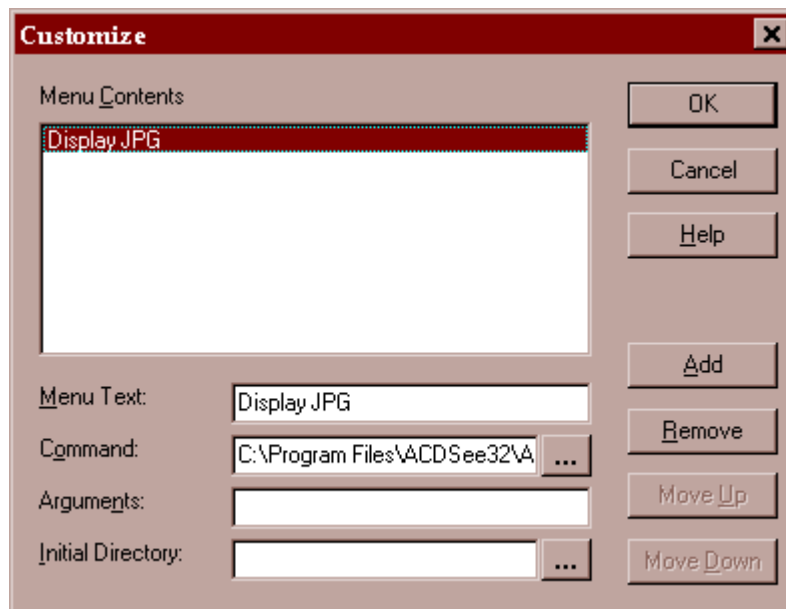
External Programs

DXbase provides a feature that allows you to select a program that you may want to execute from the main menu. As you make your selections through the customization option under the main menu PROGRAMS/CUSTOMIZE, your selections will automatically be added to the Programs menu.

NOTE: This feature is intended **ONLY** to be used for programs that you execute, do something, and then immediately close it down. For example, maybe you have a third party address database file and a program that allows you to find an address. This might be a good example of how this feature in DXbase could be used. Do not add programs that you intend to leave running simultaneously with DXbase because they will slow down the performance of both DXbase and the additional program you are running. If you want to run other programs simultaneously, use the normal Windows program start button to invoke them. If you execute a program from within DXbase, it will share the same memory and CPU space as DXbase thereby making both programs slower in performance.

Customization

From the main application menu, select PROGRAMS/CUSTOMIZE to invoke the program selection dialog. Here you will select the name of the program executable, the menu name that you want to appear in DXbase, and any startup directory that this program may require.



Menu Text	Enter the text name you wish to use in the DXbase menu for starting this program
Command	Select the executable program to be invoked by this entry
Arguments	Optional... consult documentation for this program to determine if any entry is needed
Initial Dir.	Optional.. sets the startup directory for this program.

The Remove button will delete a program from the DXbase Programs menu.

The Move Up and Move Down will reposition the location of the program name on the DXbase Program menu.

Click OK to save your entries. The entries will now be displayed under the Programs menu and you can execute the program by simply clicking the menu item. If you have difficulty being able to start a program, it is most likely due to incorrect program command, missing or incorrect arguments, or incorrect initial directory.

Remember, that this feature is not a replacement for the normal Windows program start menu. It is only intended to provide a convenient means for temporarily activating another program from within DXbase which will be used for a specific purpose and then closed. If you leave a program running that was invoked from within DXbase, performance will be degraded.

Station Notepad

DXbase provides easy access to your default Windows text viewer/editor. Usually this is Notepad or Wordpad. Choose FILE/STATION NOTEPAD from the main menu, or click the toolbar button for Station Notes. DXbase automatically executes your text viewer program and allows you to select a filename or create a new one.

You can access any text or ini file; however, this option was included to allow users a convenient mechanism for creating and viewing .txt files within DXbase. Some users make use of this feature to create .txt files which they later upload to VHF or Internet packet.

If you experience difficulty with this feature, it is most likely due to insufficient memory, or because your Windows configuration does not have a properly association defined for viewing text files.

We recommend that you store all text files created for use with DXbase in one directory. If you scatter them among many different directories, you may eventually have difficulty in locating previously created text files.



Using Windows QSL Mgr. Pro.

Windows QSL Manager PRO is a product by Manfred Meier, DF6EX. This product ships on CDROM and includes nearly 80,000 QSL routes. While DXbase only interfaces with this database, the product does contain many other features that you can access from within Windows QSL Manager PRO such as QSL manager reports, email addresses, and more.

<http://www.winqsl.de>

Manfred Meier

P.O. Box 1269

D-95645 Waldsassen

Germany

Windows QSL Manager PRO is a 32 bit product for Windows 95/98/NT.

DXbase provides a seamless and automatic interface to the Mgr.dbf portion of this product. This allows DXbase to automatically lookup and display QSL manager call sign information based on the call sign of the DX station. It operates very similar to the built in manager address database provided with DXbase. When you click on a QSO record in the QSO log, click on packet DX spots, or when spots are received, DXbase will automatically display the call sign of the station in the callsign field of the AUX Mgr tab on the DX Info window. It will also lookup the manager call sign and display the results in the AUX Mgr tab of the DX Info window.

To use this product with DXbase, you must first install Windows QSL Manager PRO following the instructions provided with that product. After the installation is complete, you must set DXbase user options in the [AUX MGR tab](#).

NOTE: For demonstration purposes, a shareware version of this product designed specifically to allow you to sample this interface with DXbase has been provided on the DXbase installation CD. To install this product, run the setup program located in the QSLMGR directory. If you prefer, you can obtain the complete product by contacting DF6EX directly.

Using GoList

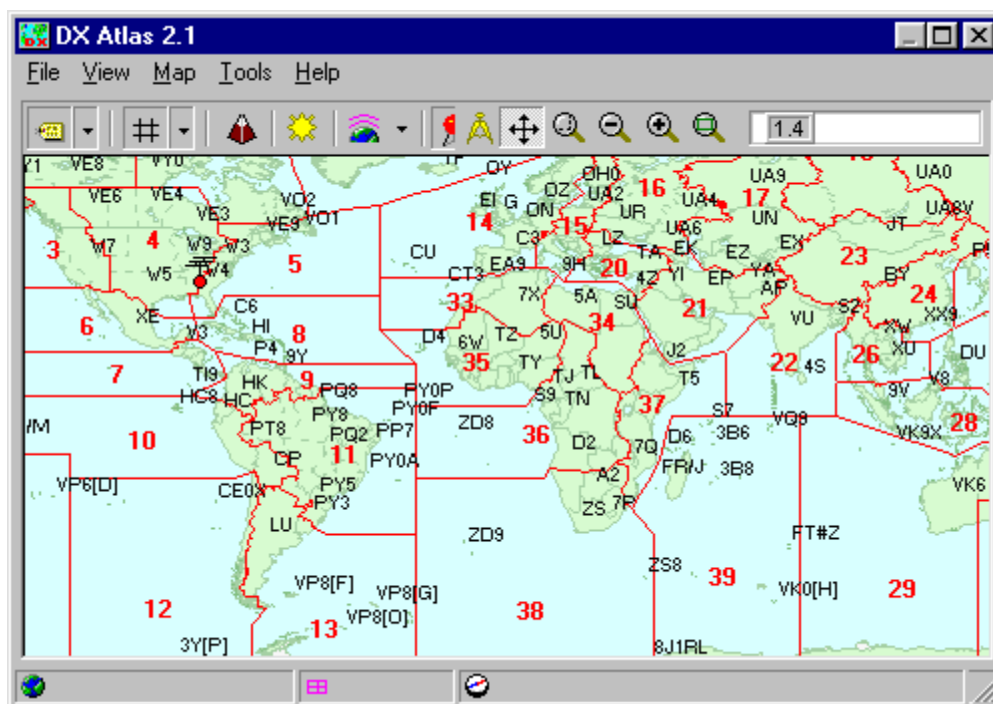
DXbase provides a seamless interface to the Window's version of the GoList. To use the GoList with DXbase, follow these setup procedures:

1. Install GoList per the instructions received with the GoList product.
2. There are two files installed by GoList that are important to DXbase. One is the .OVL file and the other is the .REC file. Both of these must reside in same folder.
3. Set DXbase **user options under the AUX Mgr** tab to show the path to where these two files are located and to tell DXbase that you want to use the GoList interface.

The GoList functionality is provided in DXbase in the **DX Info Window under the AUX Mgr** tab.

Using DX Atlas

DXbase provides an interface to the DX Atlas mapping program by **Alex, VE3NEA**. The combination of the mapping functionality that it offers with the seamless interface from DXbase gives users an easy way to visualize on a map the station they are interested in. DX Atlas and DXbase use state of the art communications techniques so there are no user options required to be set. It is all done automatically. So, simply install DX Atlas per the instructions furnished with that product. DX Atlas is not part of the DXbase software. To obtain a copy of DX Atlas, visit their web site at <http://www.dxatlas.com>



The interface to DX Atlas is provided in DXbase in [the DX Info window DX Atlas tab](#).

Managing the Screen

Since DX Atlas and DXbase both use the same screen, there can be an issue with which screen is visible. When you click in a DXbase window such as to log a QSO, the DX Atlas window will automatically be placed in background out of view. To bring the DX Atlas back into view, you can click the Show Map button in the DX Atlas tab of the DX Info window. You can also use the Hide Map button to hide the DX Atlas window.

Version 1.4 and later of DX Atlas provide a feature called “Stay On Top”. This option is available in the DX Atlas screen under the View menu item. By clicking this option, the DX Atlas window will remain on top and in view even if you click in one of the DXbase windows. By activating this feature, you can force the map to stay visible. To control when you want the map hidden or not hidden, you can use the Hide Map and Show Map buttons in the DX Atlas tab of the DX Info window.

[Version 2.1 and higher of DX Atlas](#) allow for saving/restoring the screen position of DX Atlas.

QRZ On the Web

DXbase provides the ability to access the QRZ Web Site and automatically perform a callsign lookup. The results of the lookup are displayed in your internet web browser. This interface uses a predefined web address for QRZ. In the unlikely event that QRZ changes their web site address, this interface will become inoperable.

The callsign that will be used for the lookup is the one that is displayed in the DX Call field of the [QSL Info Window](#).

Warning: This feature will not work if you have closed the QSL info window.

To perform a lookup:

1. Make sure a callsign is populated in the DX Call field of the QSL Info window. If it is empty, no lookup or error messages will occur.
2. Make sure that you are connected to the internet. If you are not connected, your web browser may be activated with a default message telling you the page could not be displayed.
3. Click the QRZ on the Web icon. This is the light blue icon on the main toolbar. You can also use the main menu Record/Qrz on the Web.

PathFinder on the Web

DXbase provides the ability to access the PathFinder Web Site and automatically perform a callsign lookup. The PathFinder web site requires that you click the database where you want the callsign search to be made. After you click the appropriate button from the web page, the results of the lookup are displayed in your internet web browser. This interface uses a predefined web address for PathFinder. In the unlikely event that this address changes, this interface will become inoperable.

The callsign that will be used for the lookup is the one that is displayed in the DX Call field of the [QSL Info Window](#).

To perform a lookup:

1. Make sure a callsign is populated in the DX Call field of the QSL Info window. If it is empty, no lookup or error messages will occur.
2. Make sure that you are connected to the internet. If you are not connected, your web browser may be activated with a default message telling you the page could not be displayed.
3. Click the PathFinder on the Web icon or use the main menu Record/PathFinder on the Web.

Address CDRoMs

Impacts on DXbase Performance

CDROM drives are very slow devices. As such, it will require some time for a lookup on an address CD to take place. The access speed of your CD drive will determine the amount of time needed. Those in the range of 48X will be substantially faster than those in the range of 4X.

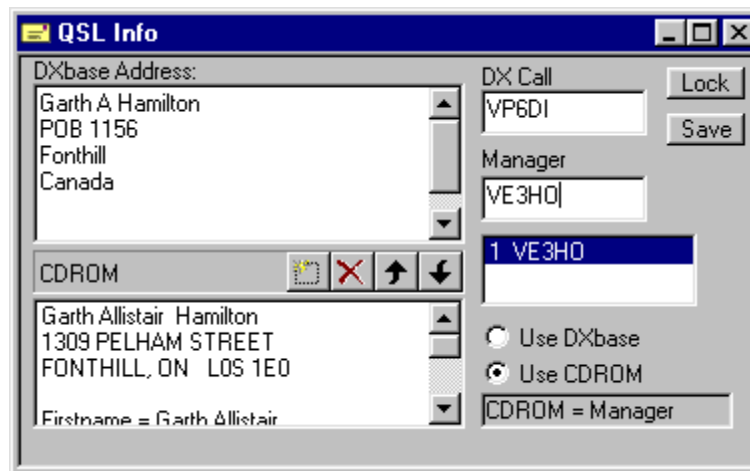
If you activate the option to have automatic address lookups done from your CDROM drive, you will see some hesitations occur before the screen updates occur. This is because of the time required to access the data on your CD drive. It will be very noticeable during periods of high DX spot activity.

We do NOT recommend using the option to automatically lookup address information turned on, unless you load the CDROM address database onto your hard drive instead of using the CDROM drive. By placing the data on your hard drive, you will substantially reduce any sluggishness in retrieving the address records.

Consult the information provided by the makers of your CD address database to learn how to install the database onto your hard drive. After doing so, you will need to modify the DXbase [user options in the Directory](#) tab to show the new drive and path information.

Working with Address Information

All address information is processed by the ADR Info tab in the QSL Info window. Here you can retrieve, edit, and save address information from both the internal DXbase Manager database and the third party address CDROM you may be using. Both the DXbase database information and the CDROM database information are displayed simultaneously on the same window.



► Manager address information retrieved from the internal DXbase manager database is displayed in the DXbase portion of the window.

► Address information retrieved from a third party address CDROM is displayed in the CDROM portion of the window. In addition, if there is additional information available in the CDROM record such as first name, latitude, longitude, county, etc. it will also be displayed in the CDROM portion of this window. Use the scrollbar to review the additional information that may have been retrieved.

There are two push button entries that control which address DXbase will use whenever you choose to save an address label or save an address record.

► Use DXbase – if this is selected, whenever you click the Address Label ICON on the main DXbase toolbar, the address displayed in the DXbase portion of the window will be used for your label. In addition,

if you click the Save ICON on the main DXbase toolbar, the address listed in the DXbase portion of the window will be saved in the internal DXbase manager address database.

► Use CDROM – if this is selected, whenever you click the Address Label ICON on the main DXbase toolbar, the address information in the CDROM portion of this window will be used for your label. Additionally, if you click the Save ICON on the main DXbase toolbar, the address listed in the CDROM portion of this window will be used to store an address record in the internal DXbase manager address database. If a record already exists in the DXbase manager address database, you will be asked if you want to overwrite the existing address record.

Third Party CDROM Trouble

The interface from within DXbase to the supported address CDROMs is very straightforward. If you are unable to access the CDROM, the problem can only be one of the following:

5. Make sure you have properly installed the CDROM per the instructions supplied by the manufacturer.
6. Make sure you have user options under the [Directory tab](#) in DXbase set correctly.
7. If you purchased an updated CDROM and now it doesn't work but earlier versions did, the problem is most likely that an updated .DLL file for the new CDROM is needed. If you suspect this is the issue, obtain the updated .DLL from the manufacturer and replace the file by the same name located in your DXbase directory.
8. Make sure you have the proper CDROM inserted into your CD drive.

Questions concerning why an older version of a CDROM worked, but newer CDROM does not, should be referred to the manufacturer of the CDROM in question.

The actual data contained on a CDROM varies and is not always consistent. For example, although DXbase can attempt to retrieve the operator name from the CDROM while you are logging, if the format of the name field on the CDROM for that station is not correct, the name will not be retrieved. For the most part, data will be properly retrieved, but we know there are some cases where the source data on the CDROM is not as expected and these small number of cases, the data will be ignored if it violates the expected format.

At the time the DXbase CDROMs were manufactured, they contained the latest .DLL files associated with the major makers of Address CDROMS such as QRZ, RAC, and Buckmaster. If you have correctly set [DXbase User Options](#) and still have difficulty using new versions of one of these products, chances are that they have released an update to their product that requires that you install a more recent .DLL for their product. You should visit the Web page for the product in question and download any updated .DLL file for their product. If any are available, they should be copied into your DXbase directory.

Scientific Solutions, Inc. explicitly rejects responsibility for changes that other manufacturers may make to their products that causes them to no longer function with DXbase. We strive to accommodate these manufacturers and to make reasonable adjustments to DXbase; however, often times they make changes and fail to inform us about them. This is unfortunate but nevertheless it does happen. If this happens to you, we encourage you to contact the maker of your Address CDROM and discuss the matter with them.

CDs on your Hard Drive

CDROM drives are probably the slowest item of hardware in today's home computers. When you request a lookup of an address on a CD, DXbase must wait until the CD is read before it can continue with other operations. This can have the effect of slowing down DXbase significantly.

You can enjoy the benefit of using an address CD without suffering from the performance degradation that they present by simply copying the address data from the CD onto your hard drive. Of course, to take advantage of this option, you must have sufficient free space on your hard drive to hold the data that must be copied.

Copying CD data to your Hard Drive

There are a few general issues for you to consider:

1. If your computer has two hard drives installed, you will get best performance if you copy the CD info onto the hard drive that does not contain DXbase. For example, if DXbase is installed on drive C and you have a drive D, then you should copy the CD data onto drive D. If you only have one hard drive, then just copy the data onto your single hard drive. You will still see substantial performance improvements.
2. It is not necessary to copy the entire CD. Only the folder that contains the address data needs to be copied.
3. The information listed below may change over time thereby making our procedure obsolete. This could be the case if the makers of the CDROMs change the structure of their data layout. If this occurs, the chances are good that you will just have to substitute the new path information from the CD into the instructions below.

Important:

You must follow these instructions precisely. The address CDROMs expect to find their files in certain folders. You cannot deviate from the path information given below.

HamCall

HamCall, or sometimes referred to as BuckMaster, contains a folder on the CD called ham0. This is the folder that contains all of the address related files.

1. Using Windows Explorer, create a new folder on your hard drive under the root folder called ham0. Note that this uses a numeric zero and not an alpha O. Do NOT place this new folder under other subfolders. It must be located directly under your root folder.
2. Using Windows Explorer, click on the left side on the ham0 folder of the CD.
3. You should see the address related files on the right. Using the main menu, click Edit/Select All.
4. On the main menu of Windows Explorer, click Edit/Copy
5. Click on the ham0 folder that you created in step one above.
6. On the main menu of Windows Explorer, click Edit/Paste

If the above was done correctly, you will have a folder on your hard drive with a full path of

C:\ham0 where C is the designation for your hard drive

And, you will have the address related files listed on the right side of Windows Explorer

In DXbase user options under the **directory tab**, set the CD Drive to the letter of your hard drive where you installed the CDROM files. Set the additional options for the CD interface as well.

RAC

RAC, or sometimes referred to as Flying Horse, contains a folder on the CD called Data. This is the folder that contains all of the address related files.

1. Using Windows Explorer, create a new folder on your hard drive under the root folder called Data. Do NOT place this new folder under other subfolders. It must be located directly under your root folder.
2. Using Windows Explorer, click on the left side on the Data folder of the CD.
3. You should see the address related files on the right. From the main menu, click Edit/Select All.
4. On the main menu of Windows Explorer, click Edit/Copy
5. Click on the Data folder that you created in step one above.
6. On the main menu of Windows Explorer, click Edit/Paste

If the above was done correctly, you will have a folder on your hard drive with a full path of

C:\Data where C is the designation for your hard drive

And, you will have the address related files listed on the right side of Windows Explorer

In DXbase user options under the **directory tab**, set the CD Drive to the letter of your hard drive where you installed the CDROM files. Set the additional options for the CD interface as well.

QRZ

QRZ contains a folder on the CD called Callbk. This is the folder that contains all of the address related files.

1. Using Windows Explorer, create a new folder on your hard drive under the root folder called Callbk. Do NOT place this new folder under other subfolders. It must be located directly under your root folder.
2. Using Windows Explorer, click on the left side on the Callbk folder of the CD.
3. You should see the address related files on the right. From the main menu, click Edit/Select All.
4. On the main menu of Windows Explorer, click Edit/Copy
5. Click on the Callbk folder that you created in step one above.
6. On the main menu of Windows Explorer, click Edit/Paste.

If the above was done correctly, you will have a folder on your hard drive with a full path of

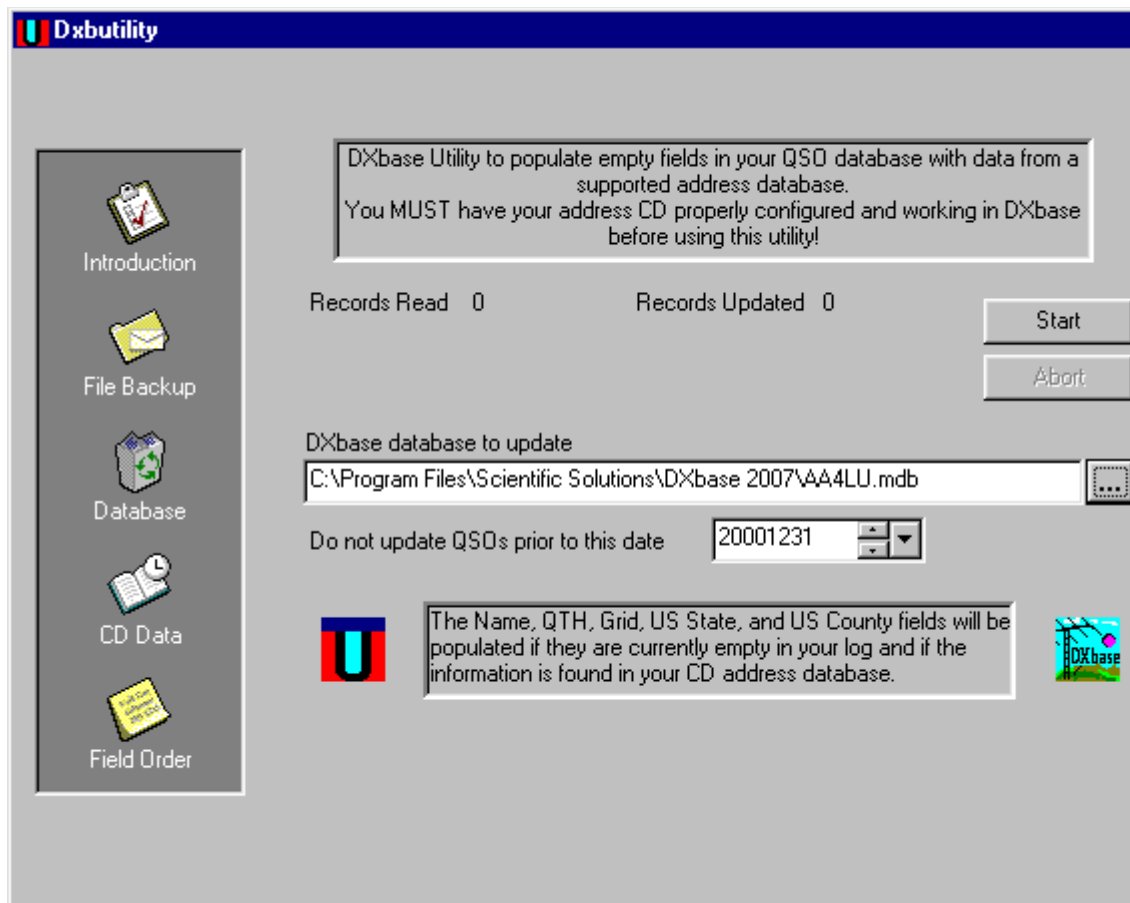
C:\Callbk where C is the designation for your hard drive

And, you will have the address related files listed on the right side of Windows Explorer

In DXbase user options under the **directory tab**, set the CD Drive to the letter of your hard drive where you installed the CDROM files. Set the additional options for the CD interface as well.

Populating Existing QSO records from CDROM

The DXB Utility includes a module that will autopopulate all of your existing QSO records with data retrieved from your address CDROM. The utility provides an option to ignore QSOs prior to a user specified date so that your old QSOs don't get populated with new data that likely would not apply to your old records.



From the DXbase Program Group, select the DXB Utility module. Click the CD data ICON on the left. Use the button on the right and select the QSO .mdb database that you want to update. Enter a cutoff date, if you wish.

DXbase will read each QSO record and lookup the call on your address CD. If the call is found, DXbase will update your QSO record with the data found. NOTE: If a field in your QSO record already has data populated, it will be left unchanged. In other words, only those fields that are blank in your QSO record will be updated.

The US State, US County, Name, and QTH fields are candidates for updating.

We recommend that you set a cutoff date of a couple years earlier than the date of your CD data. Updating records older than this will most likely result in incorrect data in some cases because people tend to move and change their location and even have their old calls reissued.

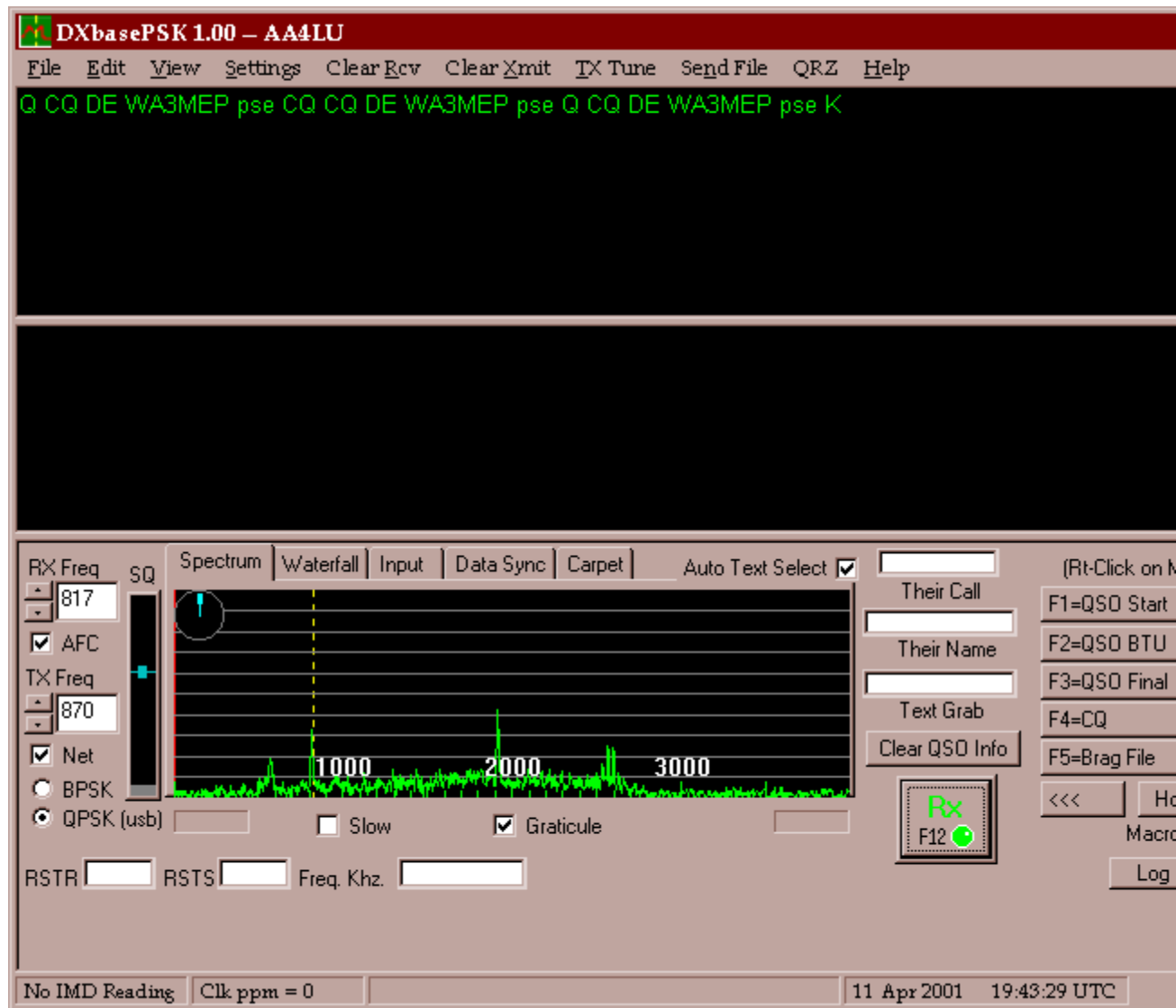
DxbPSK Interface

DxbPSK Interface Overview

Scientific Solutions, Inc. wishes to extend our sincere thanks to Moe Wheatley, AE4JY, and to Dave Cook, WA0TTN for their work and permission to use and to build upon the WinPSK program and ActiveX component

developed by them. Although the DxbPSK module uses the WinPSK program as its core foundation, the user options and registry settings are stored under a different name. Therefore, there will not be any adverse impact between DxbPSK and WinPSK. The files associated with DxbPSK were installed in your DXbase folder.

The result of this effort is the DxbPSK module that was installed at the time you installed DXbase. The module uses all of the functionality and screen presentation of WinPSK and the ActiveX control functionality but with the addition of some fields that can be optionally used for logging a QSO from the DxbPSK screen directly into DXbase (provided that DXbase is also running).



This provides the basic fields necessary to conveniently log your PSK QSOs. To gain the most benefit from this interface, it is recommended that you also use an address CDROM. The combination of both the DxbPSK module and an address CDROM allows most of the fields in the QSO log to be populated with no or minimal user intervention.

Important

Please do not refer any questions about the logging interface of DxbPSK to the authors of WinPSK. Questions about the logging capabilities we have added to the software should be addressed to Scientific Solutions.

Install and configure your interface hardware per the instructions from the manufacturer. If you need more information about PSK and how to connect your rig with your computer's sound card, just do an internet search for PSK and you'll find dozens of web sites that provide detailed information about PSK>

Using the DxbPSK Interface

1. Start DXbase from the DXbase for Windows program group.
2. Start DxbPSK from the DXbase for Windows program group.
3. Set all user options separately in both programs if you haven't already done so.
4. We recommend that you set the user option in DxbPSK under the View menu item to let DxbPSK always be on top. This makes it very easy to maneuver the screens between DxbPSK and DXbase.
5. Operate the DxbPSK module as you normally would have done with WinPSK. For your convenience we have included the on help file for WinPSK. When you wish to log a QSO from DxbPSK, simply make sure that the callsign field is populated and click the Log QSO button. Optionally, you can also enter data in the RSTR, RSTS, and Freq. Khz field.
6. Note that in the settings options in DxbPSK, comport selection for the PTT option will only allow selection of comports that are not already in use. If a comport is in use, it will not be available for selection and will be "grayed out in the settings screen.

For more detailed information, consult the section on [Logging in DxbPSK](#).

Logging DxbPSK QSOs

The logging interaction between DXbase and DxbPSK is very simple. Our goal was to make it very easy and convenient to log a QSO.

Required Entries

There is only one required entry to log a QSO from DxbPSK. This is the callsign field. The callsign that will be used to log a QSO is the one that appears in the DxbPSK field called "Their Call. Make sure there is a callsign in this field before you click the Log QSO button on the DxbPSK screen.

Optional Entries

1. The RSTR is for the signal report you received. It should be in the format of three numerics such as 599. If it is left blank, DXbase will automatically populate the RSTR field in the log with 599.

2. The RSTS is for the signal report that you sent. It should be in the format of three numerics such as 599. If it is left blank, DXbase will automatically populate the RSTS field in the log with 599.
3. The Freq. Khz field is optional. If you choose to enter the frequency into this field, you **MUST** use Khz. In the format of 14070 or 14070.1 or 14070.11 Notice that you can have simply the whole number khz, or you can have one or two decimal places. **Do NOT** use MHZ such as 14.070. If you use an incorrect format, the entry that is logged will almost certainly be incorrect. If the Freq. Khz. Field is left blank, DXbase will first attempt to query your HF radio for the frequency. If an Hf radio interface is not used, or if the request to the radio fails, DXbase will use the defaults from user options under the log tab.
4. The name field in DXbase will be populated with the "Their Name field from DxbPSK. The number of characters allowed in the name is 15 and if you attempt to use a name larger than this, it will be truncated to 15 characters.
5. In DxbPSK, when you choose to clear the QSO information, the contents of the Freq. Field will be left as is. This way you don't have to re-enter it for each QSO. The other QSO related fields will be erased.

The mode that will be logged is the one that is specified in DXbase user options under the General tab in DXbase. Other QSO log entries such as date and time are automatically populated from your system clock.

If you have an interface to an address CDROM active, DXbase will also attempt to retrieve additional information for the QSO log from your CDROM.

Saving a QSO

DXbase provides two ways for the interface to operate. One is to automatically save the QSO when you click the Log QSO button from DxbPSK. The second way is to automatically populate the information in the QSO log of DXbase, but leave the QSO unsaved and still in edit mode so that you can add to what was pre-populated and save the record yourself when complete.

If you intend to put information in the QSO log that is not automatically populated by the interface from DxbPSK, then you would probably want to have the QSO left in edit mode so that you could switch to the DXbase screen, add the additional information, and save the QSO record yourself when complete.

However, if you don't need to add other information except the basics, then you would benefit by having DXbase automatically save the QSO record for you. Even if a QSO is automatically saved, you can still change or add information for the QSO by simply clicking the field you want to modify, make your changes, and then save the QSO.

The option for controlling how a QSO record is saved is in the **DXbase User Options** under the General tab.

Suggestions for Using DxbPSK

Of course, each operator is certain to have their own way of doing things. But here are a few suggestions that we found to be beneficial while testing the interaction between both programs.

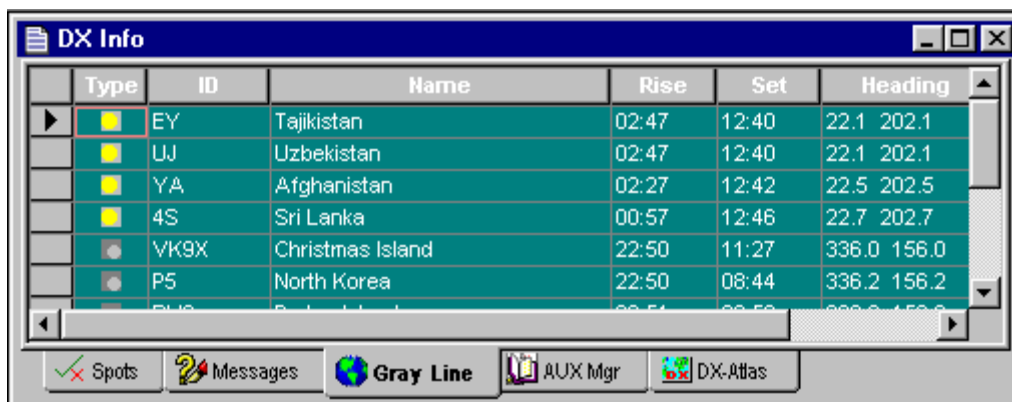
1. In DxbPSK, select the VIEW option and place a check for Always on Top. By doing this, the DXbase program and the DxbPSK can both be visible on your screen at the same time. The DxbPSK program will sit on top of the DXbase screen. Whenever you need to see the DXbase screen, you can simply minimize the DxbPSK program or you can just drag it somewhere out of the way and then drag it back.
2. When switching modes, for example from QPSK to BPSK etc... don't forget to change the user option in DXbase under the General tab to the mode that you are now using. If you forget to do this, you may have an incorrect mode logged.
3. Make sure you don't try to use a serial port in DxbPSK that is already being used in DXbase.
4. It doesn't matter which program you start first. You can start DXbase and then DxbPSK or vice versa. However, Windows will be able to better manage your system memory if you start DXbase first.
5. For more information on how to use the DXbPSK program as far as the PSK operation is concerned, consult the on line help file from the help menu in DxbPSK. We have not modified the operation of the original WinPSK software therefore except for the addition of the logging interface, the two programs are identical.

We hope you find these suggestions useful.

Grayline Calculations

DX Info Grayline

The grayline tab located in the DX Info window allows you to compute the Countries, US States, Cities, and IOTAs that will appear on your grayline each day. Entries that appear in this window are not automatically updated. So, each day you will want to compute what may appear on your grayline for that day. There is no need to do this more than once in any given day because the entries would compute to be the same.



To compute your grayline information, activate the grayline tab in the DX Info window by clicking on it. Position your cursor inside the grayline window and right click your mouse. Choose one of the selections that appear. The entries that result in the grayline window represent those that will appear on your grayline based on the user options that you have chosen for **+or- minutes** and also based on your **latitude and longitude**.

Each entry is marked in the type field to show you whether it will occur at your sunrise or at your sunset. The yellow ICON is for sunrise, and the gray ICON is for sunset.

Note: If you use the interface to DX Atlas (a third party DX oriented mapping program) you can display a grayline map as one of the options in DX Atlas.



HF Radio Interface

HF-Radio Interface Overview

DXbase provides an interface to many late model HF radios. This interface is accomplished through a fully compliant RS232 serial port or using a file transfer mechanism such as the one used with the TenTec Pegasus. There are many ways in which the interface is used:

1. During logging, the band and mode can be retrieved from the HF radio
2. When reacting to an incoming DX spot from a VHF or Internet DX cluster to QSY the radio.
3. From the Favorite Frequency module to set the band and mode to your favorite frequency
4. When making an outgoing DX spot the frequency can be automatically retrieved.

Provided these features are supported in your HF radio, DXbase will retrieve and set VFOa, VFOb, Mode, and split operation. In order for VFOb to be used, the radio must be in split mode. If VFOb information is used, it will be populated into the Notes field of the QSO log. VFOa information will be populated into the Frequency of the QSO log.

User options control the manner in which this interface will operate. There are options in the User Option Log tab that allow you to activate retrieval of information when entering a new QSO. There are options that control what mode represents RTTY on your radio. There are options in the

User Option HF Radio tab that allow you to set up the configuration for communicating with your HF radio.

With the introduction of many new digital modes it often times not possible to determine from the mode of the HF radio what actual mode of operation is in use. For example, you radio may be set to LSB, but your actual mode is RTTY. Or, you may have the radio set to USB but you are using a digital mode such as PSK. DXbase provides a feature called **Band Plan Mapping** which can over ride the mode set on the radio and populate your log with a mode value based on the frequency of the radio.

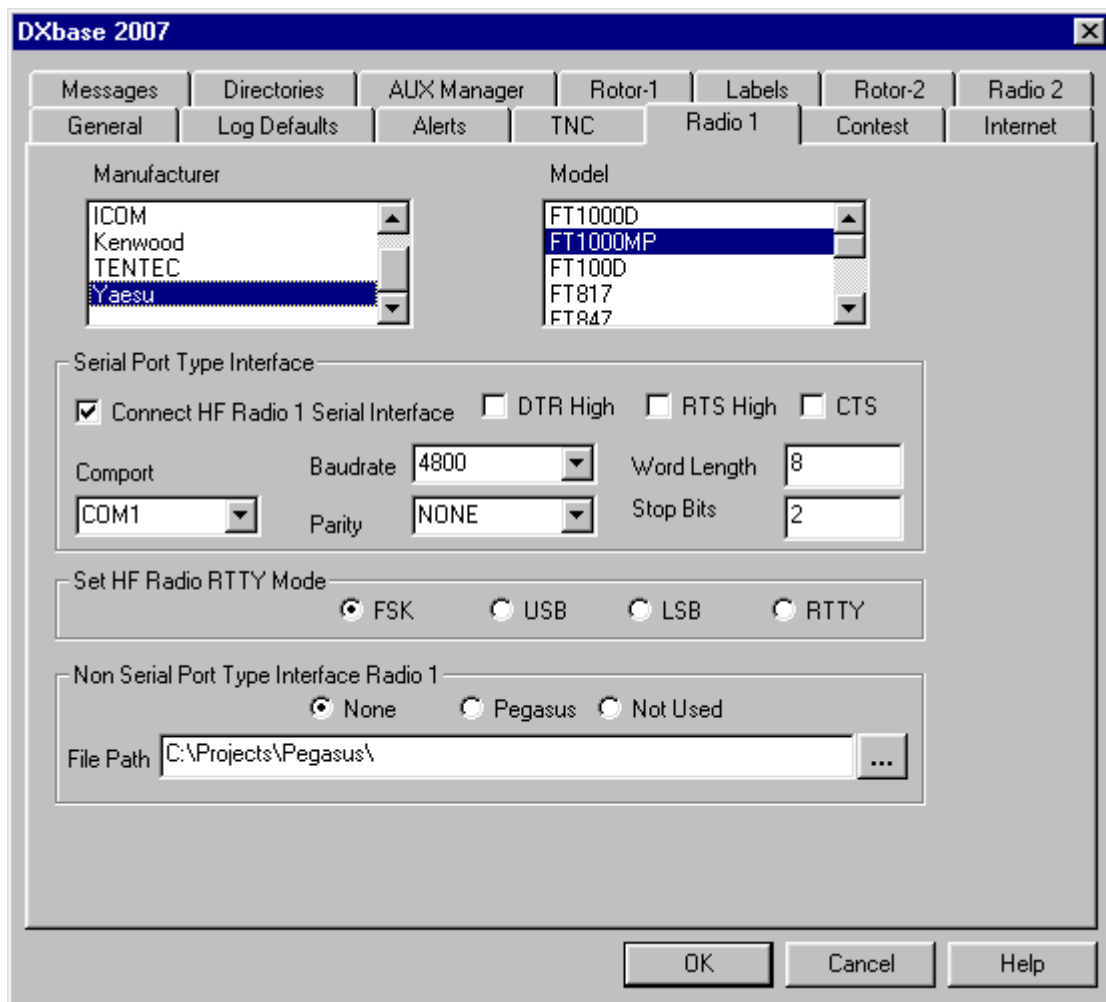
Automatic Radio Selection

As DX spots arrive, and you click the QSY columns, DXbase will automatically select whether to use radio 1 or radio 2. This feature is controlled entirely by the Band Plan Mapping tables. Essentially, DXbase looks up the frequency of the DX spot in the Band Plan mapping table. It then selects the radio entry for that frequency range and automatically makes it the current radio.

For users who only have one radio interfaced with DXbase, they should modify the Band Plan Mapping table to show only radio 1 for each entry in the Band Plan Mapping table.

HF-Radio User Options

To successfully interface your HF radio with DXbase, there are options that must be set in DXbase user options and there may also be options in the radio that must be set. For example, some radios allow the user to specify how many stop bits to use. You must insure that the options set in DXbase agree with what has been programmed into your HF radio. If you are having difficulty, refer to your owner's manual to learn how to identify what options are set within the radio and then insure that DXbase agrees. To access HF Radio User Options, select Tools/Options/User Options from the main menu.



Interface with TenTec Pegasus

The interface for the Pegasus is very different from other HF radios. It uses a file transfer mechanism and does not use the serial port. To set options for the Pegasus, specify the following options:

1. Select the File Path where the Pegasus.IN and Pegasus.OUT files will be placed. This is usually the folder where your Pegasus interface software has been installed. You may need to activate the radio interface in your Pegasus control software as well. Use the button located to the right of the File Path box to navigate to the Pegasus folder.
2. In the Radio Type to Connect box, remove the check from the “Connect HF Radio Serial Interface.
3. In the Radio Type to Connect Box, click the Pegasus button so that a dot appears in this choice.
4. All other options are ignored.

Interface with Serial Port Type HF Radios

The interface for serial port operated HF Radios uses an RS232 interface from a serial port on your PC to the HF radio control device. Some radios use a level converter box and others do not. Consult your owner's manual if you are unsure of the hardware necessary for your HF radio.

Hardware Requirements

1. RS232 compliant serial port with no IRQ sharing with other comports. Be especially careful that you do not have active hardware devices on com1 and com3, or, com2 and com4. These comports usually share the same IRQ and will not function properly. If you have an internal modem, make sure it is not using the same IRQ as the serial port you intend to use for your HF radio interface.
2. The cable that connects from your computer serial port to your HF radio must be RS232 compliant. DXbase uses hardware flow control and unless all the leads are connected in the cable, the interface will not work.
3. Some computer users install a USB to serial port hub. In many cases, these devices will work fine, but in some cases the device does not provide the necessary connectivity for hardware flow control. We only mention this so that you are aware that these devices are not all manufactured the same and some work and others don't. If you have difficulty, try a standard comport instead of the USB converted serial port.

For your convenience, we have assembled [the typical default settings for many HF radios](#). Check this section to see this information; however, remember that if your HF radio configuration has been changed from the factory default, these settings may not be correct for your particular configuration.

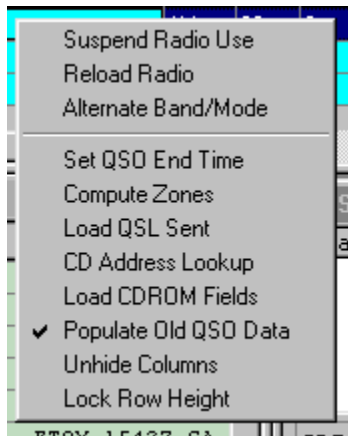
Setting DXbase Serial Port Options

1. Select the Manufacturer of your HF radio
2. Select the model of your radio.
3. The File Path entry is not used for a serial port interface. The contents of this field are ignored.
4. In the Radio Type to Connect box, click the "Connect HF Radio Serial Interface" box. Also click the button marked "none" in the Pegasus section so that DXbase will not expect any file transfer interface.
5. In the set HF radio RTTY mode box, select the mode that DXbase should use when setting your radio for RTTY operation.
6. In the Serial Port Interface box, the DTR High option is needed by some radios when hardware flow control is used. Most do not need this option but some do. We recommend that you set this to off. If you encounter trouble, you can try to set this on to determine if your radio needs this option. If you plan to share the same comport with an internal DXbase CW interface this option MUST be set to off (unchecked).
7. In the Serial Port Interface box, select all options for your particular HF radio. All options must be set, and if they are not in agreement with the configuration on your HF radio, the interface will not operate. Consult your owner's manual for your HF radio to determine how these should be set.
8. In the Serial Port Interface box, the RTS option is needed by some radios when hardware flow control is used. Most do not need this and we recommend that this option is left turned off (unchecked). If

you encounter difficulty, you can try turning this option on. Some hardware not associated with DXbase uses this lead from the port to control a PTT (push to talk) keying option. In this case, this option must be turned off in DXbase otherwise the PTT will be in a constant on mode.

QSO Log Pop-up Menu

If you click the right mouse button in any field within the QSO log, a popup menu will appear. In some cases, if the field in which you click is already in the edit mode, the right mouse may not have any effect. If this occurs, click in a different field in the same record.



Suspend Radio Use

This is a toggle option that allows you to temporarily disable retrieving the frequency/mode from an HF radio. A check mark appears to the left of this menu item to identify that radio retrieval is suspended or disabled. To reinstate radio retrieval, click this option and the check mark will be removed. When retrieval of HF radio data is suspended, user option default values from the log tab in user options will be used. This feature may be helpful in the case where you have a second radio for VHF operation and wish to log a QSO made on this radio. By establishing the VHF default values in user options, you can still achieve some level of automatic logging of frequency/mode even though the radio is not interfaced to DXbase.

Alternate Defaults

This option allows you to over ride the values that are auto populated from your HF radio, user options, or previous QSO logged for the band and mode values. By clicking this option, DXbase will automatically overwrite the band and mode fields of the current record with the defaults that were entered in User Options for Alternate Defaults in the log tab.

Reload Radio

This option will only work if the QSO record is in edit mode. If you are adding or changing a record, edit mode is denoted by the appearance of a pencil ICON in the row header button field. If you choose this option, DXbase will query your HF radio for the current setting of VFOa and

overwrite whatever may already appear in the frequency field with the new frequency obtained. If the **radio fails to respond**, the frequency field is left unchanged.

This feature may be useful for those cases where you have already loaded information into the QSO log but have not yet saved the record because you have not actually worked the station. During the course of trying to work station, he may QSY to a frequency different than what was originally populated into the frequency field.

Executing this option will have no effect on any other fields in the current record. If the new frequency is for a different band or mode, you will have to overtype those fields and change them manually. Or, you could simply cancel the entire entry and log the station again.

Set QSO END Time

This option populates the current system time into the ENDTIME field. Note that at the time you save a QSO record, the end time will be automatically populated based on the system clock at the time you save the QSO.

Unhide Columns

This option displays a dialog which allows you to select any QSO fields that you want to **unhide**. If you select a QSO field that is not hidden, the action will have no effect.

Compute Zones

This option is available only if the QSO record is being edited. Use this option when you change the prefix that is auto populated by DXbase and you want DXbase to compute the CQ and ITU values based on the new prefix that you selected. Select this option and DXbase will populate the new CQ and ITU zone values. If the QSO record is NOT in edit mode, this option will have no effect.

CD Address Lookup

This option causes DXbase to perform an address lookup on your optional CDROM and display the results in the QSL Info Window. The callsign that will be used in the lookup is the one from the record that you clicked in when you selected the right mouse button.

Load QSL Sent

Selecting this option results in DXbase populating the current system date into the QSL Date Sent field. If an entry already exists in this field, it will be overwritten with the current date.

Load CDROM Fields

Selecting this option results in DXbase accessing your third-party address database and if an entry is found for the callsign of the QSO record, the information will be populated into the appropriate QSO fields that are empty for which data was found in the address record found. Remember to save the record after new information has been populated.

Populate Old QSO Data

This option auto populates selected fields in your log based on what was entered in a previous QSO with the same station. Think of this as a way to bring forward the last values that were entered for this station for fields like the US State, US County, GRID, etc... To toggle this feature on and off, just click the menu item.

Lock Row Height

This option disables resizing the vertical height of a QSO record's row. This helps prevent accidental resizing of the field height.

Retrieving HF Radio Frequency

DXbase reads the frequency and mode from your transceiver when it performs several functions.

1. When a new record is entered in the QSO Log, DXbase automatically queries the HF Transceiver if you have one interfaced with DXbase. The band, mode, and frequency fields of the log are automatically populated based on the data provided from the transceiver.
2. When you make an outgoing DX spot, the current frequency of the HF transceiver is automatically populated in the DX spot dialog box.

In the QSO log, you may have a situation arise when you have entered a QSO and the frequency has been retrieved from the HF radio and recorded, but the QSO is still in edit mode, meaning that you have not actually saved the record. Then, the station you were trying to work moves frequencies. To reload the new frequency into the pending QSO record, you can use the right mouse menu "Reload HF Frequency and the new frequency will be loaded. Note, that this procedure will only be effective if the band and mode that were originally logged have not changed. If these must also change, you are probably better off to simply cancel the entry and log the station again with the HF radio set to the new band and mode.



Setting HF Radio Frequency

DXbase provides the capability to select from a user defined list of "favorite frequencies and automatically change the HF transceiver to that choice.

From the application menu, choose TOOLS/HF FREQUENCY, or click the HF Frequency ICON on the main toolbar.

Set HF Transceiver [X]

	Comment	VFOa	VFOb	Mode	Spare
	20 Meter CW	14002.00		CW	<input type="checkbox"/>
▶	DXpedition	14145.00	14195.00	USB	<input type="checkbox"/>
	INDEXA	14236.00		USB	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Maritime Net	14313.00		USB	<input type="checkbox"/>
	My 15m Schedule	21400.00		USB	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Slow Scan	14230.00		FSK	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Snooky DX Net	21350.00		USB	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Swap Net	3895.00		LSB	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Ten Meter Chat	28880.00		USB	<input type="checkbox"/>
	W7PHO Net	14227.00		USB	<input type="checkbox"/>
	WVWV	10000.00		AM	<input type="checkbox"/>
*					<input type="checkbox"/>

Settings

VFOa:

VFOb:

Mode:

☒ Radio1
☐ Radio2

Buttons: QSY, Retrieve

Changing the Transceiver's Frequency

With the HF Frequency dialog box displayed, click on any of the stored choices. The VFOa, VFOb, and Mode will be automatically displayed in the edit boxes. Click the QSY button and the HF transceiver will be changed to your selection. You can also overwrite the settings for VFOa, VFOb, and mode in the edit boxes and then click the QSY button to change to your manually entered selections. Use the Radio1 and Radio2 buttons to select which radio you wish to interact with in this module. The radio selection you make here will become the active radio when you exit this module.

Reset HF Frequency

You can **reset your HF transceiver** to the frequency and mode that was in use prior to the changes you executed by selecting.

Retrieve

Click the retrieve button and DXbase will query your HF radio for the current VFOa, VFOb (if in split operation), and mode. The data retrieved will be automatically populated in the VFOa, VFOb, and Mode boxes. In addition, if you are adding or editing an existing user defined record, the data will also be populated into the appropriate fields of the record being edited.

Adding Favorite Frequencies

You can have as many stored settings as you want. Scroll to the end of the list, and fill in your settings. To save your entry, position your cursor on the title bar of the dialog box and click the

right mouse button. Select Update record. Alternatively, if you click on any other record, the new entry will be automatically saved.

Deleting Favorite Frequencies

Locate the entry to be deleted and click the row button on the far left of the record to be deleted. The entry will be highlighted. Press the delete key, or, put your cursor on the title bar of the dialog box and select delete.

Changing Existing Frequencies

Locate the entry to be changed, overtype the necessary fields with your changes. Place your cursor on the title bar of the dialog box and click the right mouse button. Select Update. Alternatively, if you click on any other record, the record you have changed will be automatically updated.



Reset HF Frequency

Each time you **set the HF frequency** or mode of your transceiver through DXbase, the original settings are saved before the change is made. To return to the original settings, from the application menu select TOOLS/Reset HF Frequency. You can also use the hot key combination of Alt + R by holding down the ALT key and pressing the 'r' key simultaneously. Another method is to click the Reset HF Frequency icon located on the QSO toolbar.

This feature will only be available after you have changed the frequency and mode at least once after starting DXbase. Prior to that, there are no frequencies or mode stored so it is not possible to reset the HF transceiver.

If an HF radio interface is not active, this feature will have no effect.



HF-Radio Performance Issues

As shipped, DXbase assigns some default values to certain entries in the radios.ini file located in your DXbase directory that control the amount of delay that is used when sending commands to the HF radio. This delay is necessary because some radios do not handle rapidly sending multiple commands until they finish processing the first one.

The default settings will be satisfactory for most users. But, if you wish to try and increase the speed with which DXbase can communicate with your HF radio, you can make some changes to the radios.ini file for your radio and modify the following two settings:

Pacing - This entry controls the delay that will be used between each character that is sent to your radio. The lower the value, the less delay that will be invoked. You can experiment with this value by making it lower, but if you make it too low, your radio interface will begin to operate erratically. Radios which use 4800 baud interface are more likely to work properly with less delay. Those with slower baud rates may require this delay.

For example, if the default value is 50, you might try setting it to 30 and check the performance. To make these changes, DXbase must be closed down and restarted each time to insure that your new setting is used.

EOC - Behind each of commands you will see an EOC entry with a value in parenthesis. This represents the amount of delay that DXbase will use after it sends a command. You can experiment with these commands by making them lower. Again, if you make them too small, your radio interface will operate erratically. We suggest doing any changes little by little and we also suggest only changing one set of commands at a time. For example, try experimenting with those pertaining to VFOa first, before looking at VFOb and so forth.

Each radio performs differently even if they are identical models. Therefore, it is difficult to know the settings that will work best for your radio.

NOTE: If you make changes to radios.ini, please drop an email to tech support so that we can keep track of the change for possible inclusion in our master radios.ini file.

HF-Radio Tuning Radios INI File

Most of the logic and parameters used by DXbase to interface with an HF radio are defined in the DXbase file called Radios.INI located in your DXbase directory. Use extreme caution if you decide to make any change to this file. There are no validations and if you make a mistake, you may prevent the interface from being able to function. Do NOT change any entries except as noted here. The radio address and the value inside of the EOC statements may be changed but it is doubtful that any other entries will require any user adjustments. The other entries control the manner in which DXbase will communicate with your HF radio. These are predefined based on the specifications for the HF radio. Changing any of them incorrectly may cause the interface to be non-functional.

NOTE: In order for any changes you may make to RADIOS.INI to take effect, you MUST close and restart DXbase.

Some radios such as the ICOM and TenTec require that a radio address be included in any commands that are sent to the radio. The default address specified by the manufacturer is included in the DXbase RADIOS.INI; however, if you changed the address used in your HF radio, you will either need to change the radio back to the default address, or you must change the RADIOS.INI file address entry for your radio to the hex value representing your current radio address.

Since HF radios generally do not fully implement RS232, DXbase includes logic that controls the speed at which it will communicate with an HF radio. There are two types of commands included in RADIOS.INI which control timing:

PACING - This value represents the amount of delay that will be inserted between each character that is sent to the radio. If it is set too small, your radio will not read all the characters that it should thus resulting in some erratic behavior in setting or retrieving frequency or mode. If the value is too large, setting or retrieving information from your HF radio will be slower than it needs to be but it will cause no harm. Generally, a value of 50 is reasonable for most Yaesu and ICOM radios. We have no benchmarks for others.

EOC - You will notice that after each command line in the RADIOS.INI file, there is an EOC (???) entry. ??? represents the amount of delay that will be inserted after each separate command that is sent to the radio. Some radios require more time to perform a command than others. The default entries furnished will be adequate for most installations; however, if your radio fails to perform all the settings or retrievals of information, you may need to make these values larger.

P_ entries - Entries that begin with P_ represent the values that will be used to set the mode. Most radios use the same values to set the mode and to get the mode; however, some do not such as the Yaesu 920. Some entries are place holders and are not actually used by DXbase at this time. Entries that are used are as follows:

P_LSB=0

P_USB=1

P_AM=2

P_FM=5

P_CW=3

P_FSK=4

P_RTTY=4

P_PACKET=4

DXbase does NOT support communications with multiple radios simultaneously.

The following is an extract SAMPLE entry from Radios.INI NOTE: The actual values contained in the Radios.INI may be different than what is listed below. This listing is for demonstration purposes ONLY, to show the address entry referenced above. In this example for the ICOM 781, the default address assigned by DXbase is hex 0x26. If the address that is being used in your radio is something different, then you will have to change the HF radio to agree with DXbase, or you will have to modify Radios.INI address entry to agree with the HF radio.

```
[ICOM_IC-781]
```

```
P_LSB=0
```

```
P_USB=1
```

```
P_CW_USB=0
```

```
P_CW_LSB=0
```

```
P_AM=2
```

```
P_FM=5
```

```
P_FM_N=0
```

```
P_DATA_LSB=0
```

```
P_DATA_USB=0
```

```
P_DATA_FM=0
```

```
P_CW=3
```

```
P_FSK=4
```

```
P_RTTY=4
```

```
P_PACKET=4
```

```
LSB=0
```

```
USB=1
```

```
AM=2
```

```
CW=3
```

```
FSK=4
```

```
RTTY=4
```

```
FM=5
```

```
HIGH=1
```

```
MEDIUM=2
```

LOW=2

Address=0x26

PACING=50

FREQDIVIN=1

FREQDIVOUT=1

USEEXTENDEDMODES=0

FREQSHIFT=0

DefaultCW=3

DefaultFSK=4

DefaultRTTY=4

DefaultFM=5

DefaultAM=2

SelectVFOA= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(07) hex(00)
hex(fd) eoc(250)

SetVFOA= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(00) bcd(%vfoa,5)
hex(fd) eoc(250)

GetVFOA= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(03) hex(fd) rrs(16)
eoc(250)

PrsVFOA= hex(%dummy, 11) bcd(%vfoa,5) eoc(0)

SelectVFOB= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(07) hex(01)
hex(fd) eoc(250)

SetVFOB= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(00) bcd(%vfob,5)
hex(fd) eoc(250)

GetVFOB= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(03) hex(fd) rrs(16)
eoc(250)

PrsVFOB= hex(%dummy, 11) bcd(%vfob,5) eoc(0)

SetMode= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(06) hex(%mode)
hex(fd) eoc(150)


```
GetMode= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(04) hex(fd) rrs(13)
eoc( 250 )
```

```
PrsMode= hex(%dummy, 11) hex(%mode) hex(%dummy) eoc( 0 )
```

```
SetFilter= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(06) nib("%mode
%filter") hex(fd) eoc( 150 )
```

```
GetFilter= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(04) hex(fd) eoc(
150 )
```

```
PrsFilter= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(e0) hex(%dummy) hex(04) nib("%mode
%filter") hex(fd) eoc( 0 )
```

```
SetSplit= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(0f) hex(%split)
hex(fd) eoc( 250 )
```

```
GetSplit= hex(fe) hex(fe) hex(%ra) hex(e0) hex(17) hex(fd)
rrs(12) eoc( 250 )
```

```
PrsSplit= hex(%dummy, 10) bit(%split, 0) hex(%dummy) eoc( 0 )
```

Scientific Solutions does not offer any support for modifying the HF radio. You should consult with the manufacturer of the HF radio.

Default Radio Address Information

The default RADIOS.INI file includes the default radio address from the manufacturer except in the case of the TenTec OMNI-VI. The OMNI-VI is defaulted to 0x26 in order to be consistent with the setting used in DXbase for DOS. If your OMNI-VI is set to the factory default of 0x04, then you should change the address entry in RADIOS.INI to 0x04 or else change your radio to 0x26.

Settings in the HF Radio

ICOM Considerations

Many of the ICOM radios, including late models such as the IC-756 line, do not provide an RS232 command to determine if the radio is in split mode. This oversight on the part of ICOM is a disappointment, but there is nothing DXbase can do about it. If your radio does not provide the capability to determine if it is in split mode, DXbase will be unable to retrieve VFOb information.

The logic in DXbase requires that the radio be in split before we will extract VFOb information but without the necessary command, DXbase will never know it.

In some cases, different radio names for the same radio are listed in the HF radio User Options tab. For example, you may see a listing for the IC-781, and another for the IC-781_VFO_A_ONLY. Those identified as VFO_A_ONLY have been modified so that DXbase does not even attempt to determine split information and when setting the radio, DXbase will always clear split if that mode is set on the radio.

You can experiment with the different choices to decide which set up gives you the best results.

We encourage not only ICOM radio owners, but all owners of HF radios to let the manufacturer know how important a robust, standardized, and complete RS232 interface is in today's world of computerized logging. Your letters to the makers of radios is the only way that they will ever begin to design the kind of interfaces that are needed.

HF-Radio Suggested Settings

The following information was assembled from the manufacture of various radios. These values may not be correct if you have changed the default configuration of the HF radio or if the manufacturer has made changes which we are not aware of. If in doubt, consult with your owner's manual or with the manufacturer of your radio.

Manufacturer length	BAUDRATE	STOP bits	Parity	Word
Kenwood	4800	2	NONE	8
ICOM				
IC725 0x28	1200	1	NONE	8
IC735 0x04	1200	1	NONE	8
IC751 0x1c	1200	1	NONE	8
IC761 0x1e	1200	1	NONE	8
IC765 0x2c	1200	1	NONE	8
IC781 0x26	1200	1	NONE	8

TenTec

OMNI VI 0x26** 8	1200	1	NONE	
Orion	57600	1	NONE	8
Yaesu	4800	2	NONE	8

**NOTE the default address used for the OMNI-VI in DXbase is 0x26 but the manufacturer default is 0x04. You must change DXbase RADIOS.INI or the radio to agree.

TenTec Orion settings

DXbase Set Up For The TENTEC Orion 1 (565) or Orion II (566)

What follows are the recommendations for having Dxbase control your Orion II. Note that in setting up the radio from Dxbase selections you will see only Orion565 scripts and not Orion566 scripts. This is not a problem, since both Orion models use the same command sets and/or commands.

Open DxBase do the following setup:

- 1) Click 'Tools,Options, User Options'
- 2) Click the 'Radio' 1 tab (or Radio 2 if you are planning to use the Radio 2)
- 3) In the 'Manufacturer' window select 'TENTEC'
- 4) Next, In the 'Model' Window select either Orion565 or Orion565-LCW

(Orion565 receives CW using the upper frequency and Orion565-LCW receives Low CW; many folks prefer LCW, since the tuning knob tunes in the 'normal direction' for going up or down in frequency-----Using None LCW, the tuning knob tunes opposite of the frequency change)

5) Click the 'Connect HF Radio 1 Serial Interface' box so that there is a check mark in the box.

6) for the following boxes configure by clicking until the following configuration exist:

DTR High --- No Check Mark

RTS High --- No Check Mark

CTS --- Has a Check Mark

7) In the 'Baudrate' window select 57600

8) in the 'Word Length' enter 8

9) In the 'Comport' window select the comport that you plan to use (must match the computer serial/USB serial port to be used)

10) in the 'Parity' window select NONE

11) In the Stop Bits window enter 1

12) If you plan to run RTTY click the method of running RTTY.

13) Should have the 'None' selected if your USB ports works the way mine does.

Next, Set up the computer's Serial Port/USB to Serial Port. I highly recommend that you 'manually' setup your serial port or USB/Serial device instead of allowing the computer to set them up.

Set the serial port to the following values

First select the serial port that you are going to use (must match what you configured Dxbase for)

- 1) Baud Rate ---> 57600 (must say 57600)
- 2) Word Length -> 8
- 3) Parity -----> NONE
- 4) Stop Bits -----> 1
- 5 Flow Control -> None

If you have a choice some where in the serial configuration with RS232 or RS422/485 as choices, select RS232

If you are using a USB/Serial port device, these usually set themselves up automatically; if you can check the settings make sure they resemble the above settings. Mine does and it selects the first available comport..... Some may allow you to manually set them up; if so use the data above.

Yaesu FT-847

1. Use a NULL modem cable between the computer serial port and the FT-847
2. Set baudrate in radio to 4800 or 57600 and also set DXbase radio user option to match.
3. In DXbase radio user options, set DTR, RTS, and CTS to unchecked.

How Do I ?

How To Topics

Topics listed here provide step by step procedures for accomplishing some tasks within DXbase.

Frequently Asked Questions

[Force DXbase to use my callsign in reports and labels](#)

[Lookup Address Information from my CDROM](#)

[Display information about a callsign such as beam headings](#)



Installing DXbase on a second machine

In some cases, you may wish to install DXbase on a second machine and copy your database files into the second machine. It is a violation of the license agreement to install DXbase on a machine that you do not own.

There are some precautions that you must take for this to be successful:

1. If you intend to copy your label or report/list design project files, do NOT copy the project files ending in the .lbp or .crp file extensions. These files contain printer and video driver configuration information and are specific for the machine on which they were created. They will be automatically created if they are needed on the second machine. If you copy these files to a second machine, your labels and list reports may not appear correctly on the screen or when you print them because the driver information in this file may not be correct for the second machine.
2. When copying your database file, be sure that you copy both your QSO database (this will be the one that you probably named yourcall.mdb) and also, you must copy the refdata.mdb file (this will be in your DXbase folder and it contains the synchronized tables of country prefixes, IOTAs, manager data, etc.... Both files will be needed.
3. If you are copying your database files by way of using a CD, remember that when you copy data from a CD, it will be automatically set to read-only permission. You must use Windows Explorer to locate the files after you copy them to the second machine. Right click on the filename in Windows Explorer and select properties. Remove the read-only check mark. If you fail to do this, you may receive an error message when trying to run DXbase on the second machine that says something like, "The Jet Database cannot open the file xxxx because it is in use by another application.
4. Do NOT attempt to use your DXbase INI file from your Windows folder on the primary machine by copying it to the second machine. The DXbase INI file contains pixel specific screen information and will not

work correctly on a different machine. You must set user options on the second machine and allow DXbase to automatically create the screen configuration information on the second machine.

5. Be careful to keep a copy of your .mdb databases stored somewhere in a safe place. This is a precaution because in the haste to copy files back and forth from one machine to another, you may confuse yourself about which .mdb file contains the full QSO database. Unless you have taken steps to insure that you always have a “safe and “complete copy of your full database, your precious data is at risk.

6. Copy [your registration file to the second machine](#) and using Windows Explorer, double click it so that Windows can register your copy of DXbase on the second machine.

Importing Data

Before Importing

The import utility programs associated with DXbase contain extensive validations that must be met before a record will be imported. Best results will be achieved if the source data is free of errors and ambiguity. To assist in this effort, we have identified some precautions that you can take before you attempt an import:

1. The import utilities contain a checkbox field for performing a “test import. If this is checked, it means that DXbase will perform all of the validations except for those that involve the actual storing of the record. Use this option the first time through so that any unusual errors will be identified. Use this information to decide if you want to make any changes to your source data before the actual import.
2. DXbase generally uses the callsign to determine the zones, country prefixes, and so forth. If a callsign is ambiguous, DXbase may not properly interpret this information. In DXbase there is a callsign mapping database that can solve this problem. If your source data has ambiguous callsigns, add them to the callsign mapping of DXbase before you perform the import.
3. Always make a complete backup of your target .mdb before you perform an import. If something goes wrong, you’ll be glad you did.
4. Did you check the web site to determine if there have been updated patches posted for download?
5. Be aware that some older programs only stored the year as a two-digit value. If this is the case, the import logic will assume that it is the century 19. If this is not correct, you will have to change the records either in the source data, or in DXbase after the import.
6. The DXbase QSO Log automatically assigns a record number to all records that are logged. You can sort your DXbase QSO log by this field by clicking on the column header of this field in your QSO log. This is a convenient way of having your QSO log sorted based on the order in which records were added. If you use this option, you could then scroll to the end of the log to see the records that were just imported.
7. Use the ADIF import option whenever possible for importing non DXbase data. It will usually provide the most accurate results.



Import Overview

Since there are no standards in terms of database format among logging software packages, importing data is a very complex undertaking. It becomes even more complicated because most logging vendors tend to change their database format from one release to the next. Never perform any import unless you have first made a copy of your DXbase database. This is the only protection you have against some unexpected data format problem that might corrupt your database.

DXbase includes two different import program utilities:

DXB import is a utility that reads DXbase database formats and allows them to be imported into the current version of DXbase for Windows. If you are importing from DXbase for DOS, you should use the DXbase for DOS v5 export option to export your data to ADIF and then use the plain Import utility in the DXbase for Windows program group to read in the ADIF file.

Import reads various contest databases as well as some other logging software databases. Import may change from time to time to address any changes that may be required as time goes by. Please check our Web site for any updates that may exist.

Generally speaking, DXbase does not use the prefix or zone information from the source database. There are some exceptions for the CQWW contests. DXbase computes this information based on the callsign. In most instances, DXbase will arrive at the correct entry, but there are some prefixes such as JD1 and ZK where it is not always possible to know from the callsign what the correct country should be. After performing an import, take a look at suspect prefixes and manually make any necessary changes.

To perform an import, exit DXbase and select the run the appropriate import utility program. When you finish the import, you must run the **initialize tables** feature in DXbase in order for the statistics tables to be recomputed with the new data.

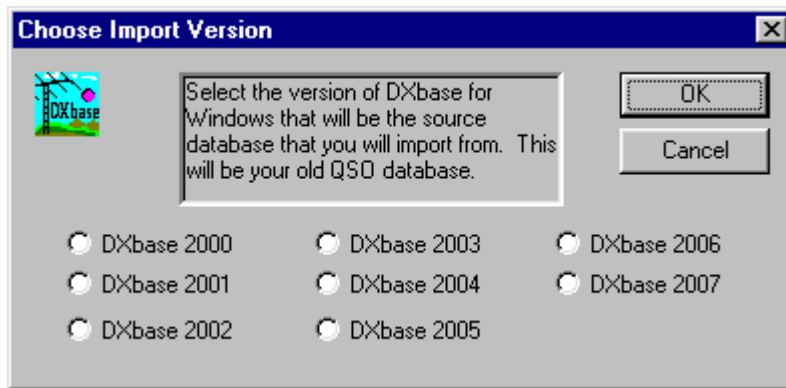


Importing DXbase for Windows

There are two import utilities furnished with DXbase for Windows. One is called just plain Import, the other is called DXB Import. To import a past version of DXbase for Windows, you should select the program called DXB Import from the DXbase program group.

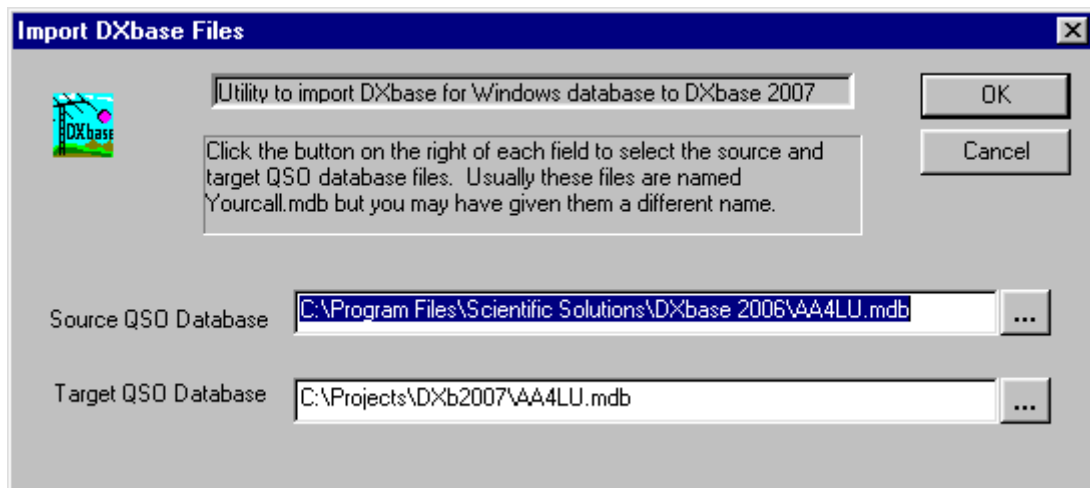
DXbase for Windows provides the capability to import data from past versions of DXbase.

When you run the DXB Import Utility, you will be asked to select the following:



Click the type of data that is to be imported. This will be your source database type.

Next, you will be asked for the source and target database names. The source path is the full path and filename of the database that you are importing from. The target database is the full path and database name of the database name that you are importing to.



NOTICE that there is a button with three dots on it that is located to the right of the source and target path field. Click this button to display a navigation box that will let you select the full path to the appropriate database. Do NOT try typing in the path yourself. It is much easier and more accurate to use the button to select the path.

Next, you will be presented with the main import screen. This screen provides further options that you can apply during the import.

During the import process, after the QSO records have been imported, DXbase will automatically attempt to import callsign notes and personal DXCC options. There are additional databases that can also be imported if you choose to select these options.

There are two options for performing an import:

► Perform the import process but DO NOT actually write any data into the DXbase for Windows database. This process allows the import logic to be applied and any error conditions that might exist in the source data will be detected without any change to your existing DXbase for Windows database. You can think of this as a simple “test run. To use this option, place a check in the checkbox for Test Only. This is the default. **NOTE: The “test mode cannot detect errors such as duplicate records that might occur when the data is actually written into the target database.**

► Perform the import process and Load records into the DXbase for Windows database. Uncheck the “Test Only checkbox so that there is no check mark in this box.

Rejects and Errors

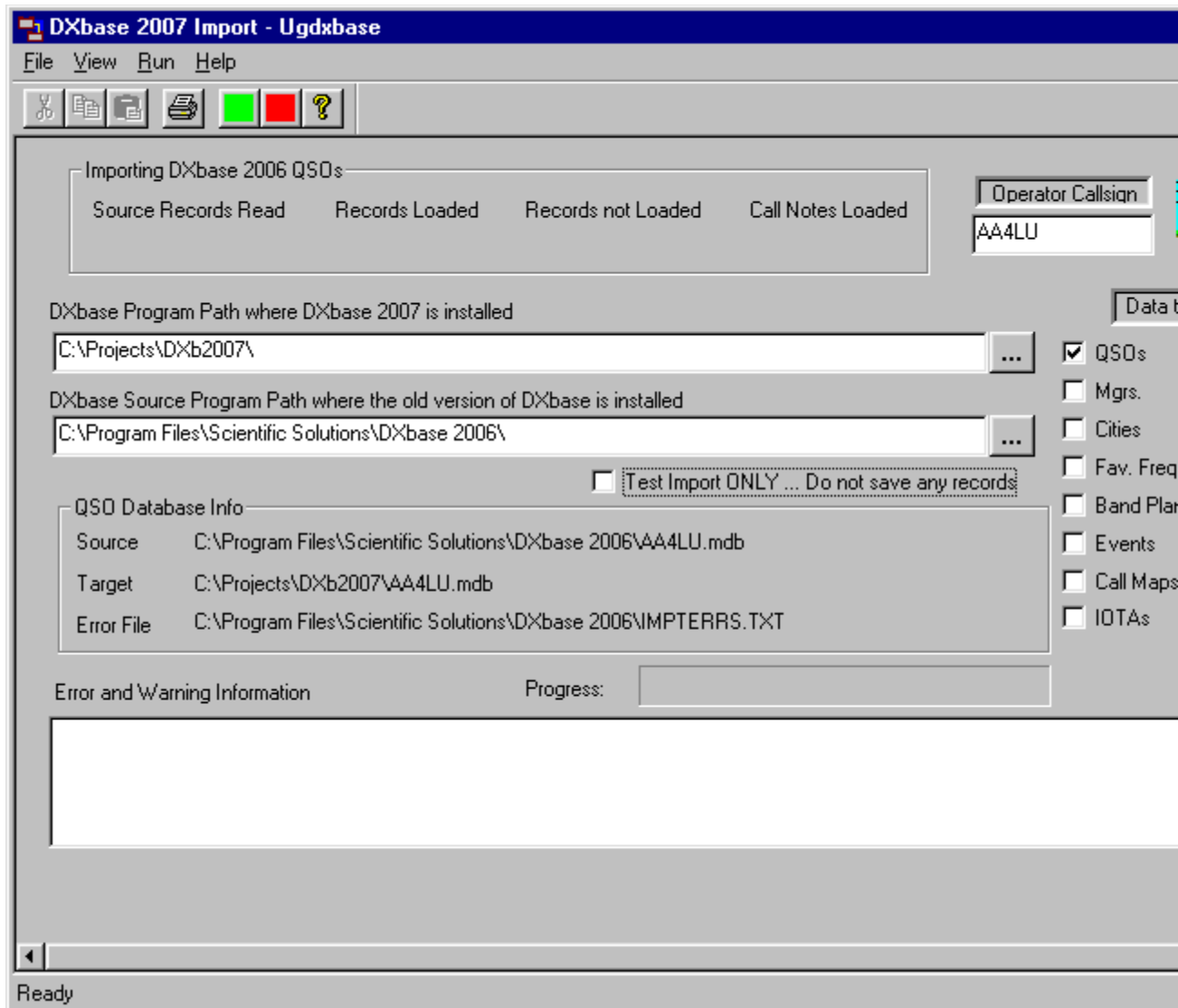
If any errors are detected, DXbase for Windows will create an error file called “IMPTERRS.TXT which will be placed in the source directory path. Each time you run the import process, (both test mode and actual load database mode), any existing IMPTERRS.TXT file that might already exist in the source path will be erased and any new errors will be stored in this same file.

After the import process is finished, you can view and print any errors that might have occurred, so that you can then make the corrections in your new DXbase QSO log.



Using the main Import Screen

After selecting the type of data to be imported and then also selecting the source and target paths, you will be presented with the main DXB Import screen.



1. In the **Operator Call field**, enter the callsign of the station that made the QSOs that are to be imported. DXbase provides a field in the log for Operator and the callsign that you enter here will be populated into this field if you are importing from a past version of DXbase that did not contain this field.
2. In the field labeled **DXbase Program Path where your current version of DXbase for Microsoft Windows is located**, use the button to the right of the field to select the full path to your DXbase 2003 folder. Under most cases, this field will already be populated if DXbase was able to determine its location. Note that the entry ends in a backslash.
3. In the field labeled **DXbase Source Program Path where the old version of DXbase is located**, use the button to the right to select the full path to the folder where the source database is located. In most cases, this field will already be populated. Use the button to the right of the field to navigate to the path if the entry is blank or is not correct. Note that the entry ends in a backslash. This information is used to locate past versions of your refdata.mdb so that information contained in this database can be imported.

4. Under the **Data to be Imported label**, place a check mark in all that you want to have imported. Note that depending upon what version of DXbase you are importing from, some of the selections will not work. DXbase will automatically ignore any selection that it cannot import.
5. Remove the check mark from the **Test Only box** if you want the records imported saved in your new database.
6. Click the green start button to begin the import.
7. If any errors were detected, they will be listed.

If **errors were noted**, these records were not loaded into your target database. If Warnings were noted, these records were loaded, but some information may have been omitted such as if there was a warning for invalid State.

Merging Databases

DXbase includes a utility program called DXB Import that allows for merging one DXbase for Windows database with another. To use this utility, exit DXbase and run the **DXB import utility** from the program manager.

1. The source will be the DXbase .MDB file that is to be imported.
2. The target will be the DXbase .MDB file that is to be loaded.
3. Complete the fields listed on **the main screen**.

View and Print Import Errors

Viewing Errors

There are two ways to view import errors:

1. At the time the import process completes, you can click on the VIEW button. Note that the view button will not be activated unless errors were detected during the import process. This option is only available at the time the import process is completed and before you close the import dialog box. After you have closed the import dialog, you must use option 2 to view errors. DXbase uses the default file reader program associated with .TXT files. Usually this is Notepad or Wordpad. Be careful, because the Windows file reader programs allow you to change fonts and sizes, etc.. If you change the format, the data in the file may not keep the proper spacing between fields thereby making it difficult to read.

2. After you have finished an import and the import dialog box has been closed, you must view the error file outside of DXbase. You could for example, execute Windows Explorer, display the files in the DXbase for Windows database directory, look for the file IMPTERRS.TXT, and double click on this file name.

Printing Errors



To print the error file, simply select Print while viewing the error file using one of the two methods explained above.

Correcting Errors

If you have not actually set the flag to load records into the DXbase for Windows database, but instead have simply executed a “Test run, then you can correct any errors that were detected by making them from within the DOS version prior to actually importing the data. If this is not possible, then you will have to manually add any records that are flagged as errors into the DXbase for Windows database after you import the records from the DOS version. The simplest way to accomplish this would be to print the error report and use this document to refer to any QSO records that you wish to add manually.



Importing DXbase for DOS

DXbase for DOS Early versions

All versions of DXbase for DOS prior to version 5.0 will require that you first get your data into a v5 format. The DXbase CD contains the necessary DXbase for DOS upgrade files to convert from v3 up to v5.0. These upgrade files were NOT installed on your hard drive. If you need them, copy them from the CD.

DXbase for DOS version 5.0

To import DXbase for DOS version 5 into DXbase for Windows, you should use the ADIF export option in DXbase for DOS v5 to export your data to ADIF. You can do this by running Import from the msdos prompt in your DXB50 directory. Select the Export to ADIF option. After completing this process, click the “Import utility on the DXbase Program Group and select plain “Import from the selections.

For further information, consult the help file for the Import Utility. This can be viewed from the DXbase Program Group.



Importing Non DXbase logs

Information about importing data from a non DXbase log is contained in the help file for the plain Import utility. You can access this from the DXbase program group under your Windows Program button. This pertains to importing of any non DXbase database. It also pertains to importing an ADIF file created from DXbase for DOS v5.

Do not use the utility called DXB Import since this is only used when importing a DXbase for Windows database.

Individual Sub Windows

Hiding Sub Windows

Do NOT close the sub windows with the X button on the sub window!!!!!!

Each of the individual windows that make up the entire DXbase screen can be removed from view. To hide the non toolbars, you should use the minimize button (this is the button with the dash on it located in the upper right hand corner of the window in question). These include:

Summary Window

DX Info Window

QSL Info Window

By using the minimize button, you insure that the next time you start DXbase, the window will remain hidden or minimized. If you use the X and completely close the window, it will be re-instated to a default screen position the next time you start DXbase. More importantly, if you completely close any of these sub windows with the X, most features involving automatic lookup of beam headings, countries, QSL address info, and more, will cease to function.

You can hide toolbars by selecting VIEW/TOOLBARS from the main menu.

Additional information is available in the section [Restoring a window](#).

DXbase Status Bar

Status Bar Statistics

The application status bar located at the bottom of the screen includes statistical information as follows:



- ▶ Local Sunrise and sunset
- ▶ Database name in use
- ▶ QSO Log Sort Index
- ▶ Mixed YL DXCC
- ▶ Mixed DXCC
- ▶ Mixed Satellite DXCC
- ▶ Master Sound ICON On/Off switch
- ▶ Local time clock

As incoming packet DX spots are received or you click on QSO records, the information in the status bar is automatically updated.

DXbase uses the following indicators in the YL, MXD, and SAT boxes:

- ▶ * is not worked
- ▶ W is worked
- ▶ C is confirmed

Master Sound Switch

The speaker ICON located on the DXbase status bar is a switch that can be used to turn all DXbase related sounds on or off. Just move your cursor over the speaker and when the cursor changes to a "hand", click your left mouse. The appearance of the speaker will change to indicate the status of master sound. The speaker will be grayed if sound is turned off, or it will have some yellow color if sound is on.

Hiding the Status Bar

You can hide or unhide the DXbase status bar. Use the main menu VIEW/Status Bar selection to toggle the display on or off.

Previous QSO Toolbar

The Previous QSO Toolbar is a sub window that displays past QSO information with a station. It can be docked or floated inside the main application window. This toolbar may be turned on or off by using the VIEW/Previous QSO Toolbar menu item. The toolbar may be resized either vertically or horizontally. Refer to the section [Navigating the Screen](#) for an example of where this toolbar might be placed on your screen.



Entries are automatically populated by many ways:

1. Incoming VHF or Internet DX spots.
2. Clicking on a QSO record in the QSO log.
3. Clicking a DX spot in the VHF or Internet packet windows.
4. Clicking a DX spot in the DX Info Spots tab.

If more than one past QSO record with a station exists, the last one will be highlighted.

Transmit Toolbar

The packet transmit window is a floatable and dockable window that contains tabs for several types of output. You can dock this window to top or bottom of your screen, or, you can float this window in an undocked position



From the main menu, use the VIEW/TRANSMIT TOOLBAR to toggle the window on and off.

DX Info DX Spots

In addition to displaying incoming VHF and Internet DX spots and Talk Messages in the standard packet windows, DXbase also provides the capability to store this information in a separate window. This makes it easy to view DX spots and Talk messages.

	QSY	Need	KHz	DX Call	Time	Remarks	Origin	Date	S
NET	✓	DX MODE	14016.0	A61M	1343	A6 1341 Z DL	DK3DUA	2006-08-	
NET	✓	DX BAND	21012.5	LY9Y	1343	LY 1339Z PA	AA3B	2006-08-	
NET	✓	B/M	21002.1	KC1XX	1344	+K 1338Z UA	RU6CQ	2006-08-	
NET	✓	DX ALL	21030.5	OM2VL	1346	OM 1341 Z PA	AA3B	2006-08-	
NET	✓	IOTA ALL	7063.1	IZ8EDG/P	1346	DCI NA-131	I0SSW	2006-08-	
NET	✓	B/M	21040.2	VY2KD4D	1346	+VE 1342Z S5	S51Z	2006-08-	
NET	✓	B/M	21040.0	VY2KD4D	1347	WAE	+VE DJ4LK	2006-08-	

Spots
 Messages
 Gray Line
 AUX Mgr
 DX-Atlas

DX Spots

This tab displays DX spots that were received. It operates in a manner similar to the regular packet windows. For example, you can click the **ICON** in the **Type** column to **QSY** your HF radio, or you can click on a different part of a DX spot to have the screen statistics windows automatically updated. There may not be an **ICON** next to a sh/dx entry, but you may still click in the **Type** field to **QSY** the radio for a sh/dx entry. You can sort the entries by clicking on the column header. Fields can be sized to suit your needs. This window is automatically updated as DX spots are received.

The NEED column has special intelligence that will enable you to easily recognize DX Spots that may be more important to you than others. After DXbase applies all of the DX Spot alert filtering you have defined in user options, it makes a further check of those spots that will be entered into the DX Spot window. It first checks to see if this is an All Time New country. If it is, it will color the NEED field using the color that you selected in the Alerts tab of user options. If it is not a new country, then a check is made to determine if this is a new country on the band for which it was spotted. If it was, then the color for a new band country will be used. If it was not a new country for the band, then a check is made to determine if it is a new country for the mode. If so, the new mode color is used. If none of these checks are true, then no special coloring is used for this field.

The Need column offers further information by prefixing DX if the alert is for a needed DX alert or it uses the phrase IOTA if the alert is for a needed IOTA.

The source of the DX spots (VHF packet or Internet) is identified by a “V or “I ICON.

The right mouse button provides a menu of items that allow you to perform other operations:

- ▶ Log current entry
- ▶ Reset HF Frequency
- ▶ Move to first record
- ▶ Move to last record
- ▶ Empty all entries

Block Updates or Lock buttons

From time to time, you may wish to scroll through the list of DX spots in this window. But, as you move around in the window, if a new spot is added, the window will automatically reposition itself to the last record added. To suspend additions to this window, and thereby prevent the window from automatically repositioning itself while you are scrolling through the entries, select VIEW/Block Updates from the main menu. When you click on this option, a check mark will be drawn beside the VIEW/Block Updates menu selection. Now you can scroll around without worry that the window will be automatically repositioned.

When you are ready to allow the window to be automatically updated, click VIEW/Block Updates again. This will restore automatic updates and will remove the check mark from the Block Updates menu item. NOTE: DX spots that were received while the Block Updates toggle was turned on, will automatically be displayed the NEXT time a DX spot is loaded into this window. For example, if three DX spots were received while Block Updates was turned on, the next DX spot will cause the previous three and also the new one to be populated. If you don't want to wait for the next spot, you can force the previous DX spots be displayed by clicking the Date column header.



IOTA Spots

If you have turned on the option in the Alerts section of user options for IOTA alerts, DX base will use your filter settings to decide if a DX spot contains an IOTA that you need. DXbase first checks a DX spot to determine if it is a new country. If it is, no further checking is performed and the entry is listed as a DX alert. If the DX spot is not needed for a new DX country, then further checking is performed to determine if it is a needed IOTA.

In order for DXbase to recognize an IOTA, it must be listed in the comments section of the DX spot and be formatted as follows:

1. NA-160

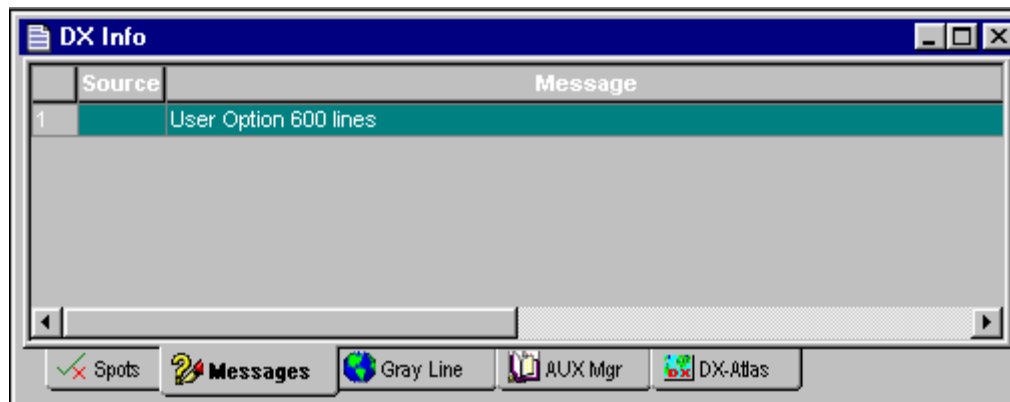
2. NA160
3. NA 160

In other words, the IOTA continent designation followed by a space and three digits, or three digits with no space, or a hyphen followed by three digits. NOTE: Any phrase contained in the comments section that meets this criteria will be considered as an IOTA. So, it is possible that the DX spot could contain text that is not really an IOTA but since it meets this format, would be erroneously treated as an IOTA.

DX Info Messages

As incoming talk messages, WWV announcements, and general announcements are received from your packet network, in addition to displaying this information in the standard VHF or Internet windows, DXbase also stores this information in the Messages tab of the DX Info window. Information placed here is not saved in the database it will be erased each time your restart DXbase.

You should periodically erase entries in this window when they are no longer needed.



Talk messages are displayed under the “Messages tab. The source of the message, VHF or Internet packet, is identified under the Source column. If the data on a line exceeds the horizontal size of your window, DXbase will automatically pop up the full line the moment your cursor is placed on the line.

If a talk message is longer than a normal line and therefore is automatically wrapped by the TNC, only the first line of the talk message will be displayed in the “Messages tab.

You cannot entirely hide a field in this window, but you can resize the first two to make them narrower. These settings will automatically be restored the next time you start DXbase.



DX Info Grayline

The grayline tab located in the DX Info window allows you to compute the Countries, US States, Cities, and IOTAs that will appear on your grayline each day. Entries that appear in this window are not automatically updated. So, each day you will want to compute what may appear on your grayline for that day. There is no need to do this more than once in any given day because the entries would compute to be the same.



Type	ID	Name	Rise	Set	Heading
☀	EY	Tajikistan	02:47	12:40	22.1 202.1
☀	UJ	Uzbekistan	02:47	12:40	22.1 202.1
☀	YA	Afghanistan	02:27	12:42	22.5 202.5
☀	4S	Sri Lanka	00:57	12:46	22.7 202.7
☾	VK9X	Christmas Island	22:50	11:27	336.0 156.0
☾	P5	North Korea	22:50	08:44	336.2 156.2

To compute your grayline information, activate the grayline tab in the DX Info window by clicking on it. Position your cursor inside the grayline window and right click your mouse. Choose one of the selections that appear. The entries that result in the grayline window represent those that will appear on your grayline based on the user options that you have chosen for **+or- minutes** and also based on your **latitude and longitude**.

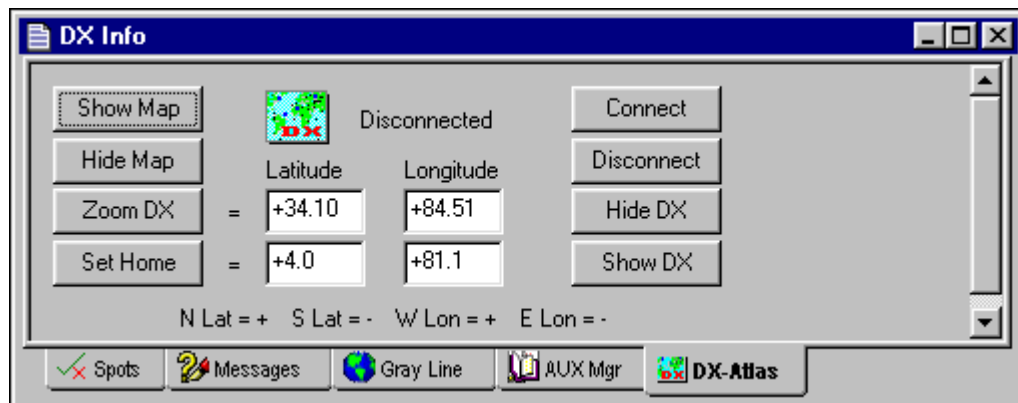
Each entry is marked in the type field to show you whether it will occur at your sunrise or at your sunset. The yellow ICON is for sunrise, and the gray ICON is for sunset.

Note: If you use the interface to DX Atlas (a third party DX oriented mapping program) you can display a grayline map as one of the options in DX Atlas.



DX Info DX Atlas

The interface to DX Atlas is performed in DXbase from the DX Info window under the DX Atlas tab. From here, you can connect or disconnect the interface. You can display maps in DX Atlas based on the coordinates listed in the DX info window DX Atlas tab.



DX Info

Show Map

Hide Map

Zoom DX = +34.10

Set Home = +4.0

Latitude: +34.10

Longitude: +84.51

Disconnected

Connect

Disconnect

Hide DX

Show DX

N Lat = + S Lat = - W Lon = + E Lon = -

Spots Messages Gray Line AUX Mgr DX-Atlas

DXbase automatically populates the coordinates of your home QTH into this window. It also automatically sends this information to DX Atlas when you connect to it. As DX spots are

received or you click on QSO entries, the coordinates for the DX station are automatically populated into the DX Info window DX Atlas tab.

Activating an Interface

To start an interface, click the Connect button. You may notice a “wait cursor momentarily while DX Atlas is started. **A default map will be displayed on your screen.** To terminate the interface, click the Disconnect button.

Connect – click this button to start up an interface to DX Atlas.

Disconnect – click this button to terminate an interface to DX Atlas.

Set Home – click this button to send the coordinates listed for your QTH to DX Atlas.

Show Map – click this button to show the DX Atlas map window.

Hide Map – Click this button to hide the DX Atlas window.

Show DX – Click this button to cause DX Atlas to display an ICON on its map for the coordinates listed for the DX station.

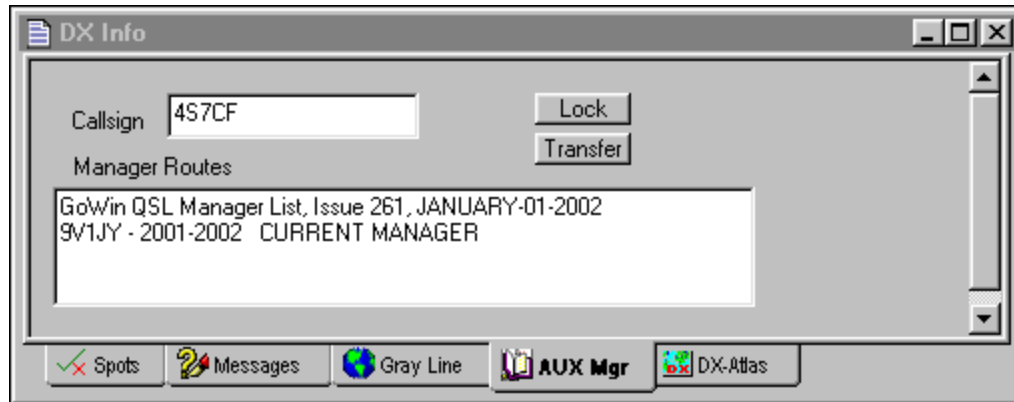
Hide DX – Click this button to erase the DX ICON on the DX Atlas map.

Zoom DX – Click this button to cause DX Atlas to zoom in on the country map for the coordinates listed for the DX station.

For more information on using DX Atlas, refer to the documentation furnished in the help menu item of DX Atlas. DX Atlas is not provided as part of DXbase software. To obtain the DX Atlas software visit [visit _
HYPERLINK "http://www.dxatlas.com" _](http://www.dxatlas.com)

DX Info GoList

DXbase provides a seamless interface to the Window’s version of the GoList. Lookups can be done automatically as incoming DX spots are received, log entries are clicked, or you can manually enter a call sign and initiate a lookup yourself. The GoList functionality is provided in the AUX Mgr. Tab of the DX Info window. This same tab can be used to provide the QSL Manager PRO functionality. You make your choice in user options by selecting the interface, if any, that you want to use. But you cannot have both active at the same time. Note that the interface provided in DXbase is for the Window’s version of GoList. DXbase does not support the outdated MSDOS version of GoList.



The call sign to be looked up in the GoList is displayed in the call sign field. The results of a lookup are displayed in the large window below the call sign field.

Auto Lookups

As DX spots are received or as you click on entries in your QSO log, the call sign is automatically displayed in the AUX Mgr tab where the GoList functionality resides. The results of a lookup are displayed below. To turn this feature off, you can disable it in user options. To temporarily turn it off, click the Lock button. This is useful when you wish to perform a manual lookup or if you wish to review the results of a lookup. Without the lock set, incoming DX spots could erase what you are looking at and cause the software to automatically lookup the new call sign received from the DX spot.

Manual Lookups

To perform a manual lookup, enter the call sign you wish to find into the call sign field of the AUX Mgr. Window and press the enter key. If you have Auto Screen Updates turned on, we recommend that you turn on the Lock button by clicking on it so that incoming spots don't interrupt what you are doing.

Transfer

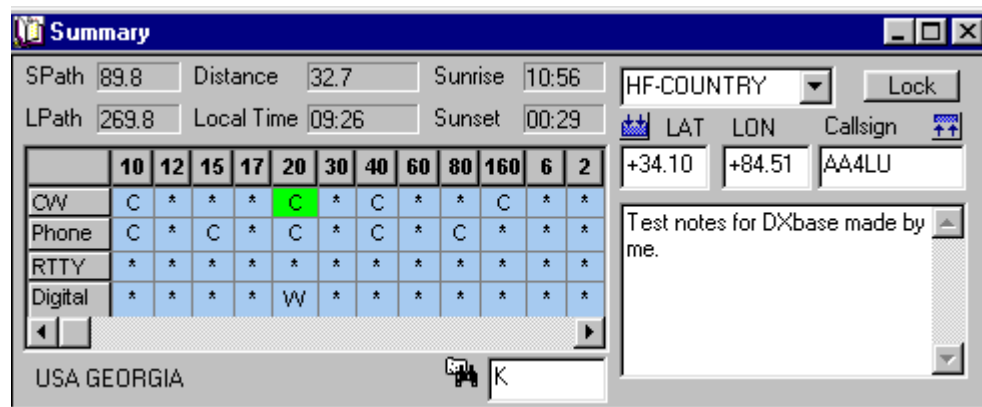
As QSL manager information is retrieved from the GoList, you may wish to lookup the address for this manager on your address CDROM, if one is used. The transfer button allows a convenient way for you to accomplish this. The transfer button sends the callsign of the manager to the QSL Info window and causes an automatic lookup of the manager's address. The results of the address lookup are displayed in the [QSL Info window](#). To use the transfer feature do the following:

1. Once a manager callsign has been found and is displayed in the AUX mgr tab window, highlight the manager callsign. You can highlight by simply double clicking your mouse on the manager callsign.
2. Click the transfer button.
3. View the results of the address lookup for this manager in the QSL info window.

Summary Window

Summary Window Overview

The Summary Window is a very powerful interface that provides many quick and convenient methods for obtaining information about what has been worked, confirmed, and not worked. It provides additional information such as beam headings, distance, and sunrise and sunset. You can compute grid squares and their headings, enter and retrieve callsign notes, access previous QSOs, and more.



Features

- ▶ Automatic display of what is worked, confirmed, and not worked for the following categories:

HF – Countries	VHF – Countries
HF – US States	VHF – US States
HF – WPX	VHF – WPX
HF – IOTA	VHF – Gridsquares
HF – CQ Zones	

- ▶ Use the drop down arrow located to the left of the LOCK button and choose the category of statistics that you wish to view.
- ▶ The band designations in each column are automatically changed when switching from an HF to a VHF category and vice versa. NOTE: For convenience, we include the 2 and 6mtr bands in both the HF and VHF displays since many users operate those two bands plus HF. This lets you see both without having to switch back and forth between HF and VHF settings.
- ▶ Statistics for the newly selected category are automatically displayed if the value to display is known.

- ▶ User options in the **Internet** and **TNC** tabs provide an option for enabling automatic lookups as DX spots are received. In addition, when you click on a QSO or DX Spot, this window will be automatically updated based on the information for the QSO or DX Spot that you clicked.
- ▶ Click the LOCK button to disable automatic updates to this window as DX spots arrive. This allows you to edit notes and manually enter lookup information without being interrupted when DX spots are received. Click the lock button again to allow automatic lookups to resume.
- ▶ Click a band/mode box inside the statistics portion of this window to see previous QSOs for the band/mode combination that you clicked. Or, click the band column header to see previous QSOs for that band.
- ▶ Click the binocular ICON to view previous QSOs for the current category and lookup value that is displayed.
- ▶ Click the **gridsquare** button (the tiny button with two downward arrows) to automatically switch to the VHF-grid category. While the VHF-grid category is selected, you can enter the latitude or longitude of a station and click the gridsquare button to compute the gridsquare for these coordinates.
- ▶ With this window having the focus, select the **View | Styles** option to change the appearance of the statistics matrix portion of this window. You can also modify the width of the fields in this matrix and even hide bands that are of no interest by simply dragging the column header from right to left.

Callsign Notes

These notes are automatically displayed when you click on an existing QSO or when you enter a new QSO.

You can add notes by typing directly into the notes box and click the Save ICON to store your changes for the callsign that is displayed in the callsign field of this window.

Rotor Control

If you use the rotor interface, you can double click the SP or LP heading to turn your rotor to the heading that is displayed.



Summary Window Statistics

The Summary Window provides instant information about what is worked, confirmed, and not worked. If you have the **TNC** or **Internet** options for Automatic Screen Updates enabled, this information is automatically updated as DX spots are received.

The statistics are based on the contents of your QSO log. DXbase maintains numeric statistics tables that reflect the band and modes that you have worked, confirmed, or not worked. These

tables are kept up to date by the software and also are computed whenever you invoke the **initialize tables** feature. *Please be aware that there are some cases where you may have a QSO in your log that does not get reflected in statistics.* Such as:

- ▶ A QSO that has the **Valid field** for mode unchecked. Meaning that the QSO does not count for the mode.
- ▶ CW QSOs that were made prior to 1975 do not count for the mode and will have the Valid field automatically unchecked.

In these cases, since the QSO does not count for the mode, it will not appear in the band/mode matrix of the Summary Window statistics. If the QSO does count for mixed, you will see this reflected in the **DXbase status bar** located at the bottom of your screen.

DXbase uses the following indicators in the statistics portion of the Summary Window:

* means that the band/mode has not been worked

W means that the band/mode has been worked but not confirmed.

C means that the band/mode has been confirmed.

	10	12	15	17	20	30	40	60	80	160	6	2
CW	C	*	*	*	C	*	C	*	*	C	*	*
Phone	C	*	C	*	C	*	C	*	C	*	*	*
RTTY	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Digital	*	*	*	*	W	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

The statistics that are displayed are based on the category that is selected. Use the drop down arrow located to the left of the Lock button to select a new category. In this example, the HF-Country category has been selected and the statistics show the United States because the prefix of “K” is visible in the value field. To see statistics for a different country, you would simply overwrite the “K” with another prefix such as GM and press the enter key if you wanted to see Scotland. If you are using the HF or VHF Country category, you could enter a callsign instead of the ARRL prefix and DXbase will attempt to extract the correct prefix from the callsign. To do this, you would overwrite the “K” with a callsign such as GM4ABC and press the enter key. Do not use the callsign field for this purpose because the callsign field only pertains to the Callsign Notes functionality of this Summary Window.

You can change the category to view statistics for other criteria such as CQ zones, Gridsquares, IOTA, US States, etc... If you want to see statistics for a different IOTA, you would overwrite the current IOTA with the new one and press the enter key, or for US States, overwrite with the new US State designation and press enter key, and so forth. If the value you type is not found in the statistics tables, nothing will happen and the previously displayed statistics will remain displayed.

Previous QSOs

To **view the past QSOs** that you have had for a particular category and band/mode, just select the category from the drop down box, and then position your cursor over the band/mode box that you represents the combination you wish to view and click the left mouse button. In the example above, to see past QSOs with the United States for 20 meter CW, just move your cursor under the column labeled 20 and in the row labeled CW and click the left mouse. This will display the Previous QSO window and automatically list past QSOs for this band/mode combination. To see all past QSOs on 80 meters, just click the column header labeled 80.



Callsign Notes

There are two different places for storing notes in DXbase. These operate differently as follows:

Notes for Each QSO Record

These are notes that are part of each individual QSO record. The Notes field of the QSO record is where you populate this kind of remark or note. Entries that are made in the QSO notes field do NOT appear in the Callsign Notes window. They will only appear when you view that particular QSO record. You should use the QSO notes field for comments that only pertain to that particular QSO. For example, "It was raining during this QSO."

Notes for Each Callsign

These are notes that apply to more than just a particular QSO. They are comments that you might want to see whenever you have a QSO with this station. These notes are stored in a special Notes database and will be displayed in the Summary Window whenever this callsign appears in a current QSO record, or an incoming packet spot for this callsign is received. These notes are entered into the Summary Window notes section as described below. You might use this option for comments such as, operator went to my college, or his XYL is "Mary."

Callsign Notes Description

DXbase maintains a notes database that stores information that is associated with a unique callsign. If notes for a callsign have previously been stored, they will be automatically displayed whenever the following activities are performed:

- ▶ Click on a QSO record in the log
- ▶ Type the callsign of a new QSO entry in the QSO Log and press tab key
- ▶ Click on a DX packet spot
- ▶ Enter a callsign in the callsign field of the Summary Window and click the Find ICON
- ▶ A DX packet spot is received and **auto display** screen updates is turned on

Caution: If you have activated the VHF Packet or Internet interface and have the automatic screen update feature turned on, click the **“Lock”** button before you begin making any changes or additions. This will prevent any other processes from interfering while you are making changes. Otherwise, the information that you type could be erased by an incoming packet spot. After you have completed your changes and saved them, click the **“Lock”** button again to reactive automatic screen updates for this window.

ADD New Notes

Click in the callsign field of the Summary Window and enter the callsign. Usually the callsign field will be pre-populated with the current callsign from your QSO log or from the last DX spot received. Enter your notes. Select RECORD/UPDATE from the application menu, or click the Save Record ICON. If an existing record is displayed, you can overtype the callsign with a new callsign and click the Save Record ICON. In this case, DXbase will ask you if you want to change the previous record’s callsign to the new one, or if you want to create a new record with the new callsign.

Change Existing Notes

Overtime the existing notes with your changes. Or, if you are adding additional notes to what already exists, simply position your cursor at the end of the existing text and enter the additional notes. Select RECORD/UPDATE from the application menu, or click the Save Record ICON.

Delete Notes

Click in the Notes View to make it have the focus. Select RECORD/DELETE from the application menu. Caution: A record must be displayed in the note view before you can execute a delete.

Find Notes

Enter the callsign that you wish to find and click the Find ICON on the application toolbar. If notes exist, they will be displayed; the fields will be empty if a record is not found.

Summary Window Gridsquares

DXbase contains algorithms that allow you to compute the grid square based on the latitude and longitude of another station. It computes beam headings and distance using the latitude and longitude for your station as set in user options and those of the distant station that are entered on the Summary Window.

To access the gridsquare functionality of this window, choose the VHF-Gridsquare category from the drop down list located to the left of the Lock button. Or, simply click the grid button (the tiny button with the two downward arrows) and DXbase will automatically switch to the VHF-GRIDS category.

The screenshot shows the 'Summary' window in DXbase. At the top, there are input fields for SPath (17), Distance (538.9), Sunrise (N/A), LPath (197), Local Time, and Sunset (N/A). To the right, a dropdown menu is set to 'VHF-GRIDS' next to a 'Lock' button. Below these are fields for LAT, LON, and Callsign (K8KE). A band/mode matrix is displayed with columns for frequencies (2, 4, 6, 222, 432, 902, 1240, 2300, 3300, 565, 10) and rows for modes (CW, Phone, RTTY, Digital). The 'C' in the 222 MHz band for CW mode is highlighted in green. At the bottom right, the Gridsquare field shows 'EN91GM'.

► To compute the gridsquare and headings for a different location, overwrite the LAT and LON fields with the new coordinates and click the grid button (the button with the two downward arrows). DXbase requires that the LAT and LON be entered in the correct format with a + or – prefix and at least one decimal place. If for some reason DXbase is unable to compute a gridsquare based on the information you entered, the word ERROR will appear in place of the gridsquare value.

► To compute the headings for another gridsquare, overwrite the existing gridsquare value with the new value. You can enter either the four or six character gridsquare.

► You can access previous QSOs with a gridsquare by simply clicking in the band/mode matrix for the band/mode combination, or you can click the binocular button located to the left of the gridsquare value that is current.



Quick Country Lookups

From time to time, you may know a callsign and wish to determine if you've worked it before, what country it might be, beam headings for this country, what bands/modes you have it confirmed/worked on, etc..

The **Summary window** provides a convenient means to accomplish all of this. Make sure that you have selected either HF or VHF Countries from the drop down list in the Summary window. Simply enter the callsign into the callsign field and with your cursor still positioned in the callsign field, press the enter key.

DXbase will automatically lookup and display the following information based on the callsign entered:

1. Country name
2. Beam headings and distance
3. Previous QSOs are displayed in the Previous QSO toolbar.
4. QSO notes for this callsign
5. Bands/Modes statistics for this country.

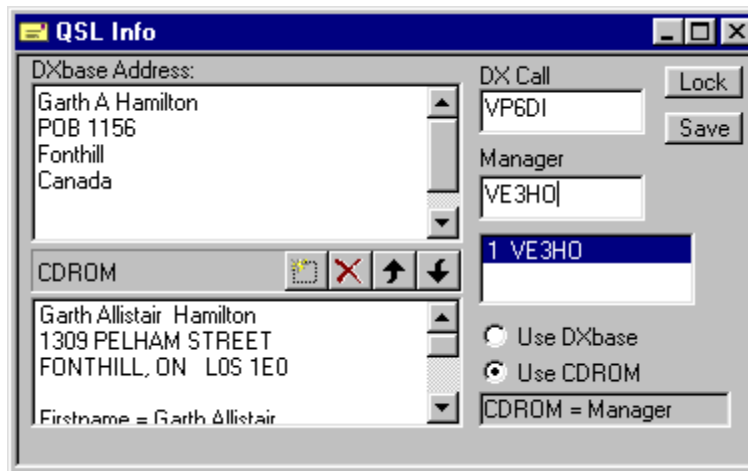
In past releases of DXbase, it was necessary to enter the callsign into the log; however, the above procedure replaces the need to enter anything into the log when your only desire to identify information about a callsign.

QSL Info Window

QSL Info Window Overview

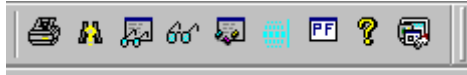
The QSL Info window provides comprehensive information about the address and manager data for the current callsign. It consists of two tabs:

- ▶ ADR Info – displays address information retrieved from the internal DXbase manager database and also displays information retrieved from a third-party address CDROM, if one is used.
- ▶ AUX Mgr – retrieves information from the third-party Windows QSL Manager Pro software if it is used.



- ▶ If you have the user option under the **Directory** tab of user options set for automatic lookups, DXbase will automatically retrieve the CD address information when DX Spots are received.

► You can request a lookup of an address from a CD by entering the call sign in the DX Call or Manager field of this window and then clicking the CD- DXcall or CD-Mgr ICON from the main toolbar. These are the two ICONs with the blue glasses. The first ICON with the square around the glasses represents a DX-call lookup and the next ICON with just the glasses handles a CD-Mgr lookup.



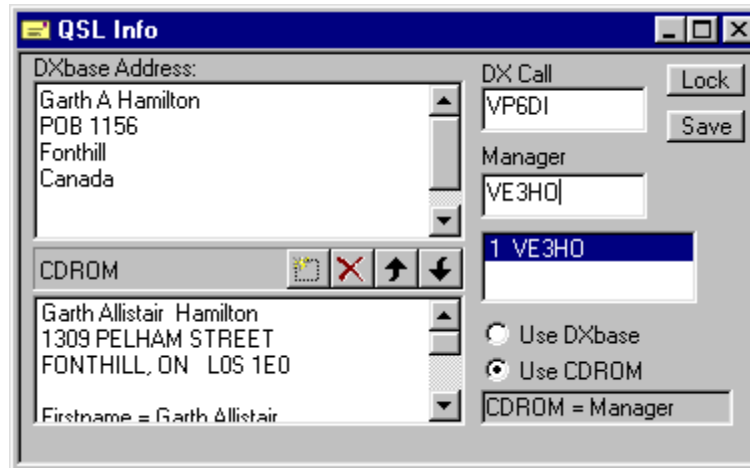
► The LOCK button is used to temporarily disable automatic updates to this window as packet DX Spots are received.

► The two buttons labeled “Use DXbase and “Use CDROM control which address information is to be used when storing an address label. They also control which address will be saved in the internal DXbase Manager Address database if you click the Save ICON on the main toolbar.

► If there are multiple address routes in the DXbase Manager Mapping database, the routes will be displayed in the right center of the window. In this example, there are two routes for AA4LU and they are listed as AA4LU and DXBASE. To see the alternate address information, double click the entry.

Working with Address Information

All address information is processed by the ADR Info tab in the QSL Info window. Here you can retrieve, edit, and save address information from both the internal DXbase Manager database and the third party address CDROM you may be using. Both the DXbase database information and the CDROM database information are displayed simultaneously on the same window.



► Manager address information retrieved from the internal DXbase manager database is displayed in the DXbase portion of the window.

► Address information retrieved from a third party address CDROM is displayed in the CDROM portion of the window. In addition, if there is additional information available in the CDROM record such as first name, latitude, longitude, county, etc. it will also be displayed in the CDROM portion of this window. Use the scrollbar to review the additional information that may have been retrieved.

There are two push button entries that control which address DXbase will use whenever you choose to save an address label or save an address record.

► Use DXbase – if this is selected, whenever you click the Address Label ICON on the main DXbase toolbar, the address displayed in the DXbase portion of the window will be used for your label. In addition, if you click the Save ICON on the main DXbase toolbar, the address listed in the DXbase portion of the window will be saved in the internal DXbase manager address database.

► Use CDROM – if this is selected, whenever you click the Address Label ICON on the main DXbase toolbar, the address information in the CDROM portion of this window will be used for your label. Additionally, if you click the Save ICON on the main DXbase toolbar, the address listed in the CDROM portion of this window will be used to store an address record in the internal DXbase manager address database. If a record already exists in the DXbase manager address database, you will be asked if you want to overwrite the existing address record.

Finding Address Information

There are many ways to retrieve address information. All lookups are based on a callsign. With the QSL Info, ADR Info tab visible you will see the address information that is retrieved.

The screenshot shows the 'QSL Info' window. It has two main sections: 'DXbase Address' and 'CDROM'. The 'DXbase Address' section contains a text box with the address: 'Garth A Hamilton', 'POB 1156', 'Fonthill', 'Canada'. To the right of this section are fields for 'DX Call' (containing 'VP6DI') and 'Manager' (containing 'VE3HO'), with 'Lock' and 'Save' buttons. Below the 'DXbase Address' section is the 'CDROM' section, which contains a text box with the address: 'Garth Allistair Hamilton', '1309 PELHAM STREET', 'FONTHILL, ON L0S 1E0'. Below this is a field for 'Firstname = Garth Allistair'. To the right of the 'CDROM' section are radio buttons for 'Use DXbase' and 'Use CDROM' (which is selected), and a text box containing 'CDROM = Manager'. There are also 'Find' and 'Save' icons in the CDROM section.

From the QSL Info Window

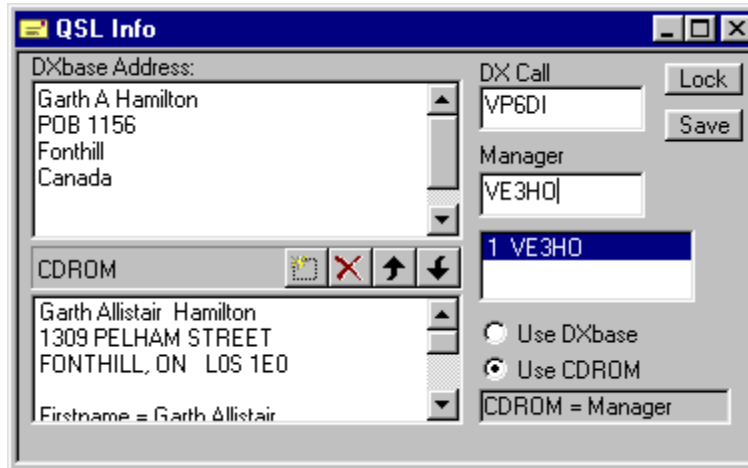
- In the ADR Info tab, enter a callsign in the DX call field and then click the Find ICON on the main DXbase toolbar. This will retrieve **both** the DXbase record and the CDROM record if one exists.
- In the ADR Info tab, enter a callsign in the DX call field and then click then CDROM DX Call ICON or choose Record/CDROM DX Call Lookup. This will retrieve **only** the CDROM address if one exists.
- In the ADR Info tab, enter a callsign in the Manager field and then click the CDROM Manager ICON or choose Record/CDROM Manager call lookup. This will retrieve **only** the CDROM information for the callsign in the manager field.

From the QSO Log

Use the right mouse button to click on the QSO record containing the callsign you want retrieved. On the menu that pops up, select the CD Address Lookup choice. This will retrieve both the DXbase and CDROM address for the callsign of the QSO record that was clicked.

Editing Address Information

DXbase allows you to change the contents of what is displayed in both the DXbase and the CDROM address information in the QSL Info, ADR Info window. You can insert an address line, delete an address line, or change the contents of an address line.



This window uses two different types of display techniques. The top portion shows the DXbase related address info and the bottom portion shows a CDROM address.

Changing information in the CDROM section:

Chances are that you will not have any need to change what is displayed from a CDROM. However, if you have occasion to do so, these steps should be followed:

- ▶ To change the contents of a line, double click with your left mouse on the line you wish to change. The line appearance changes to edit mode where you can over type with your changes. After you complete your changes, simply click another line.
- ▶ To delete an address line, click the line you want removed and then click the red X located in the same window where the line to be deleted is located.
- ▶ To insert a new address line, simply click the Insert ICON located on the window where the new address line is to be placed.
- ▶ Use the up and down arrows to reposition an address line.

Changing information in the DXbase section:

In this portion of the window, you simply highlight what you wish to change and overtype with your changes. You can also type directly into this window to insert new information. Please remember that DXbase only accepts address information on the first five lines that appear in this window. Anything after the fifth line is ignored.

Saving Changes

If you want your changes saved permanently to the internal DXbase Manager Address database, simply select the address to be saved (Use DXbase or Use CDROM) and then click the Save ICON. You cannot save any changes to the CDROM since this is a read only media.

Precautions

- ▶ The changes you may make to an address are NOT saved in any database unless you explicitly tell DXbase to save the address record. The changes only affect what is displayed in the window. To save the changes permanently into the DXbase address database, you must click the Save ICON on the main DXbase toolbar.
- ▶ When inserting an additional address line into the CDROM address window, you MUST always keep a blank line between the address and any other non address information lines. DXbase displays both address information as well as other information in the same window, such as first name, latitude, etc... DXbase uses the blank line to know where the address information ends and the other information begins.



Saving Address Labels

Saving an address label is a simple process. You can select whether the address to be used should be the one contained in the internal DXbase database, or should be the one obtained from the Address CDROM.

If the address you want is not already displayed, then enter the callsign for the address you want in the DX Call field and then click the Find ICON on the main DXbase toolbar. DXbase will search both its internal address database and also the CDROM, if one is used. The results from both will be displayed simultaneously. If either is not found, you will see that it is left empty or a “not found entry will appear.

With the address displayed in the ADR Info tab of the QSL Info window, select one of the following options to identify which address record you want to use on your label:

- ▶ Use DXbase
- ▶ Use CDROM

Prior to saving a label, you can **edit what appears** in the DXbase or CDROM display. Perhaps you might wish to reformat one or more lines in the address to make it more presentable on your label. Perform whatever edits you might wish to make. To edit a line, double click on the line and you will see it is shifted into edit mode. Type your changes and click on any other line to exit edit mode.

Click the Address Label ICON located on the main DXbase toolbar. DXbase will store an address label using exactly what appears in the address display that you have selected.

Saving Address Info in DXbase

DXbase contains a database where address information can be stored. Saving address information from the QSO Info Window is a straightforward process.

1. If you have auto screen updates active, you should click the "Lock button. This way the data displayed in the QSL Info Window will not be changed while you are making any changes.
2. With the address you wish to save displayed, make sure you select the correct option for Use DXbase or Use CDROM. This tells DXbase which of the two possible address sections to save.
3. Click the save ICON on the main toolbar, or select Record/Update from the menu. If an address record already exists for the manager callsign, DXbase will issue a prompt that displays the existing address and ask you if you want to overwrite the existing address with the new one.
4. DXbase associates the DX call to the Manager Call. If a mapping record for the two callsigns already exists, then there is nothing else necessary. But, if a mapping record does not exist, DXbase will prompt to ask you if you want to save a mapping record. Under most conditions, you will want to save the mapping record because this is how DXbase knows that when the DX call appears in the log or in a DX spot, that the QSL address for this station is address stored for the manager callsign.
5. You can now click the "Lock button to allow automatic updates to resume.

Note: DXbase does not allow deleting a record from this window. If you need to delete a record, you should do this directly from the [manager database module](#).

Address CDROM Disclaimer



There is a tendency sometimes to refer any issue that might surface while using DXbase to the Scientific Solutions, Inc. tech support group. While we certainly will strive to assist our customers with DXbase software issues, we cannot assume the tech support responsibilities of a third party vendor just because we provide an interface to their product or because we are easier to contact than they are.

The only setup required by DXbase for an interface to a third party address CDROM is fully described in the User Options section of this help file. If these options are set correctly, there will be no reason within the DXbase software for the DXbase interface to fail. If you are having difficulty, either the user options in DXbase are not set correctly, or your address CDROM is not functioning, or the CDROM specifications for an interface have changed without our knowledge.

Questions concerning how to install and use your CDROM, how to install the database from a CDROM onto your hard drive, problems with the accuracy of address information retrieved from a CDROM, and so forth, should be referred to the manufacturer of the CDROM that you are using.

Your address CD stops working when you upgrade it

If you have been using an Address CDROM with DXbase and it fails to continue to work after you purchase an upgrade for the address CDROM, there is a possibility that something about the new address CDROM is different than the previous one. If you experience problems like this, you will need to contact the manufacturer of the address CD for assistance and resolution. Scientific Solutions strives to assist the makers of address CDROMs in maintaining their compatibility with the interface designed into DXbase; however, if the makers of an address CDROM fail to communicate with us in advance about changes to their product, we would, of course, have no knowledge about their changes. If this happens, you should advise the maker of your address

CDROM about the problems they have created for everyone concerned and seek resolution from them. If their product has changed, please inform the maker of your address CD that they will need to furnish Scientific Solutions with a sample of their product and documentation about their changes in order for us to evaluate what changes may be required to support their new product.

While we certainly understand the benefit to our customers when we provide a software interface to third party products, we must also consider the cost we incur when the makers of third party products fail to work with us for the common good of our mutual customers. Vendors who continually fail to communicate with us or who refuse to provide samples of their product for development purposes thereby causing unnecessary support costs to us will be dropped from our product interface support.

As a customer using DXbase and also using a third party address CDROM, you have the power to influence vendors to insure that they understand the value derived from mutual cooperation. We believe that we have gone the extra mile by writing vendor specific code in support of third party products. Please insist that the makers of third party products do their part too. We hope you understand and accept our position. If you have questions or concerns about this, please contact us directly and we will be happy to discuss your concerns.



Internal Databases

Reference Data

There are many database tables in DXbase that store information about prefixes, IOTAs, and so forth. These tables are all contained in one .mdb database that is separate from the .mdb that contains your QSO data. The reference database is shared by all of your different QSO databases.

From time to time, you may make changes in reference data such as adding a new IOTA, or prefix map. These changes are automatically used by whatever QSO database you load when you start DXbase.

The filename that contains the reference data is called REFDATA.MDB and is located in your DXbase folder. It is important that you maintain a copy of this file along with any copies of your QSO database. The data in your QSO database must be in sync with the contents of the refdata.mdb. Therefore, it requires both database files be backup up or restored together.

IOTA Table

DXbase contains a table of IOTA related data. You can add, change, or delete entries whenever you wish.

From the application menu, choose TOOLS/DATABASE Access/IOTA.

Iota Database				
	IOTA	LAT	LOH	IOTA Name
▶	AF001	-10.0	-56.5	AGALEGA ISLAND
	AF002	-38.0	-77.5	AMSTERDAM ISLAND
	AF003	-8.0	+14.5	ASCENSION ISLAND
	AF004	+28.0	+16.0	CANARY ISLANDS
	AF005	+16.0	+23.0	CAPE VERDE ISLAND
	AF006	-7.5	-72.5	DIEGO GARCIA ISLAND
	AF007	-12.0	-44.0	COMORO ISLAND
	AF008	-46.5	-52.0	CROZET ISLAND
	AF009	-22.5	-40.5	EUROPA ISLAND

Add, Change, or Delete Records

To add a new Iota record, scroll to the end of the database or click the right mouse button and select “Last Record. In the empty row click the left most portion in the Iota field and begin to fill out the necessary fields. You will notice that the row button to the left will change to a pencil symbol signifying that you are in edit mode. To change an existing record, scroll to the record you want to change and overwrite your changes. To save your entry, move your cursor to the dialog title bar and click the right mouse button. Then click update, or, if you click on any other row in the database, your previous entry will be automatically saved. To delete a record, click the row button to the left of the record that will highlight the record, then press the delete key.

Important:

When you enter a new IOTA number and press the tab key, DXbase will prepopulate the remaining fields with default entries. These default entries will allow DXbase to save the new IOTA record quickly so that you can immediately use it in your QSO log. If you know the Iota Name, latitude, and longitude, you should overwrite the default entries with the correct information. If you don’t know the correct entries, you can accept the defaults and come back later to edit the entry with updated information. **Be ware, that if you do not enter the correct latitude and longitude, DXbase will compute the beam heading for this IOTA incorrectly.**

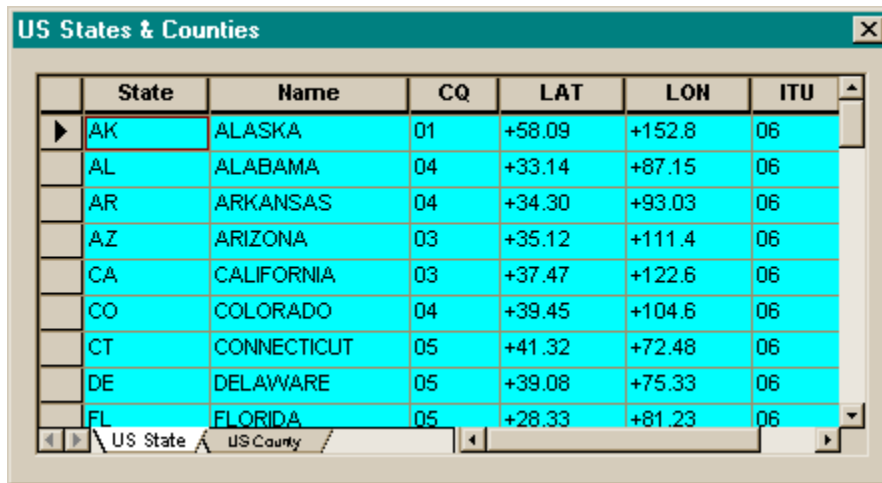
Remember to save your changes!



US State Table

DXbase contains a table of US States. You can add, change, or delete entries whenever you wish.

From the application menu, choose TOOLS/DATABASE ACCESS/States and Counties.



	State	Name	CQ	LAT	LON	ITU
▶	AK	ALASKA	01	+58.09	+152.8	06
	AL	ALABAMA	04	+33.14	+87.15	06
	AR	ARKANSAS	04	+34.30	+93.03	06
	AZ	ARIZONA	03	+35.12	+111.4	06
	CA	CALIFORNIA	03	+37.47	+122.6	06
	CO	COLORADO	04	+39.45	+104.6	06
	CT	CONNECTICUT	05	+41.32	+72.48	06
	DE	DELAWARE	05	+39.08	+75.33	06
	FL	FLORIDA	05	+28.33	+81.23	06

At the bottom of the window, there are tabs labeled 'US State' and 'US County'.

Add, Change, or Delete Records

To add a new State record, scroll to the end of the database or click the right mouse button and select "Last Record". In the empty row click the left most portion in the State field and begin to fill out the necessary fields. You will notice that the row button to the left will change to a pencil symbol signifying that you are in edit mode. To change an existing record, scroll to the record you want to change and overwrite your changes. To save your entry, move your cursor to the dialog title bar and click the right mouse button. Then click update, or, if you click on any other row in the database, your previous entry will be automatically saved. To delete a record, click the row button to the left of the record which will highlight the record, then press the delete key.

Remember to save your changes!



US County Table

DXbase contains a table of US Counties. You can add, change, or delete entries whenever you wish.

From the application menu, choose TOOLS/DATABASE/US States. Click the County Tab.

US States & Counties				
	State	LAT	LOX	County
▶	AK	+60.79	+161.8	CENTRAL
	AK	+61.2	+150.0	NORTH-WEST
	AK	+71.3	+156.8	SOUTH-CENTRAL
	AK	+58.09	+152.8	SOUTH-EAST
	AL	+33.14	+87.15	AUTAUGA
	AL	+33.14	+87.15	BALDWIN
	AL	+33.14	+87.15	BARBOUR
	AL	+33.14	+87.15	BIBB
	AL	+33.14	+87.15	BLOUNT
	AL	+33.14	+87.15	BULLOCK

Add, Change, or Delete Records

To add a new county record, scroll to the end of the database, and in the empty row click the left most portion in the State field and begin to fill out the necessary fields. You will notice that the row button to the left will change to a pencil symbol signifying that you are in edit mode. To change an existing record, scroll to the record you want to change and overwrite your changes. To save your entry, move your cursor to the dialog title bar and click the right mouse button. Then click update, or, if you click on any other row in the database, your previous entry will be automatically saved. To delete a record, click the row button to the left of the record which will highlight the record, then press the delete key.

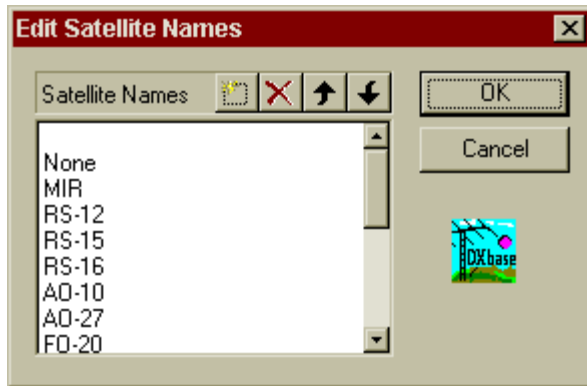
Remember to save your changes!



Modify Satellite Choices

The Satellite field located in the QSO log contains the names of satellites. From time to time, new ones may be added. DXbase provides a feature that allows you to add, change, or delete the entries that will appear in the satellite drop down list of the satellite field in the log.

From the main menu, choose TOOLS/DATABASE ACCESS/Satellite names.



Tooltips are active. Just position your cursor over a button and a description of its purpose will be displayed.

Add a new satellite name

Click the “New (Insert) button, enter the new name on the blank line that is displayed, and click anywhere in the window to change out of edit mode.

Delete a satellite name

Click the record to be deleted and click the delete button

Change an existing satellite name

Double click the name to be modified, overtype with your changes, and click anywhere in the window to change out of edit mode.

Use the Up and Down arrows to move the relative position of a name in the list.



Raw Numeric Totals Data

Raw numeric totals refers to the actual number of QSOs that exist for each different band and mode combination categorized as worked or confirmed. Do not confuse this with **Numeric Statistics** that are completely different. There is a separate Raw Numeric database for each of the following categories:

Countries

CQ Zones

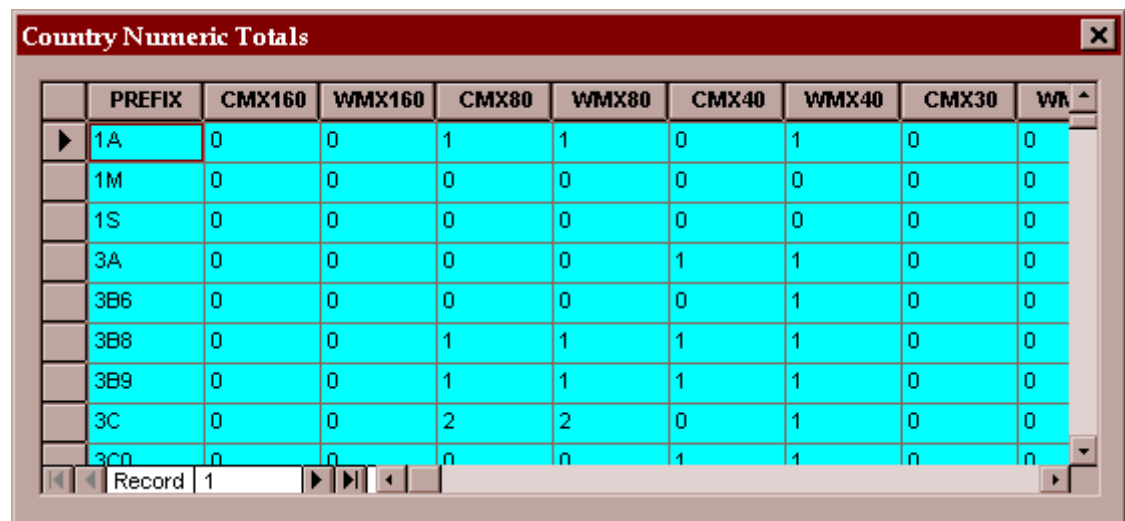
US States

IOTA

WPX

Grid Squares

Raw numeric totals count the actual number of times you have worked a country, zone, IOTA, or US State on a particular mode and band. A separate count is maintained for worked and confirmed.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Country Numeric Totals" with a table of worked counts. The table has 10 columns: PREFIX, CMX160, WMX160, CMX80, WMX80, CMX40, WMX40, CMX30, and WMX30. The rows represent different prefixes: 1A, 1M, 1S, 3A, 3B6, 3B8, 3B9, 3C, and 3C0. The values in the table represent the number of times each prefix was worked on the specified mode and band. For example, prefix 1A has 0 CMX160, 0 WMX160, 1 CMX80, 1 WMX80, 0 CMX40, 1 WMX40, 0 CMX30, and 0 WMX30. The table is displayed in a standard Windows-style window with a scroll bar on the right and a status bar at the bottom showing "Record 1".

	PREFIX	CMX160	WMX160	CMX80	WMX80	CMX40	WMX40	CMX30	WMX30
▶	1A	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0
	1M	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	1S	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	3A	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0
	3B6	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
	3B8	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0
	3B9	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0
	3C	0	0	2	2	0	1	0	0
	3C0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0

Access to these tables is not restricted but should **ONLY** be used by an expert user. Under normal operation, there should be no reason to ever make changes to this table. DXbase automatically keeps it up to date.

This is a very powerful capability but it is also very unforgiving! Do not use this feature if you are not absolutely certain that you understand its operation and that you do not make any invalid entries. We recommend that for the majority of users, the **initialize tables** process be used in lieu of making any direct changes here. Initializing tables will usually accomplish the same task faster than manually attempting to make changes.

The first column which contains the IOTA, Zone, Prefix, or State, depending on which category you select, is a Read Only field. You should not attempt to make any changes to this field. In addition, you should not attempt to add or delete any records. Use the specific database modules to Add, Change, or Delete the values in the first column.

Rules for Changes

There are two columns for each band. You **MUST NEVER** enter a number in the Confirmed column that is greater than the number in the Worked column for a particular band.

If you make an entry in the Confirmed or Worked column, you **MUST** also increment its counterpart for the same band. For example, if I add 1 to the confirmed column for 20m, then I must also add 1 to the Worked column for 20m, and so forth.

Remember that there are two categories that must be set. The actual mode such as CW, PHONE, or RTTY, and also the MIXED section. For example, if you make a change to 20m CW, you must also make a change to the MIXED section for 20m. Again, you must handle both the Confirmed and Worked columns as a pair.

Do not enter any **prefix** , zone, **IOTA** , or **US State** unless it exists in the appropriate database first.

Be careful to recognize when it is necessary to make changes to more than one category. For example, if you make a change to entries in the Country module, chances are that you will also need to make the same changes to the CQ Zone table. If you make changes to the Country Table for the United States prefix, you may also need to make similar changes to the US States table.

If you make mistakes or get confused while updating these tables directly, you can always invoke the Initialize Tables function which will automatically reset all tables to their correct values based on your QSO database.

If the above instructions seem confusing, it is probably best if you avoid using this capability!

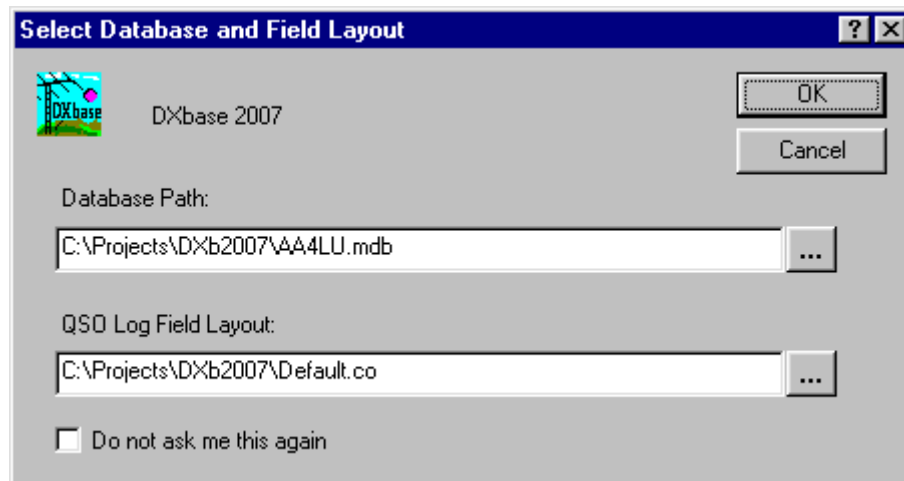
Choosing Database Name

DXbase permits multiple database files to be used. Each database is fully self-contained. That is, each database has its own unique prefix table, manager table, IOTA table, QSO table, and so forth. When you make changes to a database, the changes **ONLY** affect the database that is currently in use. If, for example, a new prefix is added, you will have to make the addition separately to each database you use. The database name cannot be changed while DXbase is running. If you wish to use multiple databases, you must follow these procedures:

► Place another database file in the DXbase directory. **NOTE:** You must give this new database a different name than the one you already have. The database must have the file extension **.MDB** and the base file name cannot be more than eight characters. **CAUTION :** Be careful that you do not overwrite your existing database. You can name the database any valid Windows filename you wish. For example if you have **multiple hams** in the same family, you might use the callsign as the database name such as AA4LU.MDB, ON4UN.MDB, and so forth.

► For more information on the mechanics of how to make a copy of an empty database for use in DXbase, check the section, “[Creating a new database](#).”

► From the application menu, select TOOLS/OPTIONS. Select the [general options](#) tab (the default) and place a check in the box labeled “Prompt for a database name at startup.” This will cause DXbase to prompt you for the database name each time you start the program.



► Select the full path and filename of the database you wish to use. Click the file dialog button that is located to the right of the edit field to display the files selection dialog. This is a better way of entering the information since it reduces the possibility that you would select an incorrect path or filename.

► DXbase ONLY maintains one registry/.ini file. Therefore certain user options will remain in place regardless of which database you have selected. For example, DX Alert parameters, TNC options, HF radio options, directory paths, and so forth will all be the same.

► DXbase supports as many different databases as you wish; however, remember the database in DXbase can be very large. Make sure you have plenty of hard disk space and don't forget to backup each database .MDB file.

Default Name

If you elect to turn off database name prompting at startup, then DXbase will use the database name that was in use the last time you used DXbase. If you have database name prompting turned off and need to change the default database name, then you should follow these procedures:

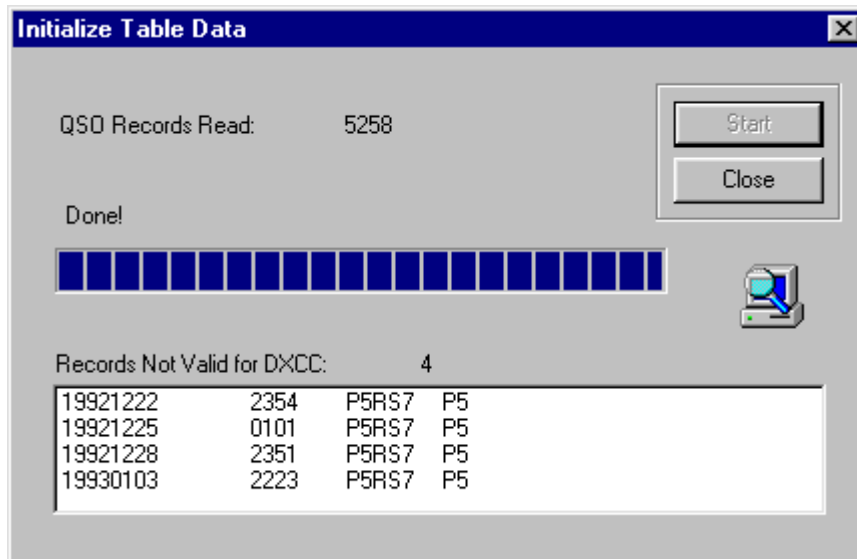
- While DXbase is running, set user options to have database prompting at startup turned ON
- Save user options by selecting the OK button
- Exit DXbase

- ▶ Start DXbase
- ▶ You will be prompted to select the database name you wish to use.

At this point, DXbase will use this database name as the new default. If you no longer need to be prompted at startup, set user options to turn database name prompting at startup OFF.

Initialize Tables

DXbase maintains an automatic link between the QSO records in your log and various other databases. Under most circumstances, this link is automatically kept up to date. The exception can be if you make changes to the prefix, state, or Iota database tables. To force DXbase to update its internal tables, select TOOLS/Initialize Tables from the application menu.



During this process, all internal statistical database tables are re-created. If any records are identified which are marked as Invalid for DXCC, these will be listed just as information and they will not be used in the calculations. **ONLY QSOs that contain an operator callsign that is registered for the DXbase software will be used. Non registered callsigns will be ignored.** After the statistical data has been recreated, DXbase will automatically save the updated information to the database file.

If there was a corruption of your database, you may receive an error message indicating the prefix, IOTA, etc. **cannot be found in Numeric Statistics** and the initialization process will fail. If this happens to you, it means that something has caused your database to become corrupted. This situation can be corrected by recreating your database.



Multiple Callsigns

There are a couple ways to handle multiple callsigns. You can create a different database for each callsign, or you can use a single database and have a different callsign in the Opr Call field of the QSO log for each QSO. The decision on which is better depends on what you want to accomplish.

Using separate databases

If your callsigns are from different ARRL country locations, you need to be able to have separate awards for each callsign, or you just want to keep the QSOs separate for each callsign, then use separate databases.

Using a single database

If you simply have used different callsigns from the same location, such as vanity callsigns in the US, intend to combine all QSOs for award purposes and tracking, then using a single database is probably best. In this method, you populate the Opr. Call field with whatever callsign you used when you made the QSO.

Only one instance of DXbase can be run at any one time. In other words, you cannot have two copies of DXbase running at the same time. The Scientific Solutions, Inc. [End User License Agreement](#) only permits one copy of DXbase to be installed on one machine; however, we have included the capability for multiple hams in the same family, using the same computer, to be able to enjoy DXbase with their own unique database.

This capability may also be useful for those who desire to maintain multiple databases. For example, perhaps you operate mobile and desire to have a separate log for QSOs that are made from your mobile operation. In this case, you may want to have a separate database for these QSOs.

DXbase allows multiple databases but only one database can be active while the program is running. When DXbase is started, the database that will be loaded will be the one that is listed under General User Options. If you wish to use more than one database with DXbase as might be the case with multiple hams in the same family, multiple callsigns for the same station, and so forth, you should follow the steps listed for choosing a [database name](#).

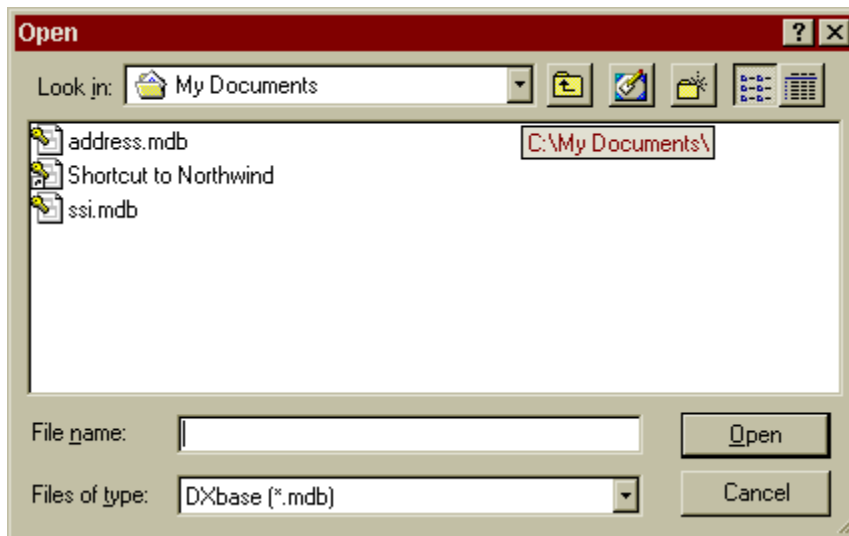
If DXbase is to be used by more than one person, you should make it a habit to check [user options](#) each time you start the program to verify that the options are set the way you expect them to be. Your XYL, son, daughter, or OM may have changed something you didn't expect.

Labels to be printed, reports, statistics, and so forth will be unique based on which database is in use.

Creating a new database

The steps described below provide a means to create a new DXbase database file.

- ▶ From within DXbase, choose the main menu FILE/New Database selection.
- ▶ Use the Look In box to navigate to the directory where you want the new database file created
- ▶ Enter the new filename that should be created in the File Name field. The filename extension can only be “.MDB.
- ▶ Click the Open button to create the new database file.



If no errors were reported, your new empty database file will now exist. To use this new database, follow these steps:

- ▶ Ensure that the User Option “Prompt for Database is turned on in DXbase under the General tab.
- ▶ Close DXbase.
- ▶ Open DXbase and select the new database path when prompted.

New Callsigns

After using DXbase with a particular callsign, you may have occasion to change your callsign. Maybe you obtained a new callsign through the US Vanity callsign process. Whatever the reason, the following process will allow you to change your DXbase software for the new callsign.

NOTE: Prior to being able to use a new callsign in DXbase, the new **callsign must be registered**. You can request a new registration from the DXbase web site.

Please note that you do not necessarily have to create a new database just because you change callsigns. You may wish to continue to use the same database and change the Opr Call in user options to your new call. This way, past QSOs and new QSOs will share the same database and the Opr Call field of the QSO log will distinguish which callsign was used for that QSO.

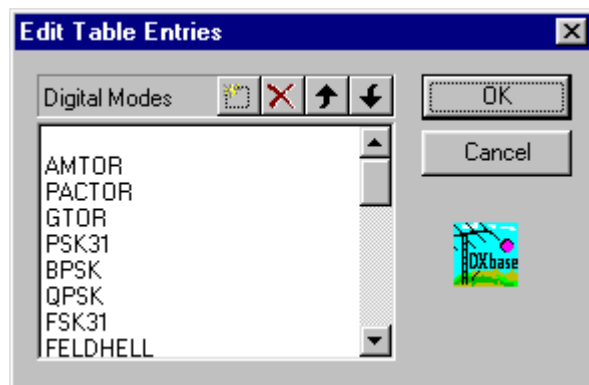
This process assumes that you want to keep your existing QSO data and simply change the name of your database:

8. Open User Options General tab and put a check in the "Prompt for database name at startup.
9. Close DXbase.
10. Open Windows Explorer and navigate to your DXbase folder. If you used the default installation, it will be located under Program Files/Scientific Solutions/DXbase xxxx where xxxx is the version number.
11. Copy your existing .MDB file to a new file by clicking on the .mdb filename, use the menu Edit/Copy, then do Edit Paste. On the right side of Windows Explorer, scroll to end of the file list and you will find a file called Copy of whatever the filename of your database was. Edit the name to the new name that you want. Be sure to include the .mdb file extension.
12. Close Windows Explorer.
13. Start DXbase and when asked for the Database name, use the selection arrow to select the new database name that you want to use.
14. You can now uncheck the user option from item 1 above.

If you want to start a new empty database for a new callsign, use the DXbase FILE/New Database option to create a new empty database. Perform steps 1, 2, 6, and 7 from above.

Modify Digital Sub Modes

The entries that appear in the drop down list of the SubMode field in the QSO log are controlled by what you have entered in your digital mode list.



From the main DXbase menu, select Tools | Database Access | Digital Mode Names.

From the box that appears, you can add, change, and delete entries. You can also change the order of appearance in the drop down list using the up and down arrow to move entries.

Add a new digital mode name

Click the “New (Insert) button, enter the new name on the blank line that is displayed, and click anywhere in the window to change out of edit mode.

Delete a digital mode name

Click the record to be deleted and click the delete button

Change an existing digital mode name

Double click the name to be modified, overtype with your changes, and click anywhere in the window to change out of edit mode.

Use the Up and Down arrows to move the relative position of a name in the list.

City Database

Cities Database

DXbase provides a database table that allows users to enter cities which may be of importance to them for purposes of tracking grayline information, calculating sunrise/sunset, or beam headings.

From the main menu, choose VIEW/CITIES Headings

	Prefix	Name	LAT	LON
▶	9V	Singapore, Singapore	+1.14	-103.5
	BY	Shanghai, China	+31.10	-121.2
	CE	Santiago, Chile	-33.28	+70.45
	DL	Berlin, Germany	+52.30	-13.25
	DU	Manila, Philippines	+14.35	-120.6
	EP	Teheran, Iran	+35.45	-51.45
	F	Paris, France	+48.48	-2.20
	G	London, England	+51.32	+0.5
	G	Plymouth, England	+50.25	-4.5
	HB	Zurich, Switzerland	+47.21	-8.31
	HL	Seoul, Korea	+37.5	-127.0
	HS	Bangkok, Thailand	+13.45	100.3

Local Station
Latitude:
Longitude:

Distant Station
Latitude:
Longitude:

Sunrise:
Sunset:
Short Path:
Long Path:

Rotate SP Rotate LP Compute Reset

Local Station

This section is automatically populated with your latitude and longitude from user options. If you desired to simulate being located somewhere else, you can overtype the entries with any values you want, such as the latitude and longitude of some other location. Calculations will be based on the values entered here. Entries must be preceded with + or -.

Distant Station

Initially, this section is left blank. You can enter the latitude and longitude of the location for which you desire calculations to be made and DXbase will use these. Entries must be preceded by + or -.

Calculating Results

There are several ways to perform calculations:

1. Click on a record and the calculations will be automatically displayed.
2. Enter the Local and/or Distant coordinates and click the compute button.

Reset Button

Click the reset button to retrieve your local station coordinates from user options.

Rotor Control

Rotate SP and **Rotate LP** buttons are used in conjunction with an interface to your RS232 controlled rotator. By clicking these buttons, your rotor will be turned to the short path or long path that is indicated in the lower right hand corner of this window.

Adding New Entries

Scroll to the end of the database and enter your new data in the empty row that is displayed. You can also use the right mouse selections to move to the last record.

Field Descriptions

Prefix Field

This is a free form field. It is NOT related in any way to the use of prefixes in other modules of DXbase. You can make the prefix any value you want. For example, if you want to group cities that are located in the USA in W4 land, you can use W4 as the prefix for any cities you enter for this territory. If you want to group cities for Italy, you can use I4, for cities in the I4 territory, etc.... The field is not validated, but it is used as a sort index.

Name

This is a free form field intended to be used to enter the city name.

LAT/LON

These fields contain the latitude and longitude for the city. They are validated and must meet the normal format for entering a latitude or longitude value. Entries must be preceded by + or – signs.



Modify the Cities Database

DXbase allows city entries to be added, changed, or deleted. From the main menu, choose VIEW/CITY DATABASE. Place your cursor inside the table that is displayed and click the right mouse button for options.

City Headings

	Prefix	Name	LAT	LOH
▶	9V	Singapore, Singapore	+1.14	-103.5
	BY	Shanghai, China	+31.10	-121.2
	CE	Santiago, Chile	-33.28	+70.45
	DL	Berlin, Germany	+52.30	-13.25
	DU	Manila, Philippines	+14.35	-120.6
	EP	Teheran, Iran	+35.45	-51.45
	F	Paris, France	+48.48	-2.20
	G	London, England	+51.32	+0.5
	G	Plymouth, England	+50.25	-4.5
	HB	Zurich, Switzerland	+47.21	-8.31
	HL	Seoul, Korea	+37.5	-127.0
	HS	Bangkok, Thailand	+13.45	100.3

Local Station
Latitude: +34.10
Longitude: +84.51

Distant Station
Latitude:
Longitude:

Sunrise:
Sunset:
Short Path:
Long Path:

Rotate SP Rotate LP Compute Reset

ADD a new city

Scroll to the end of the table, or use the right mouse Last Record choice. Enter the new record information. Each field must be populated. Click on any other record to save the new entry, or use the right mouse "Update choice. Use the ESC key or the right mouse "Cancel choice to cancel your entry.

DELETE a record

Click the left most button for the record to be deleted and press the delete key. You can also use the right mouse "Delete choice.

Modify existing record

Overtyping your changes and clicking any other record to save your changes, or use the right mouse "Update choice. Use the ESC key or the right mouse "Cancel choice to cancel your changes.



Prefix Related

Prefix Table Overview

Prefix lookups are determined by entries which exist in three related tables: Primary Prefix, Alias Prefix Mapping, Call Mapping. The prefix lookup logic is activated during the following events:

- ▶ A DX packet spot is received
- ▶ A new QSO record is being entered and you press the tab key after entering a callsign
- ▶ You click on an existing QSO record
- ▶ During calculation of Numeric Statistics

Priority of Lookups

1. The **callsign mapping** table is checked for an exact match on callsign. If a match is found, the associated data is used. If the zone field in the callsign map table is blank, the primary prefix table is consulted to get the zone.
2. If a match was not found in the callsign mapping table, the **prefix mapping table** is searched using the prefix extracted from the callsign in an attempt to find a match. If a match is found, the primary prefix associated with the mapping prefix is retrieved and if the zone information is present it is used. If the zone information is blank, the primary prefix table is consulted to get the zone.
3. If a match was not found in step 1 and 2, then the **primary prefix table** is consulted. If a match is still not found, then one of two outcomes will occur. DXbase will assign a prefix of 'K', or an invalid prefix message will be produced.

Rules for Prefix Related Tables

The prefix tables are accessible on line and can be modified. Users are expected to make modifications from time to time to keep DXbase prefix lookups accurate and up to date. This is a fairly straight forward process provided the following rules are followed:

- ▶ Do not change the FR or K prefixes in the primary prefix database. These have a special use in DXbase.
- ▶ A prefix entered in the primary prefix field of the mapping tables must exist in the primary prefix table first.
- ▶ If a country only has one zone, leave the zone field blank in the mapping tables.
- ▶ If a country has more than one zone, enter the zone in the mapping tables.
- ▶ If a country has more than one zone, create alias mapping entries to uniquely identify the country segments.

For example, the United States contains three zones in the 48 states. K6 is zone 3, K0 is zone 4, and K4 is zone 5. We create an alias mapping prefix for each in the mapping database such as

W4	K	05
K4	K	05
W6	K	03
K6	K	03
K0	K	04
W0	K	04

This way, whenever a callsign is checked, DXbase will know that if it is a K6, the zone is 03 and the country is 'K', and so forth. You will probably notice that even with this level of detail, there is still the possibility of selecting the wrong zone because in the 7th district some States are zone 3 and some are in zone 4. DXbase will assume the default from the mapping table. Then if you enter the actual State into the Log it will correct the zone to match the State. On incoming packet spots, only the default from the mapping tables will be used.

- ▶ Always backup your database .MDB file before making large changes so that you can revert back if necessary.
- ▶ Use a mapping prefix instead of a call mapping prefix unless the call is not standard.



Primary Prefix Table

DXbase contains **three related tables** that control the standard ARRL country prefix. You can add, change, or delete entries whenever you wish.

This database contains all the ARRL DXCC countries, current and deleted. This table controls the operation of every prefix related activity performed by DXbase. Every field is required but some have defaults already assigned, such as the delete country flag which is defaulted to False or unchecked.

From the application menu, choose TOOLS/DATABASE ACCESS/COUNTRY PREFIXES.

Prefix Databases						
	Prefix	Country	LAT	LOH	Deleted	Field CL
▶	1A	Knights of Malta	+41.9	-12.4	<input type="checkbox"/> DEL	<input type="checkbox"/>
	1M	Minerva Reef	-21.0	+175.0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DEL	<input type="checkbox"/>
	1S	Spratly Island	+8.8	-111.9	<input type="checkbox"/> DEL	<input type="checkbox"/>
	3A	Monaco	+44.0	-7.5	<input type="checkbox"/> DEL	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	3B6	Agalega - St Brandon	-10.4	-56.6	<input type="checkbox"/> DEL	<input type="checkbox"/>
	3B8	Mauritius	-20.3	-57.5	<input type="checkbox"/> DEL	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	3B9	Rodriguez Island	-19.78	-63.4	<input type="checkbox"/> DEL	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	3C	Equatorial Guinea	+1.8	-10.0	<input type="checkbox"/> DEL	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	3C0	Pagalu Island	+1.5	-5.6	<input type="checkbox"/> DEL	<input type="checkbox"/>

Primary Call Map Alias Map

Add, Change, or Delete Records

To add a new prefix record, scroll to the end of the database or click the right mouse button and select "Last Record". In the empty row click the left most portion in the prefix field and begin to fill out the necessary fields. You will notice that the row button to the left will change to a pencil symbol signifying that you are in edit mode. To change an existing record, scroll to the record you want to change and overtype your changes. To save your entry, move your cursor to the dialog title bar and click the right mouse button. Then click update. If you click on any other row in the database, your previous entry will be automatically saved. To delete a record, click the row button to the left of the record which will highlight the record. Then press the delete key or move your cursor to the title bar and press the right mouse key and choose delete.

Remember to save your changes!



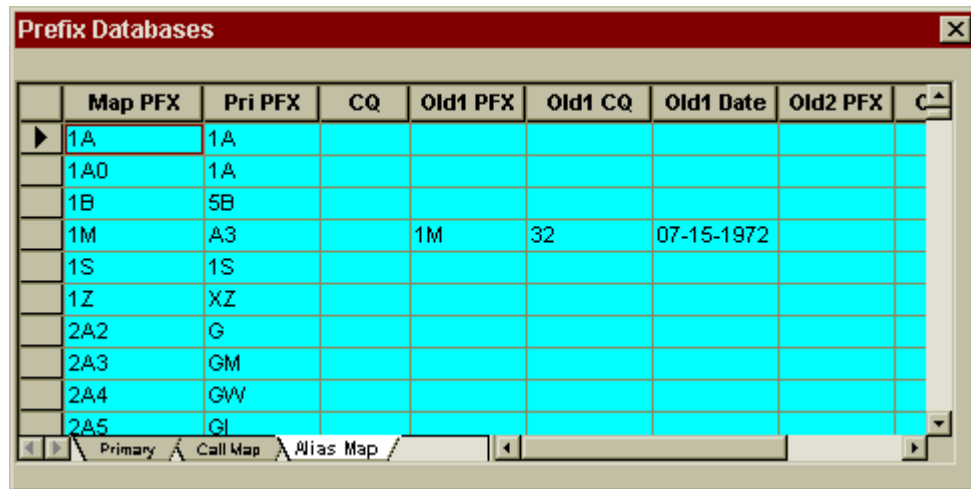
Prefix Mapping Table

DXbase contains **three related tables** that control the standard ARRL country prefix. You can add, change, or delete entries whenever you wish.

The prefix map database provides the capability to associate or map a pseudo prefix (the prefix extracted verbatim from the callsign) to a specific Primary Prefix

To use this feature, you will be required to enter a mapping prefix and a standard or primary prefix. Other fields are optional. If you do not populate the zone fields, DXbase will use the zone from the primary prefix database. Normally you will leave the zone field blank unless a country encompasses more than one zone such as Canada. In that case, you would want to enter the zone so that DXbase will know which specific zone to use rather than the Primary Prefix default for the entire country which might not always be correct.

From the application menu, choose TOOLS/DATABASE ACCESS /COUNTRY PREFIXES. Click the Alias Map tab.



	Map PFX	Pri PFX	CQ	Old1 PFX	Old1 CQ	Old1 Date	Old2 PFX	C
▶	1A	1A						
	1A0	1A						
	1B	5B						
	1M	A3		1M	32	07-15-1972		
	1S	1S						
	1Z	XZ						
	2A2	G						
	2A3	GM						
	2A4	GW						
	2A5	GI						

There are two groups of optional fields identified with a 1 or 2 in their column header titles. These are grouped to identify cases where the prefix being mapped has been used in the past to represent a different country than what it currently is. You should **always** complete the group 1 fields before using the group 2 fields. If the prefix has been used in more than two countries, group 2 should be the oldest, group 1 the previous, and the plain Prefix column the current country.

Example: If this prefix was once a DXCC country different than its current country, enter the old country prefix and zone in the Old1 PFX fields and in the Old1 DATE field enter the last date that this country was the Old1 PFX. In other words, what was the last date that this country was the Old1 PFX? If this prefix was some other country prior to what was entered as Old1 PFX, then complete the Old2 PFX fields as well.

Add, Change, or Delete Records

To add a new mapping record, scroll to the end of the database or click the right mouse button and select "Last Record. In the empty row click the left most portion in the map prefix field and begin to fill out the necessary fields. You will notice that the row button to the left will change to a pencil symbol signifying that you are in edit mode. To change an existing record, scroll to the record you want to change and overwrite your changes. To save your entry, move your cursor to the dialog title bar and click the right mouse button. Then click update, or, if you click on any other row in the database, your previous entry will be automatically saved. To delete a record,

click the row button to the left of the record which will highlight the record, then press the delete key.

Remember to save your changes!



Prefix Callsign Mapping Table

DXbase contains **three related tables** that control the standard ARRL country prefix. You can add, change, or delete entries whenever you wish.

The call map database provides the capability to associate or map a full eleven character callsign to a specific Primary Prefix. This feature should be used when it is not possible to derive the country from the callsign or when the prefix of the callsign would normally map to an incorrect prefix. If at all possible, it is more complete and efficient to use a mapping prefix whenever it can be done so in a logical manner.

To use this feature, you will be required to enter a callsign and a standard or primary prefix. Other fields are optional. If you do not populate the zone fields, DXbase will use the zone from the primary prefix database. Normally you will leave the zone field blank unless a country encompasses more than one zone such as Canada. In that case, you would want to enter the zone so that DXbase will know which specific zone to use rather than the Primary Prefix default for the entire country, which might not always be correct.

From the application menu, choose **TOOLS/DATABASE ACCESS/COUNTRY PREFIXES**. Click the Call Map tab.

Prefix Databases								
	Callsign	Prefix	CQ	ITU	Old1 PFX	Old1 CQ	Old1 ITU	Old1
▶	0S1B	I						
	3D2AM	3D2C						
	3D2AP	3D2X						
	3D2CR	3D2C						
	3D2HL	3D2C						
	3D2RJ	3D2X						
	3D2SI	3D2C						
	3D2VT	3D2C						
	3D2WV	3D2C						
Primary Call Map Alias Map								

There are two groups of optional fields identified with a 1 or 2 in their column header name. These are grouped to identify cases where the callsign being mapped has been used in the past to represent a different country than what it currently is. You should **always** complete the group 1 fields before using the group 2 fields. If the callsign has been used in more than two countries, group 2 should be the oldest, group 1 the previous, and the plain Prefix column the current country.

Example: If this callsign was once a DXCC country different than its current country, enter the old country prefix and zone in the Old1 PFX field and in the Old1 DATE field enter the date that it became the current country. In other words, what was the last date that this country was the Old1 PFX? If this callsign was some other country prior to what was entered as Old1 PFX, then complete the Old2 PFX fields as well.

Add, Change, or Delete Records

To add a new mapping record, scroll to the end of the database, and in the empty row click the left most portion in the callsign field and begin to fill out the necessary fields. You will notice that the row button to the left will change to a pencil symbol signifying that you are in edit mode. To change an existing record, scroll to the record you want to change and overwrite your changes. To save your entry, move your cursor to the dialog title bar and click the right mouse button. Then click update, or, if you click on any other row in the database, your previous entry will be automatically saved. To delete a record, click the row button to the left of the record which will highlight the record, then press the delete key.

Remember to save your changes!



Example Adding a New Prefix

The changes described below have already been made to the original prefix database shipped with DXbase. The description below is intended **ONLY** as an example of the steps that were required to add a new prefix and modify the use of some existing ones. It is provided here as a learning tool.

EXAMPLE:

Prefix modifications to accomodate the reallocation of VR to Hong Kong,

VP6 to Pitcairn Is., and removal of VP6 as alternative for Barbados, 8P.

Overview:

Assume, DXbase uses VS6 for Hong Kong, VR for Pitcairn, and VP6 is an alternate

for Barbados. The following procedures will change these so that the following

results will be achieved:

VR will become Hong Kong

VP6 will become Pitcairn

These are unusual changes and require some special steps to make the database

changes.

Assumptions:

The original Prefix database shipped with DXbase did NOT contain any callsign

mappings for VR or for VS6. If you have added any, you will need to delete

them from the callsign mapping database before continuing.

You may wish to make a note of what entries you had before deleting them.

The changes listed below may eliminate any need to have these callsign map entries in

your callsign mapping database. If after making all the following changes, DXbase

does not select the correct prefix for these callsigns, please let us know.

NOTE 1:

The steps listed below must be performed in the exact sequence listed. If you

perform any of these steps in a different order, or if you skip any step, you

may have difficulty making changes because certain internal DXbase database

validations will fail.

NOTE 2:

DXbase databases are completely independent. So, if you are using more than one

database, you should perform these changes for each database that you use.

In addition, remember that the original empty database shipped with DXbase should also be changed at your convenience in case you later need to make

a copy of it to create another database.

NOTE 3:

When you begin to make these changes, ONLY do the procedures listed. Do not deviate

and try to perform other activities such as listing statistics, running reports, etc.

Until all of the steps listed are completed, other activities will not reflect

accurate information.

Step 1:

We must add a new Primary Prefix entry in the Prefix Database for VP6 using the same data

already entered for the existing VR primary prefix.

*Open the DXbase prefix database (TOOLS/Database Access/Country Prefixes

*Select the Primary tab. Move to the end of the database (right mouse Last Entry) and

enter the following new prefix information:

Prefix = VP6

Country = Pitcairn Island

LAT = -25.1

LON = +130.1

Deleted = unchecked

Field Check = checked

Bureau = unchecked

CQ = 32

ITU = 63

Save this new entry and close the prefix databases window.

Step 2:

Modify the existing alias prefix map for VP6.

*Open the Tools/Database Access/Country Prefixes

*In the Databases Window select the Alias Map tab.

*Click in the MapPFX field and Find the existing MapPFX entry for VP6 (use right mouse).

*Change the existing VP6 entry that maps to 8P PriPFX to the following:

MapPFX = VP6

PriPFX = VP6

CQ = blank

Old1 PFX = 8P

Old1 CQ = blank

Old1 Date = June 1, 1998 (using whatever date format you have in use)

Save this change and close the prefix databases window.

Step 3:

In your QSO Log, we must change all existing Prefix entries of VR
(old Pitcairn)

to the new VP6 prefix for Pitcairn.

*Position your QSO Log to the first record and click in the
prefix field of the

first record.

*Use EDIT/REPLACE menu and find VR and Replace All with VP6.

Step 4:

We must modify existing Alias Prefix Map entries for VR in the
prefix database.

*Open TOOLS/Database Access/Country Prefixes

*In the Prefix Database window select the Alias Map tab.

*Click in the MapPFX field then Find VR (use right mouse find
feature)

*Change the following existing entries to the following:

MapPFX	PriPFX	CQ	Old1 PFX	Old1 CQ	Old1 Date
Old2 PFX	Old2 CQ	Old2 Date	ITU		

VR VR (should already be existing like this)

VR1	VR	blank	VP6	32	June 1,
1998	T30	31	Dec 31, 1979	blank	

VR2	VR	blank	3D2	32	Dec 12,
1970	blank	blank	blank	blank	

VR3 1998	T32	VR	blank 32	VP6 Dec 31, 1979	32 blank	June 1,
VR4 1998	H4	VR	blank 28	VP6 Dec 31, 1979	32 blank	June 1,
VR5 1998	A3	VR	blank 32	VP6 Dec 31, 1970	32 blank	June 1,
VR6 1998	blank	VR	blank blank	VP6 blank	32 blank	June 1,
VR8 1998	T2	VR	blank 31	VP6 Dec 31, 1978	32 blank	June 1,

(Be sure to save the changes made for the last entry above ...
VR8)

*Find the existing MapPFX VS6 and change as follows:

VS6	VR	blank	blank	blank	blank
blank	blank	blank	blank		

(NOTE: VR will still say Pitcairn but not to worry... this will
be changed later)

Step 5:

We must now adjust the Primary Prefix Table:

*In the Prefix Database window, click on the Primary tab.

*Find the existing entry VR and change it to look like this:

Prefix = VR

Country = Hong Kong

LAT = +22.3

LON = -114.3

Deleted = unchecked

Field Check = checked

Bureau = checked

CQ = 24

ITU = 44

* Save your change and close the Prefix Database Window

Step 6:

We must now initialize tables to make sure all changes so far are in sync.

*Select TOOLS/Initialize tables

Step 7:

We must change the prefix field of existing QSO records that contain VS6

to the new prefix of VR.

*In the QSO Log, position your log to the first record and click in the prefix field.

*Select EDIT menu REPLACE, Find VS6 and replace with VR, select replace ALL.

Step 8:

We can now remove the original Primary Prefix for VS6

- *Open the Prefix Database window.

- *In the Prefix Database window, select the Primary tab.

- *Find the existing entry VS6 and highlight by clicking the left most column button for VS6

- *Press the del key

Close the Prefix Database window.

Step 9:

We must now re-sync all prefix related database one more final time.

- *Select TOOLS/Initialize Tables.

This completes the entire process.

DXbase Address Related

Manager Database Overview

DXbase contains two related tables that control the selection of the manager address from the internal DXbase address database. You can add, change, or delete entries whenever you wish. One table is called the address table and it contains the manager callsigns and associated addresses. The other table is called the manager mapping table and it contains the DX station callsign and the associated manager for that DX station. It also contains a manager number field that identifies whether this is the first, second, third, etc. route for this DX station.

Both tables are used in the lookup of an address. There are a few rules that must be followed for this feature to work properly:

1. You cannot enter a manager callsign in the mapping table unless that callsign already exists in the manager address table.
2. You cannot enter duplicate manager callsigns in the manager address table.
3. You cannot delete a manager address record if there are manager mapping records existing for this manager. You must first delete all of the mappings to the manager callsign.
4. The entry made in the manager address callsign field does not have to be an actual callsign. It can be any alpha/numeric entry up to 11 characters that you wish. For example, you could have a manager address callsign of YASME. In the manager mapping table you could have an entry such as Manager = YASME, DX station = 5U7QL, and manager route number = 1.
5. You cannot have any exact duplicate records in the manager mapping table. Duplicates are defined to be an entry where the manager callsign and route number are the same as any other record in the mapping table.

Database Representation

The relationship between the two tables can be viewed as follows:

MANAGER		MAPPING	
Manager		DX	Mgr Route
W3HNC		VP9AD	W3HNC
1			

		EP2AH	W3HNC	
1				
		VU2ZAP	W3HNC	
1				
ZL1AMO		ZL1AMO		
ZL1AMO	1			
		ZL8AMO	ZL1AMO	
1				
		ZK2RW	ZL1AMO	
1				
YASME		5U7QL	YASME	1
		FO0XX	YASME	1
		FO0XX	W3HNC	
2				

In the example above, notice that only one entry is made in the manager table for each manager. In the mapping table, many DX stations use the same manager so we map each DX station to the same manager. Notice that DX station FO0XX has two different routes, one via YASME, and a second via W3HNC.

Adding/changing entries

1. Suppose a new DX station with a callsign of 5U7AG used W3HNC for his manager. Since W3HNC already exists in the manager address table, to add 5U7AG to DXbase, all we need do is **add** an entry to the mapping table. Manager = W3HNC, DX station = 5U7AG, Route Number = 1 (assuming this is the first route for this DX station).
2. Suppose you hear AA4LU and wanted to enter his address so that DXbase would have it in the database. Since AA4LU does not exist in the manager address database, we first have **to add the manager address** and then **add the mapping entry**. In this example, we would map AA4LU to itself, Manager = AA4LU, DX station = AA4LU, Route Number = 1.
3. Suppose the address for ZL1AMO changed. To update the address information you would locate the address record for ZL1AMO, overtype with the new address, and save the change.
4. Suppose W3HNC is no longer the manager for EP2AH. To update this change you would locate the mapping record for the DX station EP2AH that is mapped to W3HNC and delete it.
5. Suppose YASME QSL service is discontinued. To remove YASME from the database, you would first locate all of the mapping entries for YASME and delete each one, then you would locate the manager address record for YASME and delete it.

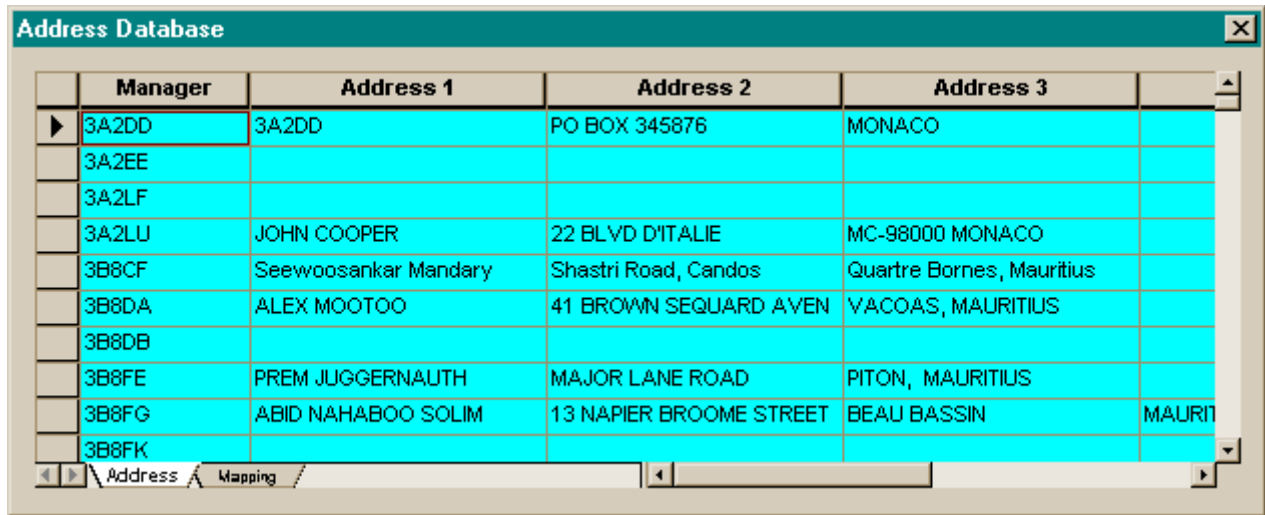


Manager Address Table



The manager address table contains the manager callsign and the address information for this manager. Duplicate manager callsigns are not permitted in this database.

From the application menu, choose TOOLS/Database/Manager.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Address Database" with a table containing manager information. The table has columns for Manager, Address 1, Address 2, and Address 3. The data is as follows:

Manager	Address 1	Address 2	Address 3
3A2DD	3A2DD	PO BOX 345876	MONACO
3A2EE			
3A2LF			
3A2LU	JOHN COOPER	22 BLVD D'ITALIE	MC-98000 MONACO
3B8CF	Seewoosankar Mandary	Shastri Road, Candos	Quatre Bornes, Mauritius
3B8DA	ALEX MOOTOO	41 BROWN SEQUARD AVEN	VACOAS, MAURITIUS
3B8DB			
3B8FE	PREM JUGGERNAUTH	MAJOR LANE ROAD	PITON, MAURITIUS
3B8FG	ABID NAHABOO SOLIM	13 NAPIER BROOME STREET	BEAU BASSIN
3B8FK			

Add, Change, or Delete Records

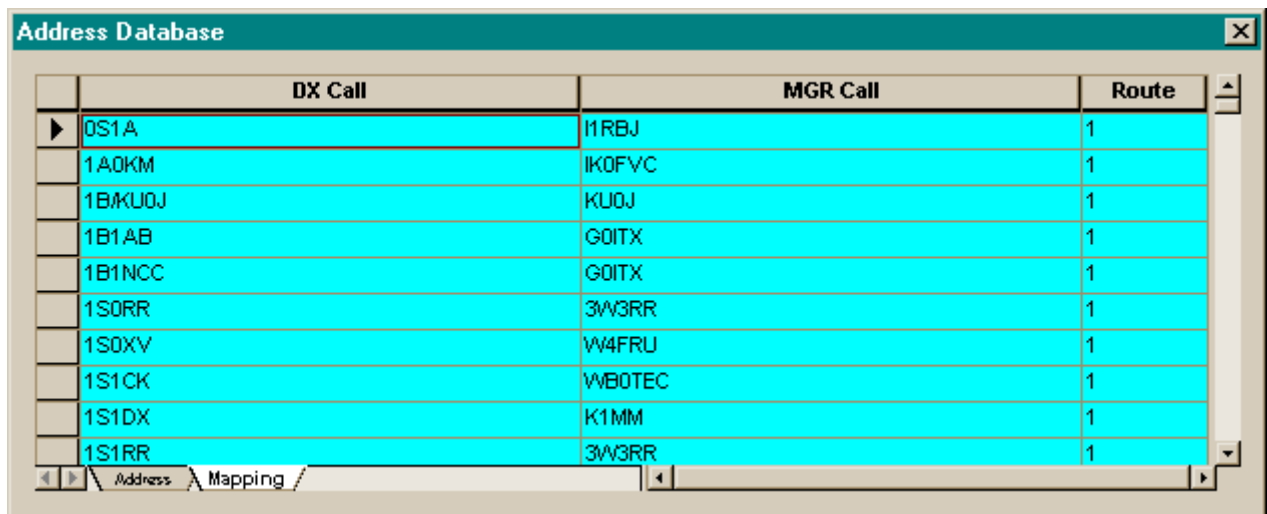
To add a new address record, scroll to the end of the database or click the right mouse button and select Last Record. In the empty row click the left most portion in the address field and begin to fill out the necessary fields. You will notice that the row button to the left will change to a pencil symbol signifying that you are in edit mode. To change an existing record, scroll to the record you want to change and overwrite your changes. To save your entry, click the right mouse button and then click update, or, if you click on any other row in the database, your previous entry will be automatically saved. To delete a record, click the row button to the left of the record which will highlight the entire record, then press the delete key.



Manager Mapping Table

The manager mapping table provides the association between the DX station and the Manager callsign. Duplicate DX station callsign entries are not permitted; however you can have many different DX stations map to the same manager.

From the application menu, choose TOOLS/DATABASE/Manager. Click the Mapping tab.



	DX Call	MGR Call	Route
▶	0S1A	11RBJ	1
	1A0KM	1K0FVC	1
	1B/KU0J	KU0J	1
	1B1AB	G0ITX	1
	1B1NCC	G0ITX	1
	1S0RR	3W3RR	1
	1S0XV	W4FRU	1
	1S1CK	WB0TEC	1
	1S1DX	K1MM	1
	1S1RR	3W3RR	1

Add, Change, or Delete Records

To add a new mapping record, scroll to the end of the database or click the right mouse button and select “Last Record. In the empty row click the left most portion in the map prefix field and begin to fill out the necessary fields. You will notice that the row button to the left will change to a pencil symbol signifying that you are in edit mode. To change an existing record, scroll to the record you want to change and overtype your changes. To save your entry, move your cursor to the dialog title bar and click the right mouse button. Then click update, or, if you click on any other row in the database, your previous entry will be automatically saved. To delete a record, click the row button to the left of the record which will highlight the record, then press the delete key.



Microsoft Access

Using Microsoft Access

Access 97

DXbase uses the Microsoft Access 97 database format and the Windows32 DAO Jet Database Engine. As a result, if you use Microsoft Access 97, it is possible for you to load the DXbase database into that program. BE CAREFUL using other versions of Microsoft Access because later versions which might become available may not be compatible with the Access 97 database format and if you load your database and save it the format may be changed and thus make DXbase unusable.

Access 2000

When opening a DXbase database with Access 2000, a window pops up asking if you wish to “Convert or to “Open a database. You can “Open a DXbase database and even change the data. ***BUT, do NOT “Convert the database. If you do, it will no longer be usable in DXbase.***

We have made no effort to restrict access to the DXbase database. This can be a blessing and a curse! Do not attempt to modify your database using Microsoft Access unless you are highly skilled in database concepts and in using Access. This is clearly NOT for beginners and it would be very easy for you to destroy the ability to use DXbase if you make mistakes directly in the database. Scientific Solutions does not provide tech support for this activity and we will not consider any merchandise returns associated with database problems that develop as a result of changes you may make outside DXbase.

We strongly recommend that you never load your DXbase database directly. Make a copy of your DXbase database under some other name and load the copy into the other program. This way even if you make a mistake, you have not injured your DXbase database. After you been able to test your changes, then you can replace your DXbase database with the changed version.

WARNING: If you load the DXbase database in any other program outside of DXbase, it is possible for you to permanently damage, beyond repair, the ability to use DXbase for Windows if you make erroneous changes to the database. If you are careful, you have a powerful tool at your disposal for making global changes to the DXbase database. This should be left ONLY to the experienced user of both Microsoft Access and DXbase for Windows. Scientific Solutions, Inc. does not offer any support in attempting to repair a damaged database which was changed outside of DXbase and we will be unable to offer any assistance in analyzing what errors you might have made.

Do not change ANY database design parameters. If you do, DXbase will be unusable. This includes all design parameters such as indices, field widths, field order, field types, default field values, adding queries and reports, etc.

All date fields are in the format YYYYMMDD, and the time field is HHMM. Most of the fields in the QSO Table of the database are self-explanatory. However, a couple are not and here is a cross reference:

Band – Uses a numeric zero based index value based on the order of appearance in the drop down combobox for band in the QSO log.

Mode – Uses a numeric zero based index value based on the order of appearance in the drop down combobox for mode in the QSO log.

QSL Via – Uses a numeric zero based index value based on the order of appearance in the drop down combobox for the QSL Via in the QSO log.

The AWARD, CREDIT, and CATEGORY fields are bit encoded integers. Each bit represents a value. You should default these fields to a zero if you are adding entries.

Initialize Tables

If you add or change any database entries such as prefixes, QSOs, IOTAs, etc. from outside of DXbase, you will need to invoke the **Initialize Tables** feature of DXbase in order to insure that your statistical information is correct. If you prefer, you could manually make adjustments to **statistical totals** directly in the database; however, since this is fairly complex and very tedious, we recommend letting DXbase do this for you.



Labels and QSL Cards

Label Process Overview

DXbase provides the most powerful label features on the market. The process from start to finish is described here at the “high level. Further details about each step of the process are described in more detail in the other sections of the help file. NOTE: The methodology for printing a QSO label versus a QSL card is identical and therefore we do not make any distinction between the two. They operate identically. The fact that a label is printed rather than a QSL card is controlled entirely by the design of the label project file that is selected.

Printing labels or QSL cards is a multi-step process:

1. First, you store the label data into the pending label database

2. Second, you decide what type of a label or QSL card you want to use. There are many samples already available for you to use as is, or you can choose to design your own.
3. Third, you print the labels or QSL cards.

Populating Label Data to be printed

While using DXbase, you will store both QSO and Address label information in the pending label database. This process saves label information into a pending label database for Address and QSO labels but does not actually print the labels. You do this in several ways:

1. Clicking the Address ICON that saves the address information displayed in the QSL Info window
2. Clicking the QSO label ICON which saves QSO label information
3. Using the DXbase Wizard module
4. Using the right mouse menu choice in the Previous QSO window

Viewing Pending Label Data

You can view pending label data by selecting TOOLS/DATABASE/LABELS. You will see two tabs. One for pending address labels and the other for QSO pending labels. Click the tab you wish to view. Once displayed, you will see all pending labels. You can edit the entries, delete entries, and so forth.

Printing Pending Labels

To print pending labels, select OUTPUT | User Designed Labels from the main menu. You will be asked for the type of label or QSL card you wish to print. Select the appropriate button. Also, if you have selected QSO labels or QSL cards, you MUST also enter the maximum number of QSOs per label or card that you intend to have. You base this decision on the actual label or QSL card project that you will use. So, for example, if you plan to use a QSO label project that was designed to support only one QSO per label, then you must enter a one when asked. If you plan to use a QSL card design that was designed to support up to three QSOs per label, then enter 3, and so forth. If you enter a value for the number of QSOs per label or card, but you then choose a label or QSL project that does not support this number, you will receive errors when you try to print. The next step is to select the label or QSL project that you want to use. A large number of predesigned projects were installed with DXbase. Most of these can be used as is without any user modification. Last, you select where you want your labels or cards printed. It is best to select Preview in the Export Media box. This way you can see the image on your screen and then print to the printer by clicking the printer ICON that will appear on the screen display.

Empty Pending Label Databases

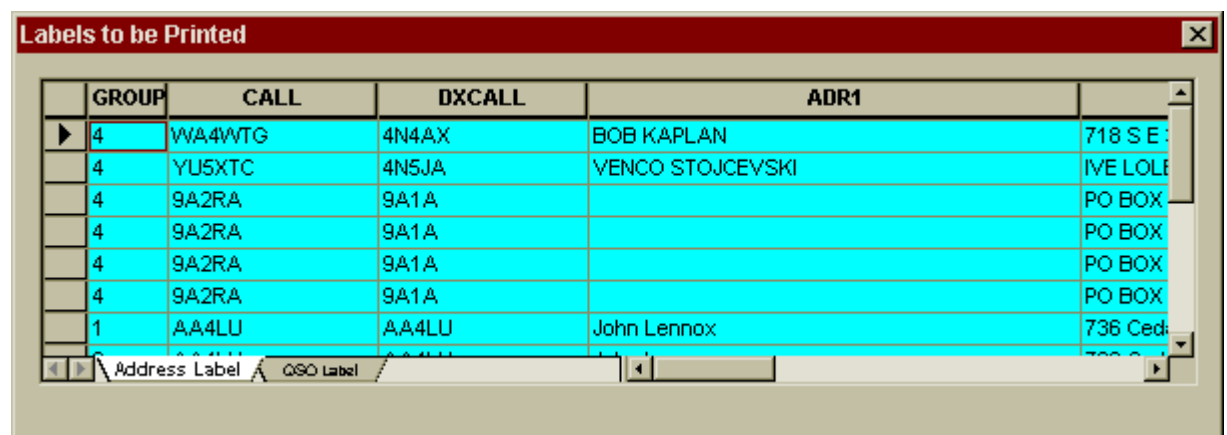
After you have printed labels and you are satisfied that they are printed correctly, you will want to erase the pending labels data from the pending label database so that you are ready to begin accumulating a new set of label records for the next time you print labels. CAUTION: Before you empty the label databases, be sure you have printed the Address/QSO cross reference report if

you will need to match up address labels with the QSO labels. After you empty the databases, this report will not be available.

Address Labels

Producing labels in DXbase is a two step process. First, you save the label information to be printed. Second, you actually print all of the stored labels.

Adding labels to be printed



There are several ways to store an address label:

1. Display the address to be stored as a label in the QSL Info window. To find an address in the **internal DXbase address database** simply type the callsign into the DX callsign field and click the Find ICON on the toolbar. You can also just press the return key with your cursor in the DX call or Manager field in the QSL Info Window. Or, to find an address contained in a third party CD address database, type the callsign into the callsign field of the manager window and from the application menu choose Record/CD-ROM Lookup. Or, press the enter key with your cursor in the Manager field. If both an address from the DXbase database and from the CDROM are displayed at the same time, you must select which address you want to use on your address label by selecting either the DXbase or the CDROM button in the QSL Info window. Once an address is displayed, click the Address Label ICON on the toolbar. This is the ICON that looks like a miniature yellow envelope. Or, just click the save ICON that looks like a miniature diskette but make sure before you click this ICON that the QSL Info window has the focus (in other words, your cursor is in the QSL Info window somewhere).
2. Choose from the application menu Tools/Database Access/Labels and select the Address label tab. Scroll to the end of the file and manually type any label information you wish. The fields are not validated. If you manually add a label record, you MUST actually save it. You can do this by clicking on another label record that will cause the previously entered record to be automatically saved. Or, you can click on the title bar of the Pending Label Dialog Box with the right mouse button and choose Update.

3. Use the **Selection Wizard** to automatically add Address Label information based on QSO records that are selected.

Deleting Labels

You can delete a specific pending label. From the application menu choose Tools/Database Access/Labels. Click the Address tab and locate the label record you wish to delete. Click on the left Row button for the record that will cause the record to be highlighted and press the delete key. If you prefer, you can click the title bar of the dialog box with the right mouse button and choose delete rather than using the delete key. You can also **delete pending labels in bulk**.

Editing Existing Labels

Existing label records may be modified. From the application menu choose Tools/Database Access/Labels. Click the Address tab and locate the record to be modified. Overtyping existing information with the new information. To save your changes, click the title bar of the dialog box with the right mouse button and select Update.

QSO Pending Label Database

Producing labels in DXbase is a two step process. First, you save the label information to be used. Second, you actually print all of the stored labels.

Adding labels to be printed

There are several ways to store QSO label information for future printing:

1. Click on any QSO record and then click the QSO label ICON located on the toolbar. Label information for the QSO record that was last clicked will be stored in a pending label file. In addition to storing QSO label information, if **user options** are set, the QSL Sent field of the QSO record will be populated with the current date and the QSO record will be automatically saved to the pending label database. If a date already exists in the QSL Sent field, it will be over written with the current date. If you made any other changes to the current QSO record, those changes will also be saved to the QSO database.
2. To enter label info directly to the pending QSO label database, choose from the application menu Tools/Labels/Pending Labels and select the QSO label tab. Scroll to the end of the file and manually type any label information you wish. The fields are not validated. This would be a useful approach for storing label information for SWL replies. If you manually add a label record, you **MUST** actually save it. You can do this by clicking on another label record which will cause the previously entered record to be automatically saved. Or, you can click on the title bar of the Pending Label Dialog Box with the right mouse button and choose Update.
3. Use the **Selection Wizard** to automatically populate the Pending QSO and Address Label database based on criteria that you set.
4. From the **Previous QSO** dialog, use the right mouse button to store a QSO label for the currently selected record. Or, use the buttons available in the Previous QSO screen.

Labels to be Printed

	CALL	DATE	TIME	MHZ	RSTS	MODE	SIGN	CFM	ROUTE	GROUP	HL
▶	AA4LU	21 JAN 1999	2321	1240	59	USB	73 de Jack	TNX	0	1	5194
	ZL9CI	17 JAN 1999	2311	28	599	CW	73 de Jack	TNX	0	1	5192
*											

There are two places where you can change the default Group Value:

1. **In User Options under the Label Tab.** These values will be used for all QSO and Address labels that are stored except for those that are created in the DXbase Wizard.
2. **In the DXbase Wizard,** there is a field called Override User Option Group where you can specify a unique value that you want used for the labels that you produce in the Wizard. You can overtype this value with any alpha/numeric character you want. This will cause all labels generated with the Wizard to carry this value. Each time you access the Wizard, the default value will be populated from User Options, so you will need to overtype this field if you want a different value used.

Label Definitions

Label definitions are the predefined dimensions and page layout for a label type, such as Avery 5160, etc. DXbase is shipped with a large number of various label definitions that are contained in the file cmbtl801.inf that is located in your primary DXbase directory. When you create a new Label Project, you enter the name of the label project you want to create. The name can be any eight-character filename. The choices for label selection are based upon the entries that are contained in this .INF file.

In the event that you intend to use a label type that is not one of the available selections, you can still use your label type as follows:

You could select a User Defined label type and enter the dimensions at the time you are creating your Label Project. The dimensions of the label that you define are stored with the label project, but in this method, the dimensions are not added to the .INF file, therefore, your label type will still not be available the next time you create a brand new label project which will use this same label type.

Or,

You could add the Label Type that you intend to use to the .INF file. This method will actually add a new definition to the .INF file thereby making this label type available whenever you create a new label project in the future. To add a label definition to the .INF file, follow these procedures:

Adding Label Definitions

The file "Cmbtl901.inf" contains information about the various label sizes and formats supported by the DXbase label and report design module. The file has many common Avery and other brand European and American labels already defined. If you want to add more commercial or custom label

sizes, you must edit the file and manually add the entries. The file is an ascii text file and must be saved

as such with no word processor formatting. The easiest way to assure this is to use Window's Notepad

text editor as it saves all files in the correct format. Notepad, however, adds it's default ".txt" extension, to

have it add the extension ".inf" you should save the file using the "Save as" option and type in the filename

enclosed in quotes. That will force Notepad to use the extension you typed in without appending ".txt".

Each entry in the .inf file consist of a label name followed by an equal sign followed by eight fields that

tell the program how the label is formatted. The fields are listed below.

Field 1 - Label width in inches x 25400

Field 2 - Label height in inches x 25400

Field 3 - Horizontal distance between labels x 25400 (X-Distance)

Field 4 - Vertical distance between labels x 25400 (Y-Distance)

Field 5 - Number of labels across the sheet

Field 6 - Number of labels down the sheet

Field 7 - Side margin x 25400

Field 8 - Top margin x 25400

Example: I added the Avery 5160 label resulting in the following entry:

Avery 5160 Address =66802,25400,3048,0,3,10,4826,12700

Field 1 - 2.63 inches wide x 25400 = 66802

Field 2 - 1.0 inch high x 25400 = 25400

Field 3 - .12 inch between labels horizontally x 25400 = 3048

Field 4 - 0 inch vertically between labels x 25400 = 0

Field 5 - 3 labels across

Field 6 - 10 labels down

Field 7 - .19 side margin of the page x 25400 = 4826

Field 8 - .5 inch top page margin x 25400 = 12700

Measurements must be in decimal inches.

If you use the dimensions from Microsoft Word for the labels, the distance between labels must be computed

by subtracting the Label width from the Horizontal pitch to get Field 3 and subtracting the Label height from the

Vertical pitch to get Field 4.

These label descriptions are only used to design a new QSL or address label.

Designing a new Label Project

The information below walks you from start to finish through the process of making a new label project. For an example of a more complex label design that includes graphics, conditional formula use, and some other features, see the complex example.

Assumptions

We want to make a label project to support an Avery 4145 tractor feed type label. These are a single label across and continuous feed. The label is 3.5 x 15/16 in size. We have already obtained the detailed label size information either from the fact sheets that came in the label package or from some other source. We want the label to support three QSOs on a single label.

Procedure

- ▶ Start DXbase
- ▶ Set DXbase User Options for 3 QSOs per label.
- ▶ From the main menu, select TOOLS/Design Labels
- ▶ Click the multiple QSO per label radio button
- ▶ Click the QSO label type radio button

- ▶ Click OK
- ▶ Highlight the *.lbl in the File name box and type in a filename MYTEST.LBL
- ▶ Click OK
- ▶ Click Next
- ▶ Select Printer page Independent
- ▶ Click the Choice button and select the printer to be used, set Portrait, and set Paper to 8.5 x 11 letter, source tractor
- ▶ Click Next
- ▶ Select User Defined and click Next
- ▶ In Page Offset enter .5 horizontal and .02 vertical
- ▶ In Size fields enter 3.5 horizontal and .93 vertical
- ▶ In distance fields enter 0 horizontal and .07 vertical
- ▶ In Numbers fields enter 1 horizontal and 11 vertical
- ▶ Click Finish

This completes the label size specifications. Now you can place objects onto the label such as call field, date, time, and so forth. When finished, save your work.

To test the results, select OUTPUT/User Designed Labels, select Multiple QSOs per label and QSO label type, and select your project name. Try it out. If the printing is not exactly aligned, you can go back to the label designer and adjust the label sizes such as the vertical Page offset, vertical Size field. (these two values must total 1).

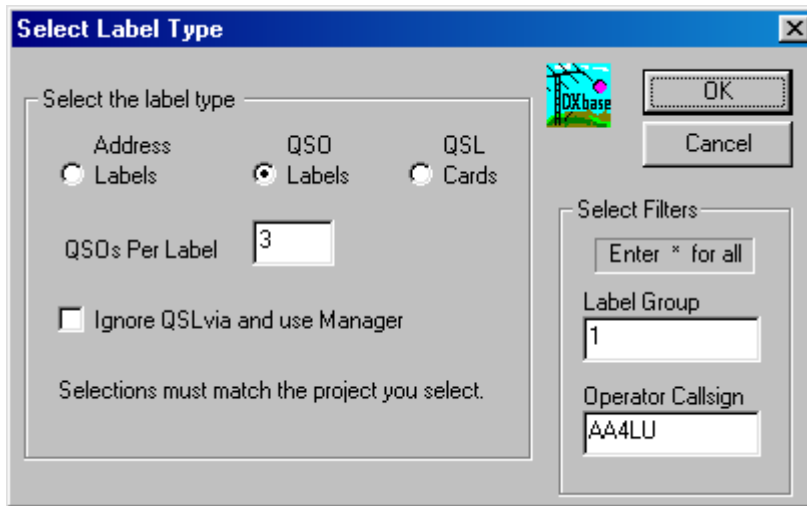
In this example, the .02 sets the start point on the page. The .93 is the height of the label. The .07 is the gap between labels. The label project produced by the above is included in your label directory under the project name 4145-3Q.

In addition to the above example, a number of sample label projects were installed with DXbase. You can try using any of these as templates to modify for your own purposes. We recommend that if you modify the samples, that you use Windows explorer to make copies of them and assign a unique name. This will insure that they are not deleted in the event that DXbase must be uninstalled for any reason. When renaming label projects, be ware that there are several files involved which have the same base filename but have different file name extensions. Be sure to rename all of them and keep the original file name extensions.

The designer module of DXbase is very powerful. It is intended for both the average user and the very serious graphical design types. We cannot offer individual tech support in helping to design individual label projects. Your best approach is to read the documentation and experiment to gain familiarity with the options available and their effect on your finish product.

Selecting a Label Project

Selecting a label project is a two-step process. DXbase must know which type of label you want to use because it uses this information in order to initialize all the appropriate database fields that will be made available to you. From the TOOLS menu, select either Design labels or Print Labels.



Select the options that you want from the Select Label Type dialog box. There are three choices:

1. Address labels – choose this when you wish to work with address labels.
2. QSO labels-choose this when you wish to work with QSO labels.
3. QSL cards-choose this when you wish to work with an entire QSL card.

Select Label Groups

This field is used to identify the label groups that you want to have printed. If you have only used the default value for the labels that are pending, then there is no need to change this field. However, if you have used different values from time to time AND you have pending label records with a variety of different group values, you can use this field to specify which groups you want included. You can specify more than one group. For example, lets assume you have 100 pending labels as follows:

30 have a group value of 1

30 have a group value of 2

30 have a group value of 3

10 have a group value of A

Let's assume you want to print labels in group 1 and 2, but you do not want those in group 3 and A included. To accomplish this, you would enter 12 in the Select Label Groups field. If you only wanted group A, then you would enter an A. If you wanted group A and group 3, then you would enter A3. And so forth.

In the same example, let's assume you wanted all groups included, then you would enter an asterisk character (the shift 8 key on most keyboards (*). This special character tells DXbase to ignore the group field and include all pending labels. NOTE: This field is not used when you are selecting the Label Designer module. It is only used when you are printing labels.

Operator Callsign

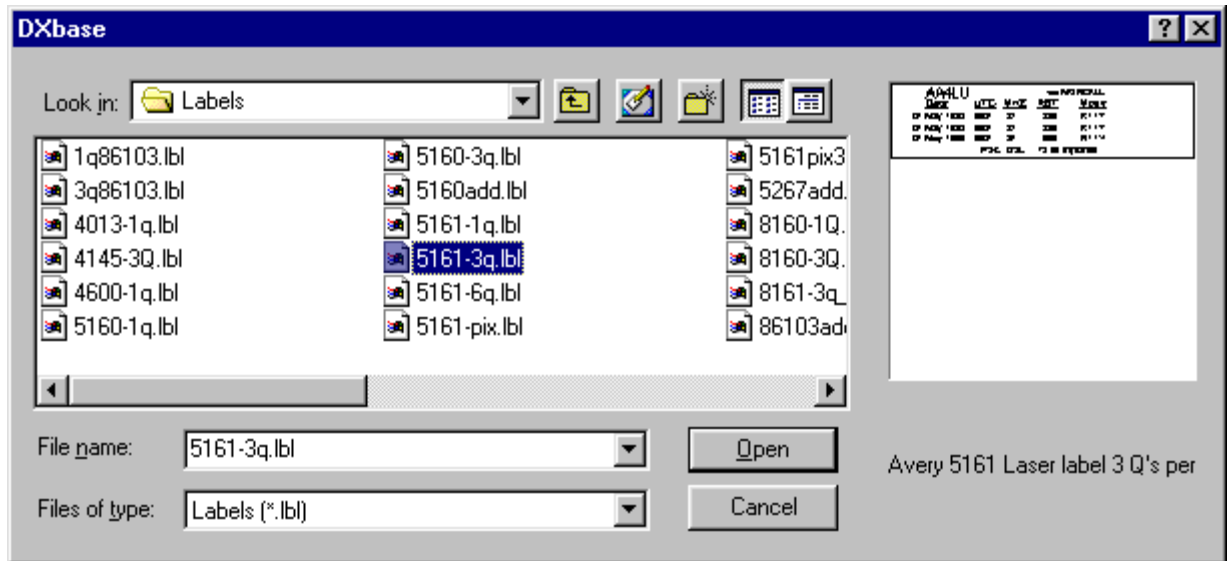
Specify the operator callsign that you want to print labels for. Since DXbase allows you to store QSOs for multiple callsigns, you may find that you only want to print labels for a particular operator callsign when you have label records stored for more than just this operator callsign. This option allows you to filter the labels that are printed so that only labels for a specific operator callsign will be selected. The operator callsign selected must be one of the callsigns that are included in your DXbase registration.

Ignore QSLvia and Use Manager

This feature allows you to have DXbase lookup a QSL manager and pass this information to your label even though the QSL via field for this record in your log might be marked as via Bureau, Direct, or Direct\$. Some users may wish to suppress a manager from appearing on their label when the QSLvia in the log is set to bureau. Still others may wish to use a manager regardless of the log. This option allows the software to operate either way.

Number of QSOs per label

If you are selecting QSO labels or QSL cards, enter the number of QSOs per label or card that you wish to use. **CAUTION:** The number you enter here **MUST** agree with the type of label or card project you select when asked for the name of the label project you want to use. (This dialog window will appear after you make your selections here). For example, if you enter 2 for the number of QSOs on a QSO label or QSL card, then you must remember to select a label project that was specifically designed for 2 QSOs; otherwise, you may receive "error while printing message when you attempt to open the label designer or print labels. The Number of QSOs per label field is ignored if you have selected Address labels.

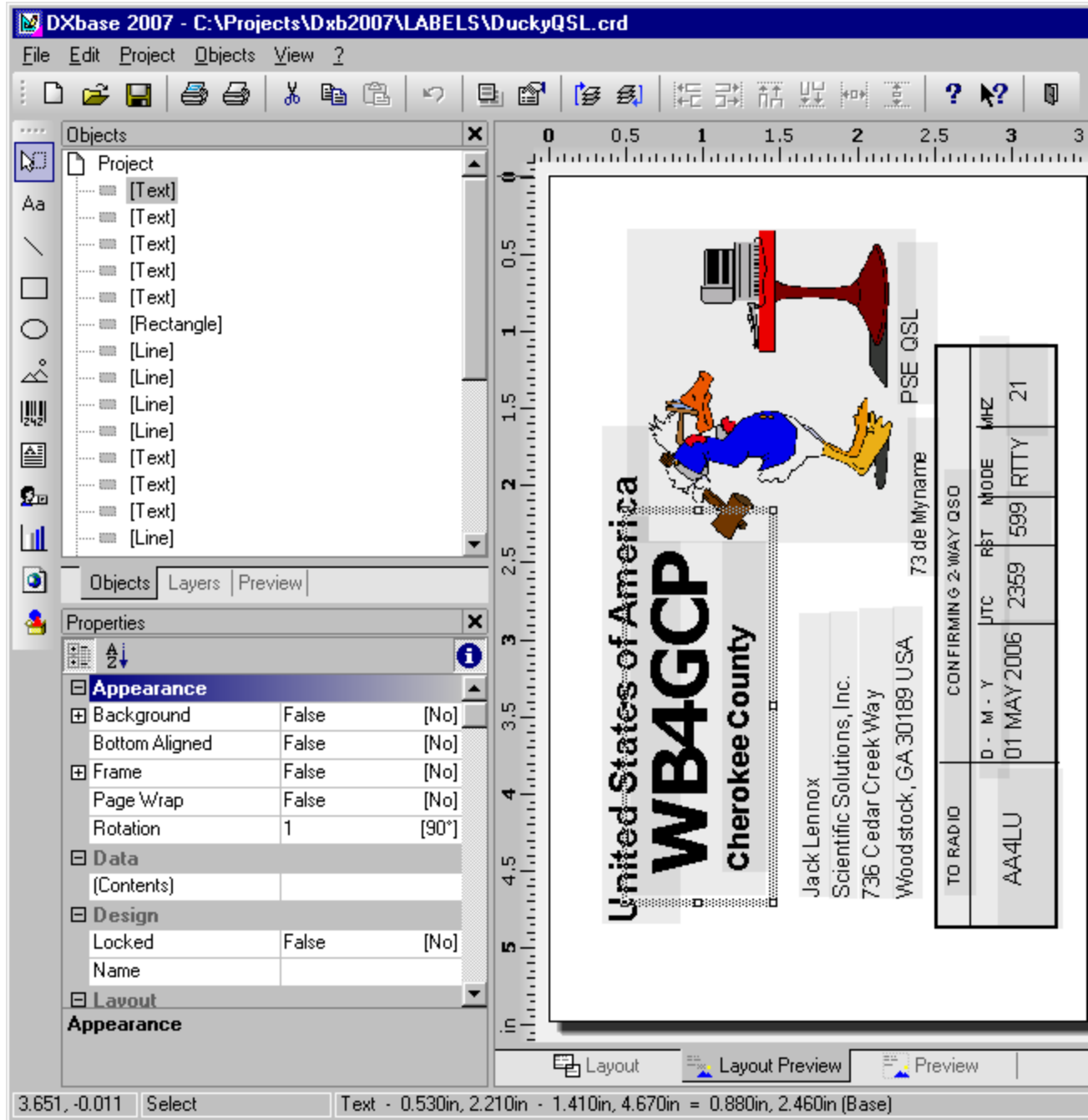


Next, you will be asked to select the label project name that is to be used. If you wish to select an existing label project, simply make the selection. Be careful that you select the right type of label project. For example, if you previously indicated that this was to be a QSO label, then be sure to pick a QSO label project. But, you must also be sure you pick the QSO label that represents either single or multiple QSOs depending on which option you selected earlier. If you want to design a new label rather than use an existing one, overwrite the base Filename field with a new name. Leave the extension preceded by the dot. Be “logical in your choice of a filename. If you are designing a new address label, put some intelligence into the choice of filename so that you will easily recognize what kind of a label project this filename represents. Similarly, make distinctions in QSO labels between single QSO and multiple QSO formats.

Label Designer Interface

The Label Designer in DXbase provides a WYSIWYG graphical interface which allows you to place text, database fields, pictures, and so forth (called objects) onto the drawing surface and position them where you want. A detailed help system is provided within the Design Module and is available when you activate this module. Here we will only provide the highlights. For in depth detail, consult the help available after the Designer module is activated.

The first step is to select the Design Label option from the TOOLS menu. Or you can use the Label Design icon. You will first be asked to select the type of label. Next you will be asked to select the label filename.



On the left side of the screen, you have tools that are selected depending on what type of object you want to place on the workspace. Each of these has tool tips so you can simply position your cursor on the button to see what it does. Options include:

Fixed Text

Lines

Rectangles

Spheres

Rich Text

Pictures

The small window entitled Preview displays an example sheet of the label exactly as it will appear. The values for the various fields are simply example text. When you actually print labels, your data will be used. You can position your cursor over the preview window and click to see the example sheet in full screen size.

Printing Label Projects

Preliminary steps before you attempt to print labels to a printer.

DXbase uses the default printer type that was specified at the time you created your label project. If you select one of the default label projects that were shipped with DXbase, the default printer in your Windows configuration will be used. If you intend to use a different printer for labels, you must set this configuration and make it the default Windows printer before you print labels or you can set this at the time you create your own label project.

There are several types of label projects that are used in DXbase:

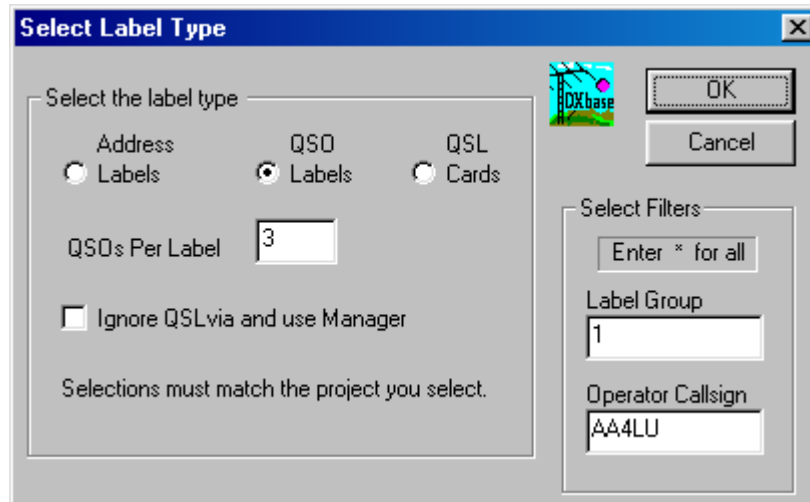
1. Single QSO on a label
2. Multiple QSO on a label
3. Single QSO on a QSL card
4. Multiple QSOs on a QSL card
5. Address label

Be careful that you select the correct label project for the type of label and options that you want to print.

Naming Conventions for Label Project Filenames

- ▶ Address label formats use the label designation followed by the letter A, e.g. 5160A
- ▶ Single QSO label formats use the label designation followed by the letter Q, e.g. 5160Q
- ▶ Multiple QSO label formats identify multi, label designation, e.g. MULT5160.

1. To print labels previously stored in DXbase, select from the application menu OUTPUT/User Designed Labels.
2. In the box that appears, choose Address label, QSO label, or QSL Card.
3. Enter the group(s) that you want to have included.



For an explanation about groups, Follow the steps for [Selecting a Label Project](#) .



The labels to be printed will be displayed in WYSIWYG configuration. You can click the printer button to send the labels to the printer. Make sure that your printer is turned on and ready for operation. DXbase allows you to print only the current page, or you can print the entire label report. If you have configured Windows Messaging on your computer, you can send the label report to Windows Messaging. The Magnifying glass ICON allows you to zoom in and out.



AA4LU confirms QSO with:					AA4LU confirms QSO with:					AA4LU confirms QSO with:				
3XA8DX					9G5VJ					AA4LU Via DXBASE				
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode
12 DEC 97	1851	14	500	CW	20 NOV 97	1536	28	500	CW	22 JAN 98	2351	432	500	CW
				PS E					PS E					PS E
73 de Jack					73 de Jack					73 de Jack				
AA4LU confirms QSO with:					AA4LU confirms QSO with:					AA4LU confirms QSO with:				
FS5PL					TT37Y					V47KP				
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode
20 NOV 97	1516	28	500	CW	20 NOV 97	1905	28	500	CW	20 NOV 97	1456	28	500	CW
				PS E					PS E					PS E
73 de Jack					73 de Jack					73 de Jack				
AA4LU confirms QSO with:														
VP5JM														
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode										
14 DEC 97	1640	28	50	USB										
				PS E										
73 de Jack														

Matching QSO and Address Labels

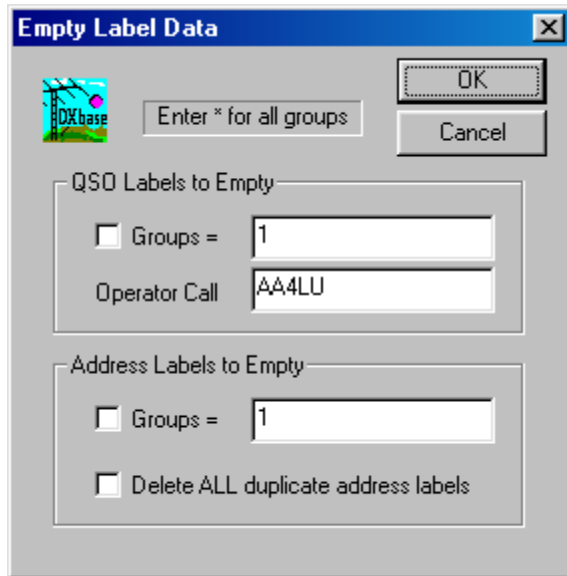
If you have completed printing both a QSO label project and an Address label project, you may want to match up the address labels with the QSO labels. DXbase provides a standard report that will automatically match address labels with the QSO labels.

This report should be generated before you empty the label databases otherwise the data will be gone. To create this report, choose OUTPUT/Standard Reports and select the ADRXRF report.

a dxrf.rpt			
1 of 1+ Total: 23 100% 23 of 23			
Label Cross Reference Listing		15:07	February 8, 1998
QSO CALL	MGR CALL	PARTIAL ADDRESS EXTRACT	PRIORITY
4N4AX	WA4WTG	BOB KAPLAN 718 S E 3RD LANE	False
5V7RC	OZ1LLC	A K HYMOELLER NORDMARKSVEJ 20	False
9A1A	9A2RA	PO BOX 653	False
9H3JR	DJ0QJ		False
9K2ZZ	W8CNL	Raymond H. McClure 674 Crestlyn Drive	False
9M2AX	JA6FBQ		False
9V1YC	AA5BT	Derek Wills 4002 Amy Cir	False
A61AC	ON7LX	CARINE RAMON ZEEDIJKWEG 3	False
C21NI	K0HGW	John Strain	False

Deleting Pending Labels

DXbase provides a utility function that allows you to delete pending labels. From the main menu, choose OUTPUT/Empty Labels.



Place a check beside each type of label that you want to delete.

Enter the **label groups** that you want to delete for each category. Options include the following:

1. To delete all labels in a category, place an asteris (*) character in the Groups = field.
2. To delete a specific group in a category, enter the group ID character. The field is initially populated with the default group value contained in User Options.
3. To delete multiple groups, but not all groups, enter each group ID in the field. For example to delete group 1 and group 2, you would enter 12 in the Groups = field.
4. Enter the operator callsign for the labels that you want to delete.

After making your selections, click OK and all pending labels will be deleted according to the options you selected.

Return Address Labels

DXbase provides a convenient method for creating your own return address labels.

From the main menu, select RECORD/Return Address Labels.

Save Return Address Labels

DXbase

Number of Labels: Group

Name

ADR1

ADR2

ADR3

ADR4

OK Cancel

This window will be auto populated with information from user options, personal data, found in the DXCC Settings module. You can overtype any of the fields and DXbase will use that information without modifying user option settings.

1. Enter the number of labels you want created.
2. Enter the group ID to be used. The default "R means that when your return address labels are created, they will have a group ID of "R when stored into the pending address label database. This allows you to print your return address labels without having to also print other pending address labels. To do this, you would simply specify the group ID of "R when selecting the labels to be printed. We recommend that you use the default.
3. Overtyping any of the address information that you want changed for purposes of the label information that will be stored. Changes made here do NOT effect or change your Personal Data. The changes you may make here are discarded after the labels have been saved.
4. Click OK.

DXbase will automatically add these labels to the Pending Address Label database. You can print these labels by selecting the Print User Defined Labels ICON.

Graphics Images

For your convenience, a small number of graphics images (.jpg) were installed in a directory called Images which is a sub directory in your DXbase folder. You can add your own graphics images to this directory as a convenient place to keep all images associated with DXbase labels and lists.

When placing a Picture Image on a label, card, or list, you would select the DXbase Image directory for the location of the image. (assuming you placed the images there or else you are using one of the defaults provided).

Sharing Label Projects

DXbase makes it relatively easy to share label projects with other DXbase users. Since most of the data contained on the label comes directly from your database at the time the label is printed, the label design itself is not user specific. The exception to this might be in the case where you have added some fixed text lines on your label design. Nevertheless, it would be a minor change for someone to modify that text to suit his/her own needs.

When you create a label project, DXbase stores data in several files which have the same base name as the label project name that you assigned, but the file extensions are different. For example:

Suppose you created a label project called AA4LUMUL

Perhaps this is a label project for printing multiple QSOs on a label. DXbase will create several files on your hard drive using this base name of "AA4LUMUL with file extensions such as .LBL and LBV, etc...

The intelligence of the label design can be shared with others simply by sending them two files. In this example:

AA4LUMUL.LBL

AA4LUMUL.LBV

If you have designed labels or QSL cards using the QSL card type, the following files should be distributed:

Ducky.crd

Ducky.crp

Ducky.crv

Simply send these files and tell others to copy them into their label directory and that's all there is to it. They can print directly using your project without any modifications, or they can load your label projects into the label designer and make whatever modifications they want. If you have

placed any graphics images such as .JPG images on your label design, you must also send these .JPG image files as well.

NOTE: You may see some other files with the same base name but with file extensions different than what we mention above. Do NOT send these files to others. These other files contain printer specific information based on your printer. DXbase will automatically create these printer specific files when the project is used by someone else so there is no need to send them. In fact, unless they are using the exact same printer as you, sending them these other files may cause problems for them when they try to use your label project.

By the way, if you have designed a label or QSL card that you feel is really a “work of art, we’d like to see it ourselves. Please tell us about it and let us know if it’s OK to share it with others or to use it as a sample project that we ship with DXbase.

Samples

Labels

Using the Samples

All of the samples provided were created with the DXbase designer module. Before using the samples, there are a few points to consider:

1. Many of the samples can be used as is. The information on the label or card comes directly from your internal user options and personal data so no change is necessary.
2. Some of the samples contain information that was typed into the label or card as "fixed" text. In other words, the text is part of the label or card. For example, maybe the IOTA or County. In these cases, you will need to open the sample project in the designer module and modify the text with your own information.
3. Some of the samples contain pictures. If you wish to replace a picture with your own picture or graphic, you will need to open the project in the designer and make the change. You will want to be careful that you make your own graphic close to same dimensions of the existing one on a label or card, but this is only to allow you to keep the same relative appearance.
4. The physical layout of all labels, QSL cards, and reports is based on the printer and video drivers of the machine on which the design was created. While most drivers are similar and therefore will not require you to make any modifications, it is possible that on your machine, the appearance of fields is not quite right. Maybe the printing on a label exceeds the width of the label. Or, maybe the appearance of information on a QSL card does not line up exactly as it should. In any of these cases, it will be necessary for you to open the label, QSL card, or report project in the designer and reposition the fields in question so that they do line up correctly based on your system.
5. Some of the samples use specially designed fonts in some of the fields. These fonts are not part of Windows normal installation and therefore may not be installed on your machine. Typically these fonts provide for slashed zero that is not usually the case in default Windows fonts. During the installation of DXbase, the fonts used on some of these examples were placed in your DXbase Label folder. Refer to your Windows documentation for instructions on how to install a font. Basically, you will copy the .tlf files (the font files) into a specific Windows folder per the instructions you

have with Windows for installing a font. You will know that a particular font is not installed on your system because you will see distorted or "garbage" characters in one or more of the fields on your label, QSL card, or report. Alternatively, if you do not wish to install the necessary fonts, you can open the label, QSL card, or report project in the designer and change the font used to one of the standard Windows fonts.

6. Each label or QSL card is designed to handle a certain number of QSOs per label or card. Some only allow for a specific number of QSOs while others can accept up to a maximum number. When opening a label or card project either in the designer, or when printing, you will be asked how many QSOs per label or card. It is critical that you specify the correct number. For example, if a label was designed for up to 3 QSOs, then when asked, enter 3 as the number of QSOs per label. If the label or QSL card was designed for only 1 QSO, then enter one when asked. If you specify an incorrect number of QSOs for the label project that you choose, you may receive errors and be unable to use the project you selected.
7. We recommend that when you wish to modify a label, QSL card, or report project for your own use, that instead of using the project sample, you instead make a copy of it and rename it to your own unique project name. This way, you can preserve your work without fear of having some new installation of DXbase replace your modified version with our default. The examples provided typically do not change when we release upgrades. To make a copy of a label, QSL card, or report project, use Windows Explore and navigate to the folder where the labels or reports are located under the DXbase parent folder. Locate the project name and make a copy in the same folder and then rename the copy you made. NOTE: Each label, QSL card, and report project consists of up to three files. These files have the same base filename but have a different file extension. When making a copy of a project, you must copy all of the files with the same base name and rename each to your new name keeping the same file extension.
8. DXbase provides a separate help file that contains more information about the label designer. You can access this designer help file from within the designer module, or from the DXbase program group. The designer is a very powerful graphical design module and while the basics are fairly easy to accomplish with a little practice, the sophisticated things assume that you already have a working knowledge of this type of tool. Scientific Solutions does not offer tech support for issues such as designing labels and cards for you. If you need that kind of assistance, we recommend posting your question on the reflector and perhaps other users with this kind of expertise can assist.

Europe L7159 up to 4 QSOs

The following are examples of the European Avery L7159 label file. The examples show how a 4-QSO, 3-QSO, 2-QSO, and 1-QSO Label would appear. To use this label design, select L7159_Up_To_4QSOS_per_label as your project and select 4 QSOs per label.

Henk, PA5KT, made this European L7159 Label.

This file uses 4 separate Layers - giving AUTOMATIC selection of the appropriate layer - so that the spacing of each of the labels would be very even and smooth looking!

4W6MM

via TF1MM

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
03 MAY 2000	1258	21	59	USB
PSE QSL		73 de Joseph WA6AXE		

Verified by PA5KT

A52A

via W0GJ

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
09 MAY 2000	1333	21	59	USB
09 MAY 2000	1521	24	59	USB
TNX QSL		73 de Joseph WA6AXE		

Verified by PA5KT

V31GI

via PA3GIO

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
27 MAR 2000	1630	24	59	USB
28 MAR 2000	1808	28	59	USB
28 MAR 2000	2022	21	59	USB
PSE QSL		73 de Joseph WA6AXE		

Verified by PA5KT

TX0DX

via OH2BN

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
27 MAR 2000	0006	21	59	USB
27 MAR 2000	0459	21	59	USB
27 MAR 2000	0738	14	59	USB
27 MAR 2000	2006	28	59	USB
PSE QSL		73 de Joseph WA6AXE		

Verified by PA5KT

Europe L7162 up to 4 QSOs

The following are examples of the European Avery L7162 label file. The examples show how a 4-QSO, 3-QSO, 2-QSO, and 1-QSO Label would appear. To use this label project select L7162_up_to_4QSOs and select 4 QSOs per label.

This design uses 4 separate Layers - giving AUTOMATIC selection of the appropriate layer - so that the spacing of each of the labels will be very even and smooth looking!

4W6MM

via TF1MM

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
03 MAY 2000	1258	21	59	USB
PSE QSL		73 de Joe WA6AXE		

A52A

via W0GJ

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
09 MAY 2000	1333	21	59	USB
09 MAY 2000	1521	24	59	USB
PSE QSL		73 de Joe WA6AXE		

V31GI

via PA3GIO

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
27 MAR 2000	1630	24	59	USB
28 MAR 2000	1808	28	59	USB
28 MAR 2000	2022	21	59	USB
PSE QSL		73 de Joseph WA6AXE		

TX0DX

via OH2BN

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
27 MAR 2000	0006	21	59	USB
27 MAR 2000	0459	21	59	USB
27 MAR 2000	0738	14	59	USB
27 MAR 2000	2006	28	59	USB
PSE QSL			73 de Joe WA6AXE	

Europe 3475BOLD up to 3 QSOs

The following are examples of the "BOLD" font version of the European Zweckform 3475NOPX Label file.

70X36mm with 24 labels per sheet.

The examples show how a 1-QSO, 2-QSO, and 3-QSO Label would appear.

This label file has **ALL** Fonts in the **BOLD** styling.

Whereas, 3475NOPX has the majority of the print in Regular Font.

WA6AXE confirms QSO with

GW4BLE

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
31 MAR 1996	1856	14	59	USB
PSE QSL			73 de Joe WA6AXE	

WA6AXE confirms QSO with

GW5NF

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
15 FEB 1998	1714	21	599	RTTY
22 MAR 1998	1826	21	599	RTTY
TNX QSL			73 de Joe WA6AXE	

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
ZL9CI via ZL2HU

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
08 JAN 1999	2139	21	59	USB
08 JAN 1999	2306	21	59	USB
10 JAN 1999	0318	14	59	USB

PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AXE

Europe 3475NOPX up to 3 QSOs

The following are examples of the European Zweckform 3475NOPX Label file.

70X36mm with 24 labels per sheet.

The examples show how a 1-QSO, 2-QSO, and 3-QSO Label would appear.

Also, the **Gray Colored OUTLINE**, of the entire Label itself, is NOT part of the 3475NOPX Label File.

The **Gray OUTLINE** is only there in this picture to give you an idea of the actual SIZE of the Label, with respect to the Label data.

WA6AXE confirms QSO with

3D2DX via EA4CP

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
28 DEC 1998	0047	21	599	RTTY
PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AX E				

WA6AXE confirms QSO with

6Y5/DL7VOG via DL7VOG

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
30 DEC 1998	0217	14	599	RTTY
31 DEC 1998	1442	28	599	RTTY
PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AX E				

WA6AXE confirms QSO with

ZL9CI via ZL2HU

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
12 JAN 1999	1904	24	59	USB
12 JAN 1999	2004	24	59	USB
13 JAN 1999	0051	21	599	CW
PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AX E				

Europe 3479NOPX up to 3 QSOs

The following are examples of the European Zweckform 3479NOPX Label file.

70X32mm with 27 labels per sheet.

The examples show how a 1-QSO, 2-QSO, and 3-QSO Label would appear.

Also, the Gray Colored OUTLINE, of the entire Label itself, is NOT part of the 3479NOPX Label File.

The Gray OUTLINE is only there in this picture to give you an idea of the actual SIZE of the Label, with respect to the Label data.

3D2DX

via EA4CP

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
31 AUG 1998	0512	14	59	USB
TNX QSL 73 de Joe WA6AX E				

A92GE

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
22 DEC 1998	1419	14	59	USB
30 MAY 1999	0335	14	559	RTTY
TNX QSL 73 de Joe WA6AX E				

T20FW

via DK7YY

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
06 JAN 1999	2342	28	599	RTTY
09 JAN 1999	2353	21	599	RTTY
11 JAN 1999	0016	24	59	USB
TNX QSL 73 de Joe WA6AX E				

4013NOPX up to 3 QSOs

The following examples of the **4013NOPX Labels**

The Gray Colored **OUTLINE**, of the entire Label itself, is NOT part of the 4013NOPX Label File.

The Gray **OUTLINE** is only there in this picture to give you an idea of the actual **SIZE** of the Label, with respect to the Label data/images.

VK3DBO

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
26 MAY 1999	0740	14	595	SSTV
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe	WA6AXE

VK4AI

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
26 MAY 1999	0630	14	595	SSTV
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe	WA6AXE

ZL9CI

via ZL2HU

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
08 JAN 1999	2139	21	59	USB
08 JAN 1999	2306	21	59	USB
10 JAN 1999	0318	14	59	USB
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe	WA6AXE

4013NR02 up to 3 QSOs

The following examples of the **4013NR2 Labels**

The Gray Colored **OUTLINE**, of the entire Label itself, is NOT part of the 4013NR2 Label File.

The Gray **OUTLINE** is only there in this picture to give you an idea of the actual **SIZE** of the Label, with respect to the Label data/images.

ZL9CI

via ZL2HU

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
18 JAN 1999	2148	21	599	RTTY
18 JAN 1999	2329	28	59	USB
18 JAN 1999	2342	28	599	CW
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE	



ZL9CI

via ZL2HU

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
19 JAN 1999	0610	10	599	CW
19 JAN 1999	0740	7	59	LSB
19 JAN 1999	0909	7	59	LSB
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE	



ZS6BTD

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
27 MAY 1999	1325	14	575	SSTV
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE	



5160 and 8160NOPX up to 3 QSOs

In the following examples of the **8160NOPX Labels**,
the Gray Colored **OUTLINE**, of the entire Label, is NOT part of the 8160NOPX Label File.

The Gray **OUTLINE** only shows the actual
SIZE of the Label, with respect to the Label data.

A92GE				
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
26 APR 1999	0733	14	599	PSK31
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe	WA6AXE

VK4AI				
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
26 APR 1999	0517	14	595	SSTV
26 MAY 1999	0630	14	595	SSTV
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe	WA6AXE

ZL9CI				
			via	ZL2HU
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
08 JAN 1999	2139	21	59	USB
08 JAN 1999	2306	21	59	USB
10 JAN 1999	0318	14	59	USB
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe	WA6AXE

5160 and 8160NR02 up to 3 QSOs

The following examples of the **8160NR02 Labels** show how a 1-QSO, 2-QSO, and 3-QSO Label would appear.

A92GE

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
26 APR 1999	0733	14	599	PSK31
PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AXE				

VK4AI

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
26 APR 1999	0517	14	595	SSTV
26 MAY 1999	0630	14	595	SSTV
PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AXE				

ZL9CI

via ZL2HU

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
08 JAN 1999	2139	21	59	USB
08 JAN 1999	2306	21	59	USB
10 JAN 1999	0318	14	59	USB
PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AXE				

5161 and 8161NOPX up to 3 QSOs

The following examples of the **8161NOPX Labels** were taken as a SnapShot Picture of part of the Print Preview Page in DXbase. Also, the **Gray Colored OUTLINE**, of the entire Label itself, is NOT part of the 8161NOPX Label File.

The Gray OUTLINE is only there in this picture to give you an idea of the actual SIZE of the Label, with respect to the Label data.

3D2DK					via DK7YY
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
02 JAN 1999	0019	28	599	PSK31	
28 DEC 1998	0047	21	599	RTTY	
29 DEC 1998	2336	28	599	RTTY	
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE		
VK3DBO					
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
26 MAY 1999	0740	14	595	SSTV	
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE		
ZL9CI					via ZL2HU
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
08 JAN 1999	2139	21	59	USB	
08 JAN 1999	2306	21	59	USB	
10 JAN 1999	0318	14	59	USB	
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE		

5161 and 8161SPCL up to 3 QSOs

The following are examples of the 8161SPCL Label file, with background of sky and clouds,
The examples show how a 1, 2, and 3-QSO Label would appear.

Also, the Gray Colored OUTLINE, of the entire Label itself, is NOT part of the 8161SPCL Label File.

The Gray OUTLINE is only there in this picture to give you an idea of the actual SIZE of the Label, with respect to the Label data.

3D2VA					via WA2NHA
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
29 DEC 1998	2336	28	599	RTTY	
PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE			

6Y5/DL7VOG					via DL7VOG
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
30 DEC 1998	0217	14	599	RTTY	
31 DEC 1998	1442	28	599	RTTY	
PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE			

ZL9CI					via ZL2HU
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
08 JAN 1999	2139	21	59	USB	
08 JAN 1999	2306	21	59	USB	
10 JAN 1999	0318	14	59	USB	
PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE			


5161 and 8161NR1 up to 3 QSOs


The following are examples of the 8161NR1 Label file, with picture images automatically selected based on the mode.


The examples show how a 1, 2, and 3-QSO Label would appear.


Also, the Gray Colored OUTLINE, of the entire Label itself, is NOT part of the 8161SPCL Label File.


The Gray OUTLINE is only there in this picture to give you an idea of the actual SIZE of the Label, with respect to the Label data.

ZL9CI					via ZL2HU
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	
08 JAN 1999	2139	21	59	USB	
08 JAN 1999	2306	21	59	USB	
10 JAN 1999	0318	14	59	USB	
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA64XE		

ZL9CI					via ZL2HU
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	
10 JAN 1999	0323	14	59		
10 JAN 1999	0341	14	59		
12 JAN 1999	0520	14	599		
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA64XE		

ZL9CI					via ZL2HU
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	
12 JAN 1999	1904	24	59	USB	
12 JAN 1999	2004	24	59	USB	
13 JAN 1999	0051	21	599	CW	
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA64XE		

ZL9CI					via ZL2HU
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	
13 JAN 1999	0106	21	599		
16 JAN 1999	2320	24	59		
17 JAN 1999	0310	18	59		
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA64XE		





ZL9CI					via ZL2HU
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	
18 JAN 1999	2148	21	599	RTTY	
18 JAN 1999	2329	28	59	USB	
18 JAN 1999	2342	28	599	CW	
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA64XE		

ZL9CI					via ZL2HU
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	
19 JAN 1999	0610	10	599		
19 JAN 1999	0740	7	59		
19 JAN 1999	0909	7	59		
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA64XE		

5161 and 8161NR1A up to 3 QSOs

The following examples of the **8161NR1A Labels** were taken as a SnapShot Picture of the WHOLE Preview Page in DXbase. Also, the **Gray Colored OUTLINE**, of the entire Label itself, is NOT part of the 8161NR1A Label File.

The Gray OUTLINE is only there in this picture to give you an idea of the actual SIZE of the Label, with respect to the Label data/images.

<div><div>3D2DK</div><div>via DK7YY</div><table><thead><tr><th>Date</th><th>UTC</th><th>MHZ</th><th>RST</th><th>Mode</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>02 JAN 1999</td><td>0019</td><td>28</td><td>599</td><td>RTTY</td></tr><tr><td>28 DEC 1998</td><td>0047</td><td>21</td><td>599</td><td>RTTY</td></tr><tr><td>29 DEC 1998</td><td>2336</td><td>28</td><td>599</td><td>RTTY</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>PSE</td><td>QSL</td><td colspan="2">73 de Joe WA6AXE</td></tr></tbody></table></div> <div></div>	Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	02 JAN 1999	0019	28	599	RTTY	28 DEC 1998	0047	21	599	RTTY	29 DEC 1998	2336	28	599	RTTY		PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE		<div><div>3D2DX</div><div></div><table><thead><tr><th>Date</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>01 SEP 1998</td></tr><tr><td>02 SEP 1998</td></tr><tr><td>08 SEP 1998</td></tr></tbody></table></div> <div></div>	Date	01 SEP 1998	02 SEP 1998	08 SEP 1998
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode																										
02 JAN 1999	0019	28	599	RTTY																										
28 DEC 1998	0047	21	599	RTTY																										
29 DEC 1998	2336	28	599	RTTY																										
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE																											
Date																														
01 SEP 1998																														
02 SEP 1998																														
08 SEP 1998																														
<div><div>3D2DX</div><div>via EA4CP</div><table><thead><tr><th>Date</th><th>UTC</th><th>MHZ</th><th>RST</th><th>Mode</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>08 SEP 1998</td><td>0216</td><td>21</td><td>599</td><td>RTTY</td></tr><tr><td>13 SEP 1998</td><td>2159</td><td>24</td><td>59</td><td>USB</td></tr><tr><td>14 SEP 1998</td><td>0140</td><td>21</td><td>599</td><td>RTTY</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>PSE</td><td>QSL</td><td colspan="2">73 de Joe WA6AXE</td></tr></tbody></table></div> <div></div>	Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	08 SEP 1998	0216	21	599	RTTY	13 SEP 1998	2159	24	59	USB	14 SEP 1998	0140	21	599	RTTY		PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE		<div><div>3D2DX</div><div></div><table><thead><tr><th>Date</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>14 SEP 1998</td></tr><tr><td>16 SEP 1998</td></tr><tr><td>31 AUG 1998</td></tr></tbody></table></div> <div></div>	Date	14 SEP 1998	16 SEP 1998	31 AUG 1998
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode																										
08 SEP 1998	0216	21	599	RTTY																										
13 SEP 1998	2159	24	59	USB																										
14 SEP 1998	0140	21	599	RTTY																										
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE																											
Date																														
14 SEP 1998																														
16 SEP 1998																														
31 AUG 1998																														
<div><div>3D2DX</div><div>via EA4CP</div><table><thead><tr><th>Date</th><th>UTC</th><th>MHZ</th><th>RST</th><th>Mode</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>31 AUG 1998</td><td>0512</td><td>14</td><td>59</td><td>USB</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>TNX</td><td>QSL</td><td colspan="2">73 de Joe WA6AXE</td></tr></tbody></table></div> <div></div>	Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	31 AUG 1998	0512	14	59	USB		TNX	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE		<div><div>DL1BJ</div><div></div><table><thead><tr><th>Date</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>14 APR 1998</td></tr><tr><td>14 APR 1998</td></tr><tr><td>31 MAY 1999</td></tr></tbody></table></div> <div></div>	Date	14 APR 1998	14 APR 1998	31 MAY 1999										
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode																										
31 AUG 1998	0512	14	59	USB																										
	TNX	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE																											
Date																														
14 APR 1998																														
14 APR 1998																														
31 MAY 1999																														
<div><div>HA5CAR</div><div></div><table><thead><tr><th>Date</th><th>UTC</th><th>MHZ</th><th>RST</th><th>Mode</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>02 JUN 1999</td><td>0658</td><td>14</td><td>579</td><td>RTTY</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>PSE</td><td>QSL</td><td colspan="2">73 de Joe WA6AXE</td></tr></tbody></table></div> <div></div>	Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode	02 JUN 1999	0658	14	579	RTTY		PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE		<div><div>K0SRI</div><div></div><table><thead><tr><th>Date</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>05 DEC 1994</td></tr><tr><td>11 MAY 1997</td></tr></tbody></table></div> <div></div>	Date	05 DEC 1994	11 MAY 1997											
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode																										
02 JUN 1999	0658	14	579	RTTY																										
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE																											
Date																														
05 DEC 1994																														
11 MAY 1997																														

5161 and 8161NR2 up to 3 QSOs SSTV

The following are examples of the 8161NR2 Label file (SSTV ONLY).
 The examples show how a 1-QSO, 2-QSO, and 3-QSO Label would appear:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
W6LZV

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RSV</u>	<u>Mode</u>
03 JUN 1999	0620	14	595	SSTV
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE	



W6LZV

Date	UTC	MHZ	RSV	Mode
02 JUN 1999	0635	14	595	SSTV
30 MAY 1999	0335	14	555	SSTV
PSE QSL				73 de Joe WA6AXE



W6LZV

Date	UTC	MHZ	RSV	Mode
02 JUN 1999	0640	14	585	SSTV
03 JUN 1999	0620	14	595	SSTV
31 MAY 1999	0649	14	575	SSTV
PSE QSL				73 de Joe WA6AXE



5161 and 8161NR2A up to 3 QSOs SSTV

The following are examples of the 8161NR2a Label file (SSTV ONLY with shaded box).

The examples show how a 1-QSO, 2-QSO, and 3-QSO Label would appear:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with

K0SRL

Date	UTC	MHZ	RSV	Mode
05 DEC 1994	1530	14	595	SSTV
PSE QSL				73 de Joe WA6AXE



W6LZV

Date	UTC	MHZ	RSV	Mode
26 MAY 1999	0740	14	595	SSTV
27 MAY 1999	0500	21	595	SSTV
PSE QSL				73 de Joe WA6AXE



WA0TNW				
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RSV</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 DEC 1994	23 10	14	595	SSTV
12 DEC 1994	15 30	14	595	SSTV
12 DEC 1994	23 15	14	595	SSTV
PSE		QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE	



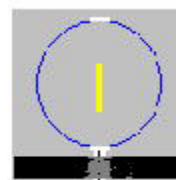
5161 and 8161NR3 up to 3 QSOs PSK31

The following are examples of the 8161NR3 (PSK31 ONLY) label file.
The examples show how a 1-QSO, 2-QSO, and 3-QSO Label would appear.

WA6AXE confirms QSO with

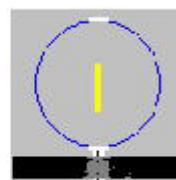
W6LZV

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
03 JUN 1999	0620	14	599	PSK31
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe	WA6AXE



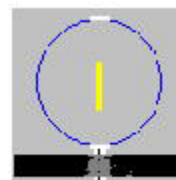
W6LZV

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
02 JUN 1999	0635	14	599	PSK31
30 MAY 1999	0335	14	559	PSK31
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE	



W6LZV

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
02 JUN 1999	0620	14	599	PSK31
02 JUN 1999	0640	14	589	PSK31
31 MAY 1999	0649	14	579	PSK31
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe	WA6AXE

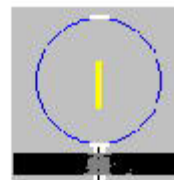


5161 and 8161NR3A up to 3 QSOs PSK31

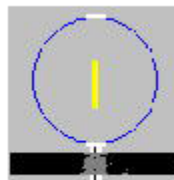
The following are examples of the 8161NR3A (PSK31 ONLY with shaded box) label file.

The examples show how a 1-QSO, 2-QSO, and 3-QSO Label would appear:

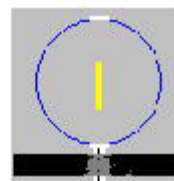
WA6AXE confirms QSO with					
K0SRL					
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
05 DEC 1994	1530	14	599	PSK31	
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE		



W6LZV					
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
26 MAY 1999	0740	14	599	PSK31	
27 MAY 1999	0500	21	599	PSK31	
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE		



WA0TNW					
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
05 DEC 1994	2310	14	599	PSK31	
12 DEC 1994	1530	14	599	PSK31	
12 DEC 1994	2315	14	599	PSK31	
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE		



5161 and 8161NR5 one QSO ARRL logo

The following are examples of the 8161NR5 Label file (with ARRL Logo).
This Label File is ONLY for 1-QSO per LABEL. The examples show how a 1-QSO Label would appear:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with					
W6LZV					
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RSV</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
26 MAY 1999	0740	14	595	SSTV	
			73 de Joe WA6AXE		



PSE
QSL

WA6AXE confirms QSO with					 PSE QSL
W6LZV					
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
27 MAY 1999	0500	21	59	SSB	
73 de Joe WA6AXE					


5161 and 8161LOGO up to 3 QSOs

5161 Style ARRL LOGO Label by Joe, W8IK --

Joe W8IK, made the following Label File for use with a Laser Printer.

PLEASE NOTE: This Label File uses the Euromode Font and the Slashed Zero Arial Font.

Here is a sample of the 5161 ARRL LOGO Label File.

Confirming QSO with: ZL9CI					
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>2X</u>	
13 JAN 1999	01 06	21	599	CW	
16 JAN 1999	23 20	24	59	USB	
17 JAN 1999	03 10	18	59	USB	
PSE QSL via ZL2HU					


5161 and 8161NR6 one QSO IOTA logo

The following are examples of the 8161NR6 Label file (with IOTA Logo).
This Label File is **ONLY** for 1-QSO per LABEL. The examples show how a 1-QSO Label would appear.

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
A92GE

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
26 APR 1999	0733	14	599	PSK31

73 de Joe WA6AXE




PSE
QSL

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
VK4AI

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RSV</u>	<u>Mode</u>
26 MAY 1999	0630	14	595	SSTV

73 de Joe WA6AXE




PSE
QSL

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
ZL9CI

via **ZL2HU**

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
08 JAN 1999	2306	21	59	USB

73 de Joe WA6AXE




PSE
QSL


5161 and 8161NR7 one QSO background


The following are examples of the 8161NR7 Label file, with background of sky and clouds, plus the mode ICON Pictures.
This Label File is ONLY for 1-QSO per LABEL. The examples show how a 1-QSO Label would appear.

Also, the Gray Colored OUTLINE, of the entire Label itself, is NOT part of the 8161NR7 Label File.

The Gray OUTLINE is only there in this picture to give you an idea of the actual SIZE of the Label, with respect to the Label data/images.

W6LZV						
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>		
15 APR 1999	1939	28	599	RTTY		
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE			

W6LZV						
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>		
15 APR 1999	1938	21	599	CW		
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE			

K0SRL						
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>		
15 APR 1999	1941	24	599	PSK31		
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE			

K0SRL						
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>		
15 APR 1999	1940	14	59	USB		
	PSE	QSL	73 de Joe WA6AXE			

5161 and 8161CQWW up to 3 QSOs

The following are examples of the CQWWDX99 Label file (8161/5161 style of label).
The examples show how a 1-QSO, 2-QSO, and 3-QSO Label would appear:

The words *CQWW DX 99* are part of the Background Picture.
When printed, the words make a very soft silhouette background.

3D2VA via **WA2NHA**

Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode
23 Oct 1999	1315	14	59	USB

PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AXE

6Y5/DL7VOG via **DL7VOG**

Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode
23 OCT 1999	2046	28	59	USB
23 OCT 1999	2208	21	59	USB

PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AXE

KG6JFZ

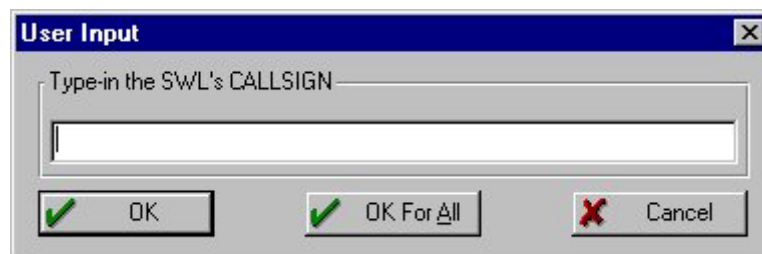
Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode
24 OCT 1999	1705	21	59	USB
24 OCT 1999	1830	14	59	USB
24 OCT 1999	1942	28	59	USB

PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AXE

5161 and 8161SWL one QSO

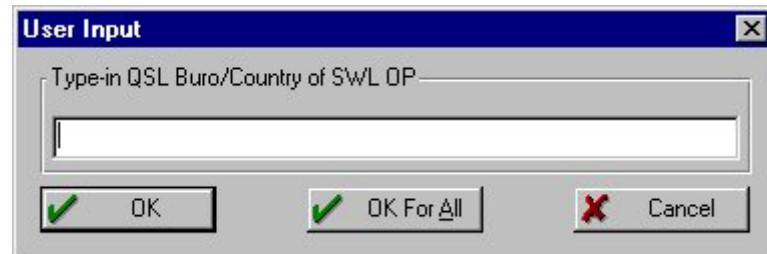
This design takes advantage of the ability to include dialog boxes that prompt for input as part of your label project. It also uses the functionality of the label designer to allow user specified variables to add further intelligence to your label projects.

Here is a sample of the User Input window #1 - where you will be prompted to type-in the SWL's Callsign.




The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "User Input". It has a close button (X) in the top right corner. The main area contains a text prompt "Type-in the SWL's CALLSIGN" above a single-line text input field. At the bottom, there are three buttons: "OK" with a green checkmark icon, "OK For All" with a green checkmark icon, and "Cancel" with a red X icon.

Here is a sample of the User Input window #2 - where you will be prompted to type-in the SWL's QSL Buro/Country.



A Windows-style dialog box titled "User Input" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The main text area contains the prompt "Type-in QSL Buro/Country of SWL OP" followed by a large empty text input field. At the bottom, there are three buttons: "OK" with a green checkmark icon, "OK For All" with a green checkmark icon, and "Cancel" with a red X icon.

Here is a sample of the 8161SWL Label -- 1-QSO per Label

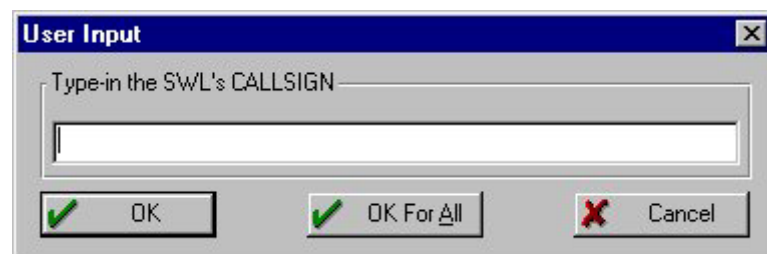


A rectangular label with a white background and a thin black border. The text is as follows:
Top line: "To SWL: **NL987654321** QSL Buro: The Netherlands" (NL987654321 is in red).
Second line: "This confirms your reception report of:" in italics.
Third line: "WA6AXE" in large blue font, followed by "<-In QSO with->" in smaller black font, followed by "GW0TXS" in large blue font.
Fourth line: A table with four columns: "Date", "UTC", "MHZ", and "Mode".
Fifth line: The corresponding values: "05 OCT 1998", "0001", "10", and "CW".
Bottom right: "73 de Joe WA6AXE" in green font.

5162 and 8462SWL one QSO

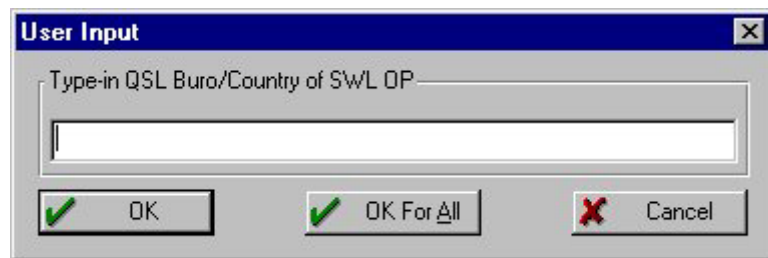
This design takes advantage of the ability to include dialog boxes that prompt for input as part of your label project. It also uses the functionality of the label designer to allow user specified variables to add further intelligence to your label projects.

Here is a sample of the User Input window #1 - where you will be prompted to type-in the SWL's Callsign.



A Windows-style dialog box titled "User Input" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The main text area contains the prompt "Type-in the SWL's CALLSIGN" followed by a large empty text input field. At the bottom, there are three buttons: "OK" with a green checkmark icon, "OK For All" with a green checkmark icon, and "Cancel" with a red X icon.

Here is a sample of the User Input window #2 - where you will be prompted to type-in the SWL's QSL Buro/Country.



Here is a sample of the 8462SWL Label -- 1-QSO per Label

To SWL: NL345678		QSL Buro: Netherlands		
<i>This confirms your reception report of:</i>				
WA6AXE		<i><-In QSO with-></i>	AX0LD	
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>Mode</u>	73 de Joe WA6AXE
25 JAN 2000	14 26	14	USB	

Tutorial

Tutorial Sample

Making a Single QSO Label from scratch:

With your DXBase program already open and ready for use, Left-click-on the following Menu items:

Tool,

Design Labels,

"Select the label type" - QSO Labels,

"QSOs per Label" - 1,

then click OK.

You are now in the DXbase Label File window. Just under the File Name window, you will see a "blue" area with the " *lbl " visible.

NOTE: From here on, I will refer to the label file that you are creating, as MYOWN.lbl

Type in the filename MYOWN.lbl and then left- click Open. You now enter a window labeled "Project Wizard" area of the Label Designer Module. This is an introduction window. Click 'Cancel'.

It is much easier to follow the next step. This step is:

Now that you are in the Label designer module, look to the Main Menu and select

Project,

Page Setup.

Click-on the Printer Selection TAB. This will take you into the window where you can select your printer.

If the printer that you will be using is the one listed, click on the Export Media TAB. If not, click "Select" and select the proper "Printer Name". Once the proper printer has been selected, click on the Export Media

TAB – to continue with the setup.

Now you are in the Export Media window. Here, you can select the destination media

for your project. The default is Printer. If you want to change it (to let's say Preview), then click-on

Preview, and then go to the upper right part of that window and click-on the green check-mark, and

then click-on the Templates TAB.

You are now in the Templates selection window. Here, you can select a predefined label or define your own.

For simplicity, I will deal with a Predefined Label. As a start, we will pick the Avery Dennison 5161 Label. Scroll down in the window and left-click the Avery 5161 label. The name will turn to a blue background indicating that we have selected that Style of Label. Click on the Page Setup TAB.

We are now at the PAGE SETUP window. Since we selected a PREDEFINED Avery Dennison 5161 Label, this Page Setup window is preset, except for your choice of how the label is to be Printed – i.e., PRINT ORDER. Again, for simplicity, use the Print Order default selection of "Horizontal".

Left-click OK. The Label File Setup Window will be gone and the Main Workspace will be visible, with the BLANK Avery Dennison 5161 Label (White colored area) showing in the upper portion of the Main Workspace.

TAB's available in the Workspace window are:

Layout,

Layout Preview,

Preview.

Other windows that are visible are the Objects, Properties, and List of Variables.

TAB's available in the Objects window are:

Objects,

Layers,

Preview.

The plain white label, without Grid (reference) lines is quite hard to use for aligning items. This can be set using the OPTIONS menu. Left-click Project, then select OPTIONS... and then select the Tab named PROJECT. If not already checked, check "Show Grid". You may also wish to select "Snap to Grid". This will automatically make the cursor 'snap' to a predefined position on the grid, making text and graphic line-up easier.

To the right of that are two windows. Ensure that they each have 0.10 showing in them. Now, click OK. You now have a Workspace of 1"X 4" (looking at the automatic ruler on TOP and on the SIDE of the Workspace).

At this time we will set up a Label that has only text. Ensure that the LAYOUT TAB of the workspace

window is selected.

Note: The actual placement of all of the ITEMS we will talk about is exclusively up to the person generating the label design. I will attempt to take you through the steps that I would choose. Still, this is only a starting point. After getting the feel of things, you can easily adjust the locations of all of the Text Items.

Go to the Main Menu and click OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT. Bring the mouse cursor onto the Label Workspace. Notice that the mouse-cursor is now in the SHAPE of an "+".

We are now ready to make the first TEXTBOX, which will be the DX station's Callsign. Place the cursor at the "intersection" of the Left-Ruler 0.1 and Top-Ruler 0.5 . Click and drag the cursor diagonally down to the right, to the intersection of 0.3 and 1.8. Release the left-mouse button.

The Text area you have just made is now Selected. You will see hash-marked lines surrounding the TextBox. Place the cursor anywhere "inside" TextBox, and right-click the mouse. A drop-down menu box will appear. Left-click "Contents". Now, a window called Paragraph Properties will come up. Double click-on the "blue" highlighted area (which has " ---" displayed) and the Edit Text window will come up.

Under the "Variables and Functions" TAB – double click-on the word CALL. Then click OK.

You should now see the word CALL in the white-box just below the word Paragraphs. "CALL" is the Variable that DXBase uses for the DX station's callsign.

On the righthand side of the Paragraph Properties window, you will see another area where we

Setup the various properties of "this" Textbox. The categories noted are:

Appearance,

Behaviour,

Layout.

In the Appearance area of this setup window, click-on the " + " next to the word FONT. This will change

to a " – " (minus) and will show all of the available options that we can select from.

Select the word "Default" – then, using the "dropdown" menu, select

False [No]

Now, the selections turn from a lightgrey color – to a solid black color. This indicates that we now can select and alter these options.

Select the word "Size" – then, using the "dropdown" menu, select
14 pt

Select the word "Bold" – then, using the "dropdown" menu, select
Yes

Select the word "Color" – then, using the "dropdown" menu, select
RGB(255,0,0) "Red color"

Now go to the Layout area/category.

Select the word "Alignment" - then, using the "dropdown" menu, select
Centered

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with CALL will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for CALL will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself.

Now, staying with the Workspace window, click-on the "Preview" TAB Now, you can see the Callsign that is IN THE TEXTBOX we just made.

NOTE: In this case, the sample callsign that you will see is AA4LU. When you actually use MYOWN.LBL label program, the DX station's callsign will be inserted in its place!

Now, select the "Layout" TAB again. You have now created the first textbox (CALL) of your label.

NOTE: the rest of the TEXTBOXES will be made in a similiar manner, but with the Variable Name and the Font, Style, Size, and Color being just a bit different.

From this point forward, for each of the next few TextBoxes, I will use an outline format to abbreviate things. Each of the TextBoxes will be made with the same concept.

To create the main part of the Label's QSO data area, follow the steps below:

The word "Date" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.3 Top 0.5 – Drag left-to-right to Left 0.5 Top 0.9.

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"Date"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Underline – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with Date will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for Date will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself.

The word "UTC" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT start at Left 0.3 Top 1.1 - Drag-right to left 0.5 Top 1.5 ..

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"UTC"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Underline – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with UTC will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for UTC will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself.

The word "Mhz" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.3 Top 1.6 - Drag-right to left 0.5 Top 2.0

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"Mhz"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Underline – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with Mhz will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for Mhz will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The word "RST" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.3 Top 2.1 - Drag-right to left 0.5 Top 2.5

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"RST"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Underline – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with RST will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for RST will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The word "Mode" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.3 Top 2.6 - Drag-right to left 0.5 Top 3.0

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"Mode"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Underline – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with Mode will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for Mode will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable DATE box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.5 Top 0.3 - Drag-right to left 0.7 Top 1.1

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

DATE

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable `DATE` will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable `DATE` will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable `TIME` box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.5 Top 1.1 - Drag-right to left 0.7 Top 1.5

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

TIME

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable `TIME` will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable `TIME` will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable `MHZ` box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.5 Top 1.6 - Drag-right to left 0.7 Top 2.0

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

`MHZ`

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable `MHZ` will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable `MHZ` will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable `RST` box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.5 Top 2.1 - Drag-right to left 0.7 Top 2.5

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

`RST`

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable `RST` will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable `RST` will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable `MODE` box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.5 Top 2.6 - Drag-right to left 0.7 Top 3.0

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

MODE

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable `MODE` will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable `MODE` will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable `CFM` box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.7 Top 1.2 - Drag-right to left 0.9 Top 1.5

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

CFM

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable `CFM` will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable `CFM` will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The word "QSL" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.7 Top 1.6 - Drag-right to left 0.9 Top 1.9

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"QSL"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [10 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with QSL will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for QSL will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable SIGN box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.7 Top 2.1 - Drag-right to left 0.9 Top 3.1

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

SIGN

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Label Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable `SIGN` will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable `SIGN` will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

Now comes the fun part - using **CONDITIONAL** Statements. For this part, I will be very specific. I want to make each step as clear as possible.

We will make a TextBox that will hold the word "via" and the Managers Callsign, (IF there is a QSL Manager)!! If there is no Manager or if the Manager field is empty, nothing will be printed in the Space on the Label for this TextBox.

To do this, we are going to make a **CONDITIONAL** statement that says: IF the **MANAGER's** callsign is **NOT EQUAL** to the DX station's callsign (indicating that we **DO HAVE** a **MANAGER**), print the word "via" plus the Manager's callsign. Otherwise leave that space blank. We will also check to see if the Manager field is empty, in which case, we will not print anything at all.

The Word/Variable `"via+MGR"` box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 0.1 Top 2.0- Drag-right to left 0.3 Top 3.0

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

```
If(MGR<>CALL,"via "+MGR,"")
```

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

Color – RGB(0,0,255) "Blue color"

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

Leaving the Textbox that we just made "selected/highlighted", look down in the "Properties" window

(lower left of the whole screen) and click-on

Appearance Condition

Choose "formula" from the dropdown menu

When the "Edit Appearance Condition" window comes up, "delete" the word(s) that might be in the

Window – and type-in exactly as follows:

Len(MGR)>0

This is the part where we are saying that the via+Manager will be shown/printed ONLY when the length of the contents of the MGR field is greater than Zero (0).

Click OK.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the Label WorkArea that "is not" on the label itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the `via+MGR` will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

Go to the MAIN MENU and click "SAVE". The label file `MYOWN.lbl` is now saved to the disk. Congratulations, you have now created your own label!!

We will now use the label that you have just created.

Go to the Main Menu, then click on "FILE/EXIT".

There are two ways to Select QSO(s) for printing to a label. For this discussion, we will take the simplest method.

Select a QSO from your QSO LOG by clicking on the record (clicking in the Callsign column would be good). Then go to Main Menu RECORD, and click-on "QSO Label". At this point, a textbox will pop-up asking if you want to store the information for batch printing. Click OK. The textbox will disappear.

At Main Menu "OUTPUT", click-on "User Designed Labels". Another Textbox will appear. At "QSO's per Label", enter 1. Check "QSO Labels". Click OK.

That Textbox will disappear; and, the Dbase Label File Textbox will appear. Scroll down to select `MYOWN.lbl` - and either Doubleclick the file name, or, click once and then click OK.

The Print Options textbox will now appear. Since we made PREVIEW as our default for this Label File,

Simply press on the "Start" button. Now, the Print PREVIEW screen will appear (FULL SCREEN), and you can see the Label(s) and it's contents. If your printer is setup and ready for actual "printing" of the

Labels that you see on Print Preview, go to the ICON for "Print Current Page" and click-on it. The Label(s) will be printed.

CONGRATULATIONS!!! You have now designed and printed a complete LABEL of your own design.

Tutorial QSL Card Sample

Making a Single QSO, QSL Card from scratch:

* With your DXBase program already open and ready for use, goto and left-mouse click-on the following Menu items:

Tools, Design Labels, "Select the label type" QSL Cards, QSOs per label "1", then click-on OK.

* You are now in the Dxbase Card File window. Just under the window for File Name, you will see a "blue" area with the " *crd " visible.

NOTE: From here-on, I will refer to the QSL Card file, that you will be making, as MYOWN.crd ..

Now, from your keyboard, type in MYOWN.crd and then left-mouse click-on OK.

At the Project Wizard window – click-on Cancel

Go to Main Menu / Project / Page Setup .. click-on the Export Media TAB and select

"Preview" – then go to the upper righthand portion of this window and click-on the Green Checkmark.

Staying with the Layout window, click-on the Printer Selection TAB.. ensure that the phrase

Use physical paper size and not the printable area

Has a checkmark next to it..

Again, staying with the Layout window, click-on the Templates TAB.. scroll down to and click-on K9DD QSL Card. Then click-on OK to get out of the Layout window.

GO to Main Menu / Project / Options .. when the Options window comes up, click-on and mark Show Grid and also Snap to Grid .. Click OK.

Now, the Main Workspace will be visible, with a "blank" K9DD QSL Card (White colored area) showing in the upper portion of the Main Workspace.

Now you have a WORKAREA of 3.5" X 5.5" (looking at the automatic ruler on the SIDE and on the TOP of the WorkArea.

At this time we will setup a QSL Card that has only text.

Note: The actual placement of all of the ITEMS we will talk about, is exclusively up to the person making the QSL Card design. What I will do, is take you through the places that I would choose. So, this is only a starting point. After getting the FEEL of things, you can easily adjust the locations of all of the Text Items.

Ensure that the workarea's LAYOUT TAB is selected.

Goto to top Main Menu area and click OBJECTS,INSERT,TEXT. Bring the mouse-cursor down to the Card WorkArea. You will notice that the mouse-cursor is in the SHAPE of an "+" .. We are now ready to make the first item of TEXT, which will be the Your Callsign (OPRCALL). Place the mouse-cursor at the "intersection" of the Left-Ruler 0.2 and Top-Ruler 1.2 .. Now HOLD-DOWN the left-mouse button and DRAG the mouse-cursor over to the right, and down, to the intersection of 1.0 and 4.3 ..Release the left-mouse button. The Text area you have just made is now Selected and you will see unique lines surrounding the TextBox. Place the mouse-cursor anywhere "inside" of that TextBox, and click the "right-mouse" button. A drop-down menu box will appear. Left-mouse click "Contents" ..

Now, a window called Paragraph Properties will come up. Double click-on the "blue" highlighted area (which has " ---" displayed) and the Edit Text window will come up.

Under the "Variables and Functions" TAB – double click-on the word OPRCALL. Then click OK.

You should now see the word OPRCALL in the white-box just below the word Paragraphs. "OPRCALL" is the Variable that DXBase uses for "your" callsign.

On the righthand side of the Paragraph Properties window, you will see another area where we Setup the various properties of "this" Textbox. The categories noted are:

Appearance,

Behaviour,

Layout.

In the Appearance area of this setup window, click-on the " + " next to the word FONT. This will change

to a " – " (minus) and will show all of the available options that we can select from.

Select the word "Default" – then, using the "dropdown" menu, select

False [No]

Now, the selections turn from a lightgrey color – to a solid black color. This indicates that we now can select and alter these options.

Select the word "Size" – then, using the "dropdown" menu, select

48 pt

Select the word "Bold" – then, using the "dropdown" menu, select

Yes

Select the word "Color" – then, using the "dropdown" menu, select

RGB(0,0,255) "Blue color"

Now go to the Layout area/category.

Select the word "Alignment" - then, using the "dropdown" menu, select

Centered

Click OK.

The QSL card Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with OPRCALL will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the QSL card WorkArea that "is not" on the card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for OPRCALL will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself.

Now, staying with the Workspace window, click-on the "Preview" TAB Now, you can see the Callsign that is IN THE TEXTBOX we just made.

NOTE: In this case, the sample callsign that you will see is WB4GCP. When you actually use MYOWN.crd QSL card program, the "your" callsign will be inserted in its place!

Now, select the "Layout" TAB again. You have now created the first textbox (OPRCALL) of your QSL card.

NOTE: the rest of the TEXTBOXES will be made in a similiar manner, but with the Variable Name and the Font, Style, Size, and Color being just a bit different.

From this point forward, for each of the next few TextBoxes, I will use an outline format to abbreviate things. Each of the TextBoxes will be made with the same concept.

Next, your address portion of the QSL card will be created:

The variable MYNAME textbox:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 1.0 Top 1.6 – Drag left-to-right to Left 1.2 Top 3.9.

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

MYNAME

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [14 pt]

Bold – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with MYNAME will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for MYNAME will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself.

The variable MYADR1 textbox:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 1.2 Top 1.6 – Drag left-to-right to Left 1.4 Top 3.9.

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

MYADR1

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [14 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with MYADR1 will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for MYADR1 will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself.

The variable MYADR2 textbox:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 1.4 Top 1.4 – Drag left-to-right to Left 1.6 Top 4.1.

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

MYADR2

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [14 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with MYADR2 will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for MYADR2 will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself.

Next the main part of the QSL Card QSO data area will be created:

The word "Date" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 1.9 Top 1.4 – Drag left-to-right to Left 2.1 Top 2.1.

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"Date"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Underline – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with Date will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for Date will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself.

The word "UTC" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT start at Left 1.9 Top 2.3 - Drag-right to left 2.1 Top 2.8 ..

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"UTC"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Underline – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with UTC will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for UTC will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself.

The word "Mhz" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 1.9 Top 3.0 - Drag-right to left 2.1 Top 3.5

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"Mhz"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Underline – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with Mhz will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for Mhz will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The word "RST" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 1.9 Top 3.7 - Drag-right to left 2.1 Top 4.2

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"RST"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Underline – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with RST will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for RST will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The word "Mode" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 1.9 Top 4.4 - Drag-right to left 2.1 Top 4.9

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"Mode"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Underline – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with Mode will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for Mode will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable DATE box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 2.2 Top 1.3 - Drag-right to left 2.4 Top 2.2

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

DATE

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable DATE will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable DATE will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable TIME box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 2.2 Top 2.3 - Drag-right to left 2.4 Top 2.8

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

TIME

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable TIME will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable TIME will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable MHZ box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 2.2 Top 3.0 - Drag-right to left 2.4 Top 3.5

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

MHZ

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable MHZ will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable MHZ will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable RST box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 2.2 Top 3.7 - Drag-right to left 2.4 Top 4.2

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

RST

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable `RST` will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable `RST` will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable `MODE` box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 2.2 Top 4.4 - Drag-right to left 2.4 Top 4.9

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

MODE

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable `MODE` will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable `MODE` will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable `CFM` box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 2.7 Top 1.8 - Drag-right to left 2.9 Top 2.2

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

`CFM`

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [10 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable CFM will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable CFM will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The word "QSL" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 2.7 Top 2.3 - Drag-right to left 2.9 Top 2.7

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"QSL"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [10 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with QSL will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for QSL will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

The variable SIGN box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 2.7 Top 3.2 - Drag-right to left 2.9 Top 4.9

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

SIGN

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [10 pt]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable SIGN will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable SIGN will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

Next is the word phrase "To Radio" :

The word phrase "To Radio" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 1.7 Top 0.3 - Drag-right to left 1.9 Top 1.3

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"To Radio"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [12 pt]

Bold – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with To Radio will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for To Radio will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

Next is the word phrase "Confirming our 2-way QSO" :

The word phrase "Confirming our 2-way QSO" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 1.7 Top 1.6 - Drag-right to left 1.9 Top 5.0

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

"Confirming our 2-way QSO"

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [12 pt]

Bold – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with Confirming our 2-way QSO will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for Confirming our 2-way QSO will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

Next is the DX-station's Callsign Field:

The variable CALL box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 1.9 Top 0.3 - Drag-right to left 2.1 Top 1.2

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

From the "Variables and Functions" TAB, select and double click-on

CALL

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [14 pt]

Bold – [Yes]

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

The Workspace should now be available again and the TextBox we just created with the variable CALL will still be highlighted with the unique lines around it.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the variable CALL will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

Now comes the fun part - using CONDITIONAL Statements. For this part, I will be very specific. I want to make each step as clear as possible.

We will make a TextBox that will hold the word "via" and the Managers Callsign, (IF there is a QSL Manager)!! If there is no Manager or if the Manager field is empty, nothing will be printed in the Space on the QSL card for this TextBox.

To do this, we are going to make a CONDITIONAL statement that says: IF the MANAGER's callsign is NOT EQUAL to the DX station's callsign (indicating that we DO HAVE a MANAGER), print the word "via" plus the Manager's callsign. Otherwise leave that space blank. We will also check to see if the Manager field is empty, in which case, we will not print anything at all.

The Word/Variable "via+MGR" box:

OBJECTS, INSERT, TEXT .. start at Left 2.2 Top 0.3 - Drag-right to left 2.4 Top 1.2

Mouse-cursor in the TextBox, right-click mouse button. Select "Contents".

Double-click left mouse button on the "blue highlighted" area.

At the cursor, type in exactly as follows (including the quotemarks):

```
If(MGR<>CALL,"via "+MGR,"")
```

Click OK.

Now, go to the righthand side window and select:

FONT

Default – [No]

Size – [8 pt]

Color – RGB(0,0,255) "Blue color"

LAYOUT

Alignment – [centered]

Click OK.

Leaving the Textbox that we just made "selected/highlighted", look down in the "Properties" window

(lower left of the whole screen) and click-on

Appearance Condition

Choose "formula" from the dropdown menu

When the "Edit Appearance Condition" window comes up, "delete" the word(s) that might be in the

Window – and type-in exactly as follows:

```
Len(MGR)>0
```

This is the part where we are saying that the via+Manager will be shown/printed ONLY when the length of the contents of the MGR field is greater than Zero (0).

Click OK.

Place the cursor anywhere inside the WorkArea that "is not" on the QSL card itself, and left-click the mouse. The TEXTBOX area for the via+MGR will now change from the unique lines to just the Black-Line outline of the TextBox itself

Go to the MAIN MENU and click "SAVE". The QSL card file MYOWN.crd is now saved to the disk. Congratulations, you have now created your own QSL card!!

We will now use the QSL card that you have just created.

Go to the Main Menu, then click on "FILE/EXIT".

There are two ways to Select QSO(s) for printing to a QSL card. For this discussion, we will take the simplest method.

Select a QSO from your QSO LOG by clicking on the record (clicking in the Callsign column would be good). Then go to Main Menu RECORD, and click-on "QSO Label". At this point, a textbox will pop-up asking if you want to store the information for batch printing. Click OK. The textbox will disappear.

At Main Menu "OUTPUT", click-on "User Designed Labels". Another Textbox will appear. At "QSO's per Label", enter 1. Check "QSL cards". Click OK.

That Textbox will disappear; and, the Dbase QSL card File Textbox will appear. Scroll down to select MYOWN.crd - and either Doubleclick the file name, or, click once and then click OK.

The Print Options textbox will now appear. Since we made PREVIEW as our default for this QSL card File, Simply press on the "Start" button. Now, the Print PREVIEW screen will appear (FULL SCREEN), and you can see the QSL card(s) and it's contents. If your printer is setup and ready for actual "printing" of the QSL cards that you see on Print Preview, go to the ICON for "Print Current Page" and click-on it. The QSL card(s) will be printed.

CONGRATULATIONS!!! You have now designed a complete QSL Card of your own and have printed it.

Tutorial Modifying Existing Label Project

How to modify a sample so that it fits your label

Open a label file as discussed in the Help File section for "Tutorial Sample". That portion of the help file contains the instructions on MAKING A SINGLE QSO LABEL FROM SCRATCH.

The scenario that we will discuss in this part is: "I just printed my label, and ALL of the text is too high on the label. How can I change it?"

With the label file open and nothing selected (nothing is highlighted in the hashed lines), go to Main Menu OBJECT, SELECT, SELECT ALL. Left-click Select-All. All of the objects on the label workarea will now be highlighted in with hashed lines (and have turned lightgrey color).

Move the mouse-cursor to the center of the highlighted area, where you will see a the cursor change to a

" + " looking cursor with arrowheads in all four directions.

Since all of the text on your original label was too high, you can move everything down on the label workarea by just a bit. Still holding down the left Mouse button, move the mouse down by just a bit and you will see that the extreme outside edges of the whole workarea are highlighted in blue. When you have all of the objects (as one unit) located where you want them, release the Left Mouse button!

Move the cursor to an area of the label workarea (that is outside of the actual label); and, left-click the Mouse. Now everything is now back to normal – with nothing selected. NOTE: The exact location of the text on the label workarea is up to the person making the label. Normally, you would want to have everything CENTERED on the label.

Problem: I just printed my label, and all of the text is too low on the label.

The procedure is exactly the same as "above", except that you will move the mouse upwards this time.

The next scenario for discussion is:

I want to MOVE just one of the objects from its present location. In this case, let's say that you want to move the DX Stations Callsign (the CALL textbox field).

With the label file open, move the cursor to the DX Station's Callsign (CALL) TextBox and click the left Mouse button. That TextBox is now SELECTED. Just as we did above, move the mouse cursor to the center of that TextBox. While holding down the left Mouse button, drag the TextBox to any location on the label workarea that you desire. When it is located where you want it, release the Mouse button.

Next, move the cursor to a place on the Label Workarea where there are no objects - like we did above. Click the Left Mouse button once and everything will return to normal, without anything selected.

The next scenario for discussion is:

Changing the size of the TextBox. Again, we will use the DX Station's Callsign (CALL) TextBox.

Move the mouse-cursor to the DX Station's Callsign (CALL) TextBox and click the Left Mouse button. That TextBox is now selected. Let's say that you want to INCREASE the WIDTH of the TextBox, by STRETCHING it to the LEFT. Move the mouse-cursor over to the TextBox's LEFT SIDE (at the hashed lines). You should now see that the mouse-cursor has become ARROWS pointing left and right.

Holding the mouse very still, making sure that the double-arrowed cursor stays there, click the Left Mouse button and DRAG the mouse to the LEFT. When you have the TextBox sized like you want it, RELEASE the Left Mouse button. Move the mouse outside of that TextBox and with the mouse-cursor on the workarea, click the Left Mouse button. We are back to normal again.

NOTE: All size-changes (increasing or decreasing height, etc) made on any object are done in this manner. When you want to change both width and height simultaneously, move the cursor to the

corner that you want to start changing from. You will see a DIAGONAL, double headed cursor. The steps here are exactly the same as noted above, except you will drag the cursor diagonally. The rest of the procedure is the same.

Tutorial Sample with Conditional Graphics

Advanced Label Help Guide - using GRAPHICS

This is the part of the Label Process that is so rewarding and creative, but at the same time can be very challenging. Since this section can get very complicated, I will try to be very detailed. Please bear with me.

The first thing to do is obtain the PICTURE or ICON that you wish to use. There are various ways to do this, and I will explain how I got my pictures - and then let your imagination kick-in!

I wanted to find a picture of a printer, a microphone, and a CW handkey. I found them on the web. For clipart, try www.clipart.com. The steps below are the ones I use are for Netscape. Your browser commands may differ. Consult your user-manual. After finding the graphic I wanted to save, I placed the cursor over it and right-clicked the mouse. A sub-menu comes up allowing me to save it on my hard drive.

For my purposes, I called the Printer picture file RTTY, the microphone picture file PHONE, and the CW Handkey picture file CW. Since the DXBase label designer can accept many different types of graphics (i.e.: bitmap or *.bmp, .jpg, and many others), I try to select the type of graphics files that I am most familiar with. The *.jpg type of file is plentiful on the web, and the.jpg format is directly importable into DXbase label designer.

Note: Any scanned will be fine, as long as the file extension (like "bmp" or "jpg") is attached. Be sure that you SAVE the picture files into your DXBase Labels directory.

Now that we have our pictures, let's put those pictures into the label. In addition, we will define some APPEARANCE CONDITIONS for each. In the next example, we will have a different picture show up for each different mode of operations for that label.

Open DXBase. Select: TOOL, Design Labels ..., Single QSO per Label, QSO, **OK**.. In the Label File window, select and open the file that you created before in the "Making a

Single QSO Label from Scratch" section of the instruction. The file name that we used was MYOWN.LBL .

At the Main Menu, Select: OBJECTS, INSERT, PICTURE .. At this point, you will again see the X-cursor. Place that cursor at the coordinates of Left 0.2 Top 3.2; and then hold-down the Left mouse button. Drag the cursor to the coordinates Left 0.7 Top 3.7 .. Holding the mouse at this last coordinate, release the Left-Mouse button. The PictureBox will now be visible, showing the outlines in the red-dotted highlight indicating that it is selected. Leave the mouse-cursor inside the PictureBox and right-click the mouse. A drop-down menu will appear. Select "Properties". A "Load Picture" window will appear.

Click "SELECT". The Load Picture directory window will appear. Go to the selection window for "File Format", and scroll down until you can select "JPEG-Standard (*.jpg)". You will notice that one of the picture files that is available in the File Name window is RTTY.jpg. SELECT the file by either Double-clicking the file name or by clicking the file name once and then **OK**. The previous window will reappear. You should see RTTY.jpg just to the right of Filename. Now, checkmark the box for "Keep Proportions". By doing this, the picture will be shaped properly. Click **OK**.

Left-click in the small PREVIEW window. You should now see the picture of the Printer in the right-side of the QSO data on the label.

Place the cursor back into the PictureBox and again right-click the button. Select "Appearance Condition". We are now getting into the "Gee-Whiz" Conditional Programming section for this label.

Since we are dealing with a SINGLE QSO label, we will only need one set of pictures. When we do a two QSO label, the programming will be a bit different. For now, let's stick with the main three pictures.

The "Edit Condition for ..." window will now be in-view. TYPE-IN the following:

MODE="RTTY" OR MODE="AMTOR".

If everything is correct, you will see the phrase "Expression is Correct" beneath the conditional phrase that you just typed. If this does not occur, recheck the phrasing - it has to be typed exactly as shown above. Click **OK**.

What we have just told the program to do is: to show this Picture *only* if the MODE (for the QSO on the label) IS RTTY or AMTOR (since these are the two digital modes that DXBase recognizes).

Take the cursor on the "Select" ICON at the Left of the main screen and left-click the mouse. Take the mouse-cursor to the label workarea where there are no objects and click the Left-Mouse button. The PictureBox should go back to the normal black outline.

We are now ready to place another picture onto the label workarea.

NOTE: ALL three pictures will be residing at the exact same location on the label.. *but only one of them will be printed* - because of your Conditional Programming phrases.

Return to Main Menu. Select: OBJECTS, INSERT, PICTURE . At this point, you will again see the X-cursor. Place that mouse-cursor at the coordinates of Left 0.2 Top 3.2; and then hold-down the Left mouse button. DRAG the mouse to the coordinates Left 0.7 Top 3.7 .. Release the Left-Mouse button.

The PictureBox will now be visible, showing the outlines in the red-dotted highlight (It is SELECTED). Leave the mouse-cursor INSIDE of the PictureBox and Click the Right-Mouse button. A drop-down menu will appear. Select "Properties...". A "Load Picture" window will appear. Click "SELECT". The Load Picture directory window will appear. Go to the selection window for "File Format", and scroll down until you can select "JPEG-Standard (*.jpg)" .. Select PHONE.jpg by either Double-clicking the file name or by clicking the file name once and then **OK**.

The previous window will reappear. You should see PHONE.jpg just to the right of filename. Now, check the box for "Keep Proportions". This will allow the picture to be shaped properly. Click **OK**.

Goto the small PREVIEW window and left-click it. You should be able to now see the picture of the Microphone sitting on top of the Printer picture and located to the right-side of the QSO data on the label.

Now, take the mouse-cursor back to the PictureBox and again click the Right-mouse button. Then select "Appearance Condition". We are now getting back into the Conditional Programming for this picture.

NOTE: Since we are dealing with a SINGLE QSO label, we will only need one set of pictures. When we do a two QSO label, the programming will be a bit different. But let's for now stick with the main three pictures.

With the "Edit Condition for ..." window now in-view, type in the following:

MODE="USB" OR MODE="LSB"

If everything went OK, with the conditional phrase that you just typed in, there should be a dialog line stating "Expression is correct". If not, recheck the phrase - it has to be typed exactly as shown above. Click **OK**.

What we have told the program to "Show this Picture ONLY if the MODE (for the QSO on the label) is USB or LSB (since these are two of the voice/phone modes that DXBase recognizes. I left out phone modes of FM and AM, since I don't use them that much. But you could easily ADD them to the Conditional Phrase.

Place the cursor on the "Select" ICON at the Left of the main screen and left-click the mouse. Drag the cursor to the label workarea where there are no objects and click the Left-Mouse button. The PictureBox should go back to the normal black outline.

We are now ready to place the last picture onto the label workarea.

NOTE: ALL three pictures will be residing at the exact same location on the label.. *but only one of them will be printed* - because of your Conditional Programming phrases.

Go to Main Menu. Select: OBJECTS, INSERT, PICTURE .. At this point, you will again see the X-cursor. Place that mouse-cursor at the coordinates of Left 0.2 Top 3.2; and then hold-down the Left mouse button. DRAG the mouse to the coordinates Left 0.7 Top 3.7 . Holding the mouse at this last coordinates, RELEASE the Left-Mouse button.

The PictureBox will now be visible, showing the outlines in the red-dotted highlight (It is SELECTED). Leave the mouse-cursor INSIDE the PictureBox and Click the Right-Mouse button. A drop-down menu will appear. Select "Properties..." A "Load Picture" window will appear.

Click "SELECT". The Load Picture directory window will appear. Go to the selection window for "File Format", and scroll down until you can select "JPEG-Standard (*.jpg)". Now, one of the picture files that should be available in the File Name window is the CW.jpg . SELECT the file CW.jpg by either Double-clicking the file name or by clicking the file name once and then the **OK**. The previous window will reappear.

You should see CW.jpg just to the right of Filename. Now, checkmark the box for "Keep Proportions". By doing this, the picture will be shaped properly. Click **OK**.

Goto the small PREVIEW window and left-click it. You should be able to now see the picture of the CW Handkey sitting on top of the Microphone and Printer picture, and located to the right of the QSO data on the label.

Place the cursor back in the PictureBox and again right-click the mouse button. Then select "Appearance Condition". We are now again getting into the Conditional Programming for this picture.

NOTE: Since we are dealing with a SINGLE QSO label, we will only need one set of pictures. When we do a two QSO label, the programming will be a bit different. Let's stick with the main three pictures.

With the "Edit Condition for ..." window now in-view, TYPE-IN the following:

MODE="CW"

If everything went OK, right underneath the conditional phrase that you just typed in, there should be "Expression is correct". If it isn't recheck the phrase - it has to be exactly as shown above. Click **OK**.

We have just told the program to Show this Picture ONLY if the MODE (for the QSO on the label) IS CW.

Take the mouse-cursor to the "Select" ICON at the Left of the main screen and click Left-mouse button. Then take the mouse-cursor to the label workarea where there are no objects and click the Left-Mouse button. The PictureBox should go back to the normal black outline.

Congratulations!! You have now placed three pictures onto the label.

NOTE: ALL three pictures will be residing at the exact same location on the label.. *but only one of them will be printed* - because of your Conditional Programming phrases.

Move the mouse-cursor to the Main Menu, FILE, and click SAVE (since we will still keep the filename as MYOWN.LBL). Again, move to Main Menu, FILE, and click EXIT.

You can now use your new label with PICTURES !!! Use the instructions that were provided in the previous Help Guide: "Making a Single QSO Label from Scratch".



QSL Cards

Using the Samples

All of the samples provided were created with the DXbase designer module. Before using the samples, there are a few points to consider:

9. Many of the samples can be used as is. The information on the label or card comes directly from your internal user options and personal data so no change is necessary.
10. Some of the samples contain information that was typed into the label or card as "fixed" text. In other words, the text is part of the label or card. For example, maybe the IOTA or County. In these cases, you will need to open the sample project in the designer module and modify the text with your own information.
11. Some of the samples contain pictures. If you wish to replace a picture with your own picture or graphic, you will need to open the project in the designer and make the change. You will want to be careful that you make your own graphic close to same dimensions of the existing one on a label or card, but this is only to allow you to keep the same relative appearance.
12. The physical layout of all labels, QSL cards, and reports is based on the printer and video drivers of the machine on which the design was created. While most drivers are similar and therefore will not require you to make any modifications, it is possible that on your machine, the appearance of fields is not quite right. Maybe the printing on a label exceeds the width of the label. Or, maybe the appearance of information on a QSL card does not line up exactly as it should. In any of these cases, it will be necessary for you to open the label, QSL card, or report project in the designer and reposition the fields in question so that they do line up correctly based on your system.
13. Some of the samples use specially designed fonts in some of the fields. These fonts are not part of Windows normal installation and therefore may not be installed on your machine. Typically these fonts provide for slashed zero that is not usually the case in default Windows fonts. During the installation of DXbase, the fonts used on some of these examples were placed in your DXbase Label folder. Refer to your Windows documentation for instructions on how to install a font. Basically, you will copy the .tlf files (the font files) into a specific Windows folder per the instructions you

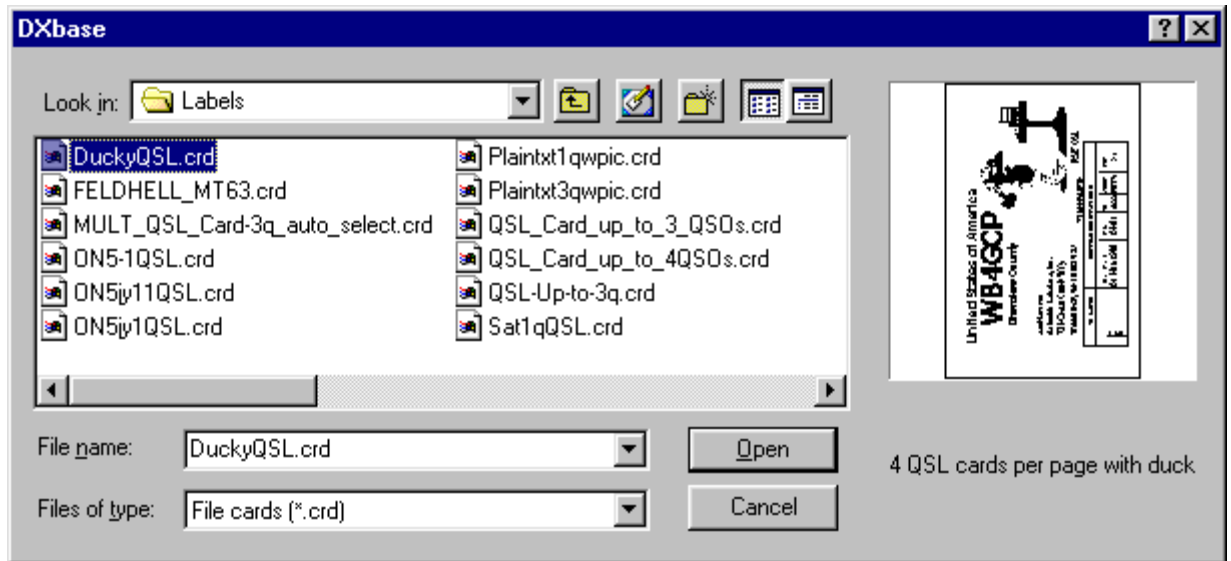
have with Windows for installing a font. You will know that a particular font is not installed on your system because you will see distorted or "garbage" characters in one or more of the fields on your label, QSL card, or report. Alternatively, if you do not wish to install the necessary fonts, you can open the label, QSL card, or report project in the designer and change the font used to one of the standard Windows fonts.

14. Each label or QSL card is designed to handle a certain number of QSOs per label or card. Some only allow for a specific number of QSOs while others can accept up to a maximum number. When opening a label or card project either in the designer, or when printing, you will be asked how many QSOs per label or card. It is critical that you specify the correct number. For example, if a label was designed for up to 3 QSOs, then when asked, enter 3 as the number of QSOs per label. If the label or QSL card was designed for only 1 QSO, then enter one when asked. If you specify an incorrect number of QSOs for the label project that you choose, you may receive errors and be unable to use the project you selected.
15. We recommend that when you wish to modify a label, QSL card, or report project for your own use, that instead of using the project sample, you instead make a copy of it and rename it to your own unique project name. This way, you can preserve your work without fear of having some new installation of DXbase replace your modified version with our default. The examples provided typically do not change when we release upgrades. To make a copy of a label, QSL card, or report project, use Windows Explore and navigate to the folder where the labels or reports are located under the DXbase parent folder. Locate the project name and make a copy in the same folder and then rename the copy you made. NOTE: Each label, QSL card, and report project consists of up to three files. These files have the same base filename but have a different file extension. When making a copy of a project, you must copy all of the files with the same base name and rename each to your new name keeping the same file extension.
16. DXbase provides a separate help file that contains more information about the label designer. You can access this designer help file from within the designer module, or from the DXbase program group. The designer is a very powerful graphical design module and while the basics are fairly easy to accomplish with a little practice, the sophisticated things assume that you already have a working knowledge of this type of tool. Scientific Solutions does not offer tech support for issues such as designing labels and cards for you. If you need that kind of assistance, we recommend posting your question on the reflector and perhaps other users with this kind of expertise can assist.

QSL Card Example

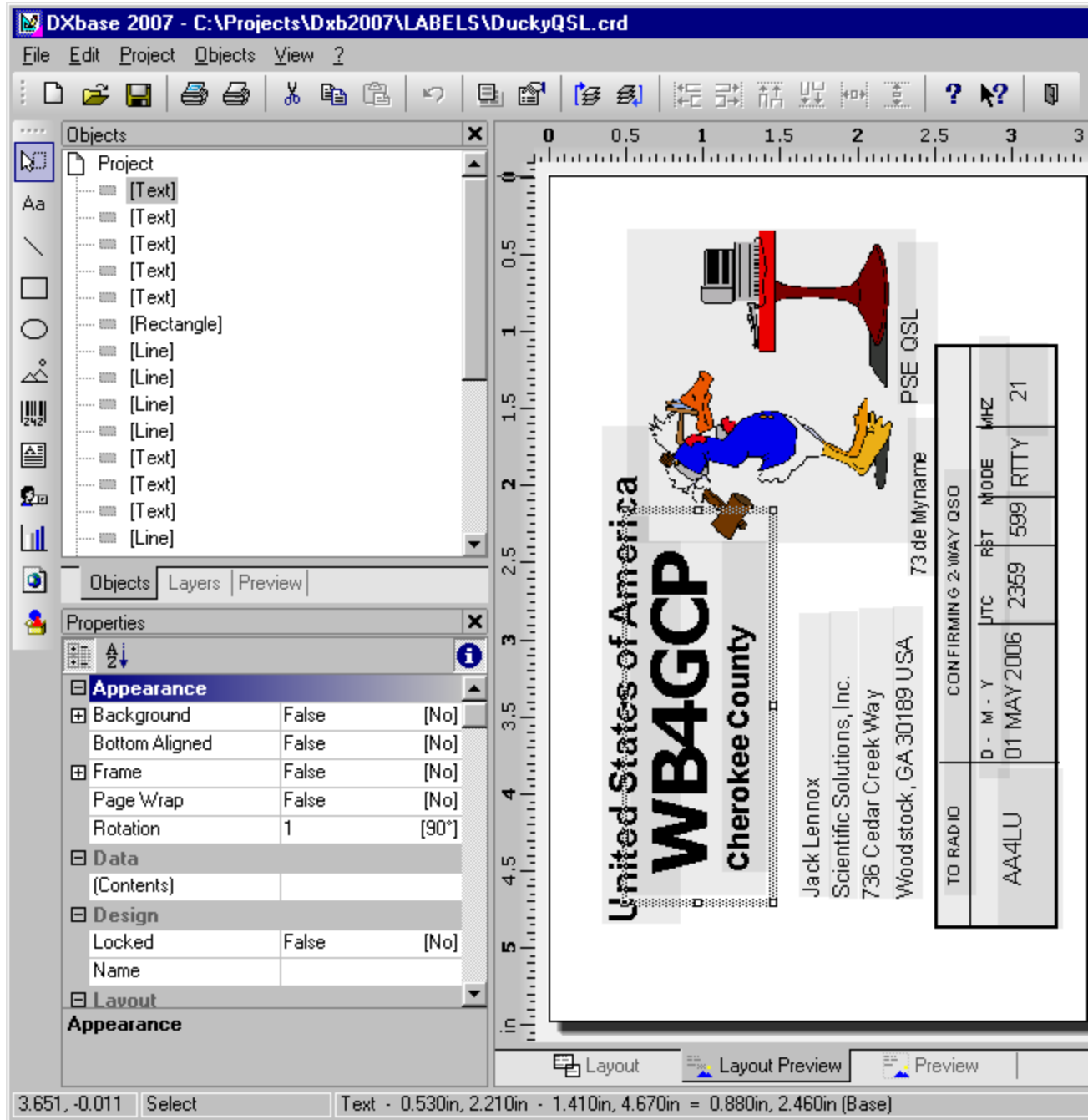
There were a large number of sample QSL card examples with DXbase. We will describe one of them below.

An example of a QSL card that was developed using the DXbase Label Designer is included. The Ducky Example demonstrates the design of a QSL card including a bitmap picture on the card. This example is based on a label type of QSL card. To see the example, activate the Label Designer module and select the Label Type of single QSO and QSL card as the type.



Navigate to the DXbase label directory and select the “Ducky.crd filename. There are many variations on how the entries on the card could have been made. For example, instead of using fixed text fields, you could have used database fields and so forth. The bitmap image used on the card is located in the DXbase label directory.

We recommend that you examine all the properties that have been set to gain an understanding of what the component parts of this card include.



Digital Mode QSL Card

The following are examples of the "FELDHELL and MT63" QSL Card file. This QSL Card file is totally AUTOMATIC, in that the file selects whether the FELDHELL/PSKHELL photo, or the MT63 photo will be displayed on the Card. Please note: This QSL card project is only usable with the MODES of FELDHELL, PSKHELL, or MT63.

This design supports one QSO per card. To use this design, select FELDHELL_MT63 as the project name and select one QSO per label/card. Use the label designer module to modify this design for your own needs.

The screenshot shows the 'QSLLY Mainwindow' interface. At the top, the call sign 'WA6AXE' is displayed in large blue letters. Below it, the name 'Joseph A. Glockner' and address '915 Boone Drive, Sherman, Texas 75090' are listed. A table titled 'Confirming our 2-way QSO' contains the following data:

To Radio	Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode
K1UR	29 JAN 2000	1503	21	559	FELDHILL

Below the table, there are fields for 'PSE' (set to '73 de Joe WA6AXE') and 'QSL'. At the bottom, a status bar shows 'Mon 3 Jan '00 21:52 UTC' and 'Not in QSO'.

This screenshot shows the same 'QSLLY Mainwindow' interface, but with a different 'To Radio' entry. The call sign 'WA6AXE' and the operator's name and address remain the same. The table data is as follows:

To Radio	Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode
AH6HH	02 JAN 2000	2230	20	549	MT63

The 'PSE' field now shows '73 de Joe WA6AXE' and 'QSL' is set to 'OFF'. The status bar at the bottom indicates 'Mon 2 Jan '00 22:03 UTC' and 'Not in QSO'.

QSL Card Up to 3 QSOs

The examples show how a 1-QSO, 2-QSO, and 3-QSO QSL Card would appear. To use this design, select QSL-Up-to-3q and also select 3 QSOs per label/card

These examples show the possible use for the variables
OPNAME, IOTA, RST-R, FREQ

WA6AXE



Joseph A. Glockner
915 Boone Drive,
Sherman, Texas 75090

To Radio	Confirming our 2-way QSO					
4W6MM	<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>FREQ</u>	<u>RST-S</u>	<u>RST-R</u>	<u>Mode</u>
Opr: Thor	03 MAY 2000	1258	21215.00	59	59	USB
via TF1MB						

PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AXE

WA6AXE



Joseph A. Glockner
915 Boone Drive,
Sherman, Texas 75090

To Radio	Confirming our 2-way QSO					
A52A	<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>FREQ</u>	<u>RST-S</u>	<u>RST-R</u>	<u>Mode</u>
via W0GJ	09 MAY 2000	1333	21297.00	59	59	USB
	09 MAY 2000	1521	24945.00	59	59	USB

PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AXE

WA6AXE



Joseph A. Glockner
915 Boone Drive,
Sherman, Texas 75090

To Radio	Confirming our 2-way QSO					
TX0DX	<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>FREQ</u>	<u>RST-S</u>	<u>RST-R</u>	<u>Mode</u>
QTH: OC176 via OH2BN	27 MAR 2000	0006	21295.00	59	59	USB
	27 MAR 2000	0459	21295.00	59	59	USB
	27 MAR 2000	0738	14195.00	59	59	USB

PSE QSL 73 de Joe WA6AXE

QSL Card Up to 4 QSOs

The following are examples of the "Sample QSL" Card file for DXbase2002.
The examples show how a 4-QSO, 3-QSO, 2-QSO, and 1-QSO QSL Card would appear. To use this design, select the project QSL-Card-up-to-4QSOs and also select 4 QSOs per label/card.

These examples use the modified FREQ field "format".

This design uses 4 separate Layers - giving AUTOMATIC selection of the appropriate layer - so that the spacing of all of the data would be very even and smooth looking!

WA6AXE

Joseph A. Glockner
915 Boone Drive,
Grayson County, Sherman, Texas 75090
USA

To Radio:	Confirming our 2-way QSO				
	DATE	UTC	FREQ	RST	MODE
4W6MM	03 MAY 2000	1258	21.215	59	USB
via TPI MM					

PSE QSL *73 de Joe WA6AXE*

WA6AXE

Joseph A. Glockner
915 Boone Drive,
Grayson County, Sherman, Texas 75090
USA

To Radio:	Confirming our 2-way QSO				
	DATE	UTC	FREQ	RST	MODE
A52A	09 MAY 2000	1333	21.297	59	USB
	09 MAY 2000	1521	24.945	59	USB
via W6GJ					

PSE QSL *73 de Joe WA6AXE*

WA6AXE

Joseph A. Glockner
915 Boone Drive,
Grayson County, Sherman, Texas 75090
USA

To Radio:	Confirming our 2-way QSO				
	DATE	UTC	FREQ	RST	MODE
V31GI	27 MAR 2000	1630	24.945	59	USB
	28 MAR 2000	1808	28.545	59	USB
	28 MAR 2000	2022	21.235	59	USB
via PA3GJO					

PSE QSL *73 de Joseph WA6AXE*

WA6AXE

Joseph A. Glockner
915 Boone Drive,
Sherman, Texas 75090
USA

Grayson
County

USA

To Radio:	Confirming our 2-way QSO				
TX0DX <i>via OH2BN</i>	DATE	UTC	MHZ	RST	MODE
	27 MAR 2000	0000	21.200	50	USB
	27 MAR 2000	0400	21.200	50	USB
	27 MAR 2000	0730	14.100	50	USB
	27 MAR 2000	2000	20.400	50	USB

PSE QSL
73 de Joe WA6AXE

QSL Card 1 QSO with photo

This QSL card file was made by Andy, KB2EOQ.
The QSL Card is used for 1-QSO per card.

To use this card, first open the kb2eq.crd project in the designer and replace the photo of Andy with your own photo. Select the kb2eq project and also select 1 QSO per label/card.

United States of America

KB2EOQ

Chautauqua County

Andrew O'Brien
5052 Concord Drive
Fredonia, New York 14063
United States of America



73 de Andy
PSE QSL

TO RADIO	CONFIRMING 2-WAY QSO				
KG4AS	Q - R - Y	UTC	RST	MODE	HW
	12 JUL 1999	1254	59	USB	18

Label for back of card

Some users prefer to print a large label and place it on the back of their professionally printed QSL card. For your convenience, three sample labels are included.

1. crdback3 is a QSO label that allows up to three QSOs
2. crdback6 is a QSO label that allows up to six QSOs

3. crdback9 is a QSO label that allows up to nine QSOs.

Although we include mention of these under the QSL card section of our documentation, please note that these are labels and not QSL cards. Therefore, to use these you would select QSO Label as the type and also enter either 3, 6, or 9 QSOs per label depending upon which design you intend to use.

How do I?

Modifying Frequency Format

The FREQ field format is currently provided as (i.e.: 21295.00)

If the user wants to have the FREQ field on their Label or QSL card as (i.e.: 21.295),
Then each of the FREQ fields on their Label or QSL card would be defined within "Properties"
as follows (**Note: This is for a 1-QSO per Label/Card file only**)

If(Len(MHZ)>1 and (Len(MHZ)<3), Left\$(FREQ,2) + "." + Mid\$(FREQ,2,3), Left\$(FREQ,1)
+ "." + Mid\$(FREQ,1,3))

For a 3-QSO per Label/Card file each Freq field would be as follows:

First FREQ field (Properties)

If(Len(MHZ)>1 and (Len(MHZ)<3), Left\$(FREQ,2) + "." + Mid\$(FREQ,2,3), Left\$(FREQ,1)
+ "." + Mid\$(FREQ,1,3))

Second FREQ field (Properties)

If(Len(MHZ2)>1 and (Len(MHZ2)<3), Left\$(FREQ2,2) + "." + Mid\$(FREQ2,2,3),
Left\$(FREQ2,1) + "." + Mid\$(FREQ2,1,3))

Second FREQ field (Appearance condition) :

Len(FREQ2)>0

Third FREQ field (Properties)

If(Len(MHZ3)>1 and (Len(MHZ3)<3), Left\$(FREQ3,2) + "." + Mid\$(FREQ3,2,3),
Left\$(FREQ3,1) + "." + Mid\$(FREQ3,1,3))

Third FREQ field (Appearance condition) :

Len(FREQ3)>0

This conditional coding for the default FREQ field will convert
the 21295.00 to 21.295; and, also convert frequencies such as 7235.00 to 7.235

This adjustment allows the user to put
the FREQ into the 21.295 format instead of the 21295.00 format.

Modifying time to 4 digits

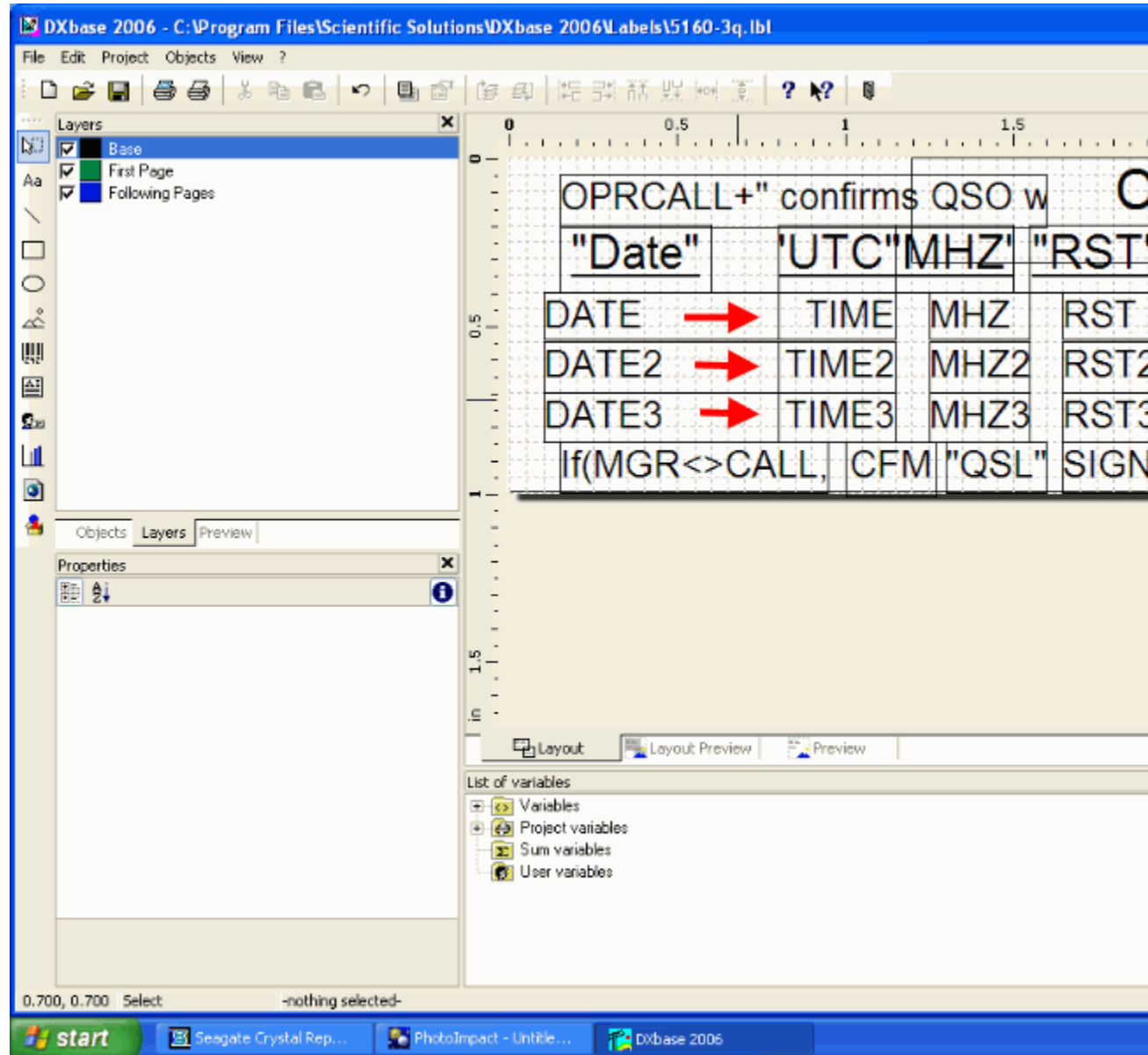
Enter either the Label Designer Module or the Report Designer Module.

Select the Label or Report file you want to modify.

Illustration #1 shows inside the Label Designer Module, with a

5160-3q.lbl file open and in the workspace of the Designer.

The red arrows are pointing to the 3 separate TIME variables.

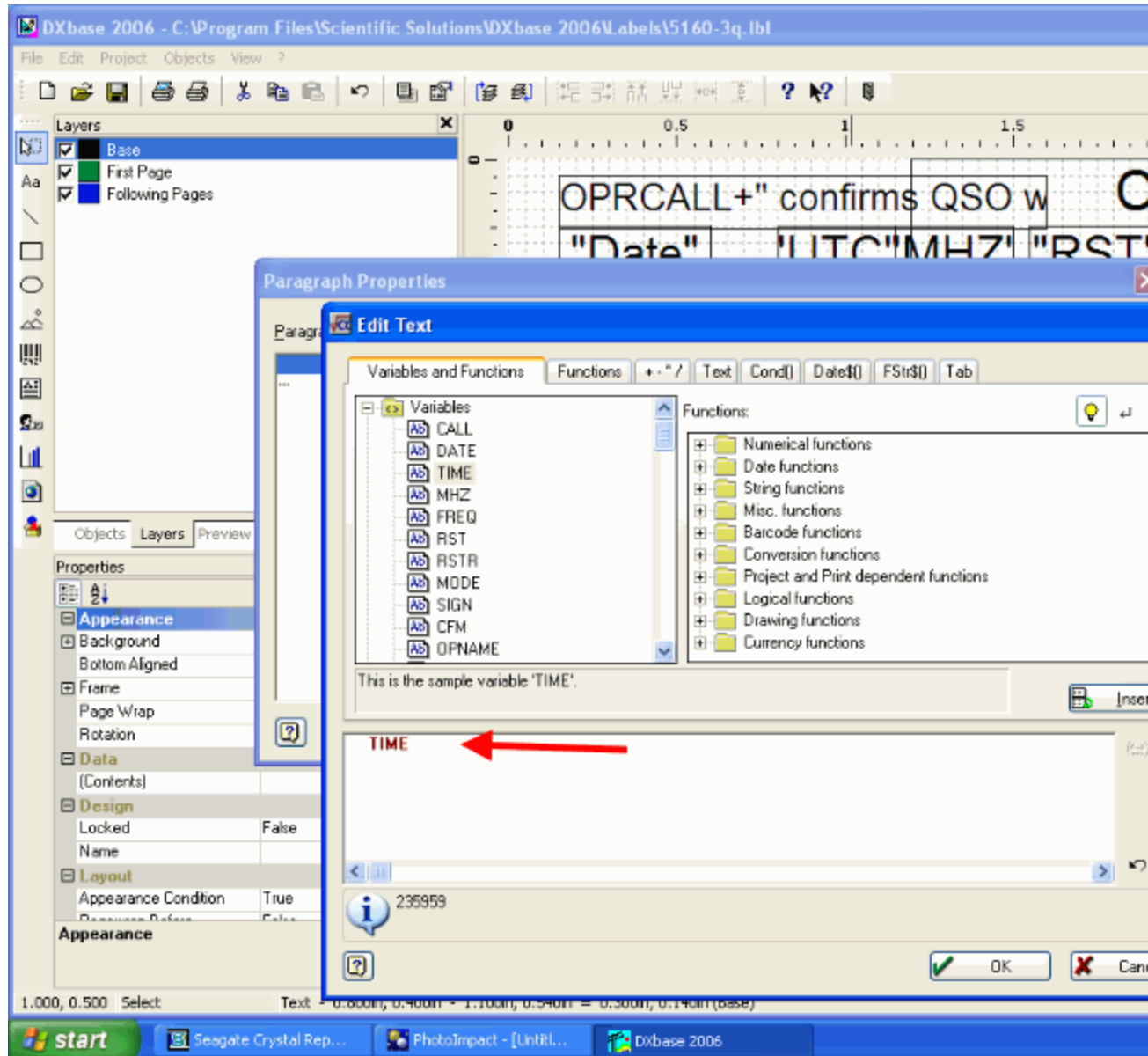


Currently, with DXbase 2006, the defaulted TIME field/variable is 6 digits in length (hhmmss). For the purposes of a Label or Report, you might only want 4 digits to be shown (hhmm).

To change each of the 3 TIME variables, right-click separately on each of the TIME variables (TIME, TIME2, TIME3). When the popup window appears, select *Contents*, then doubleclick on the word TIME in the leftside of the Paragraph Properties window.

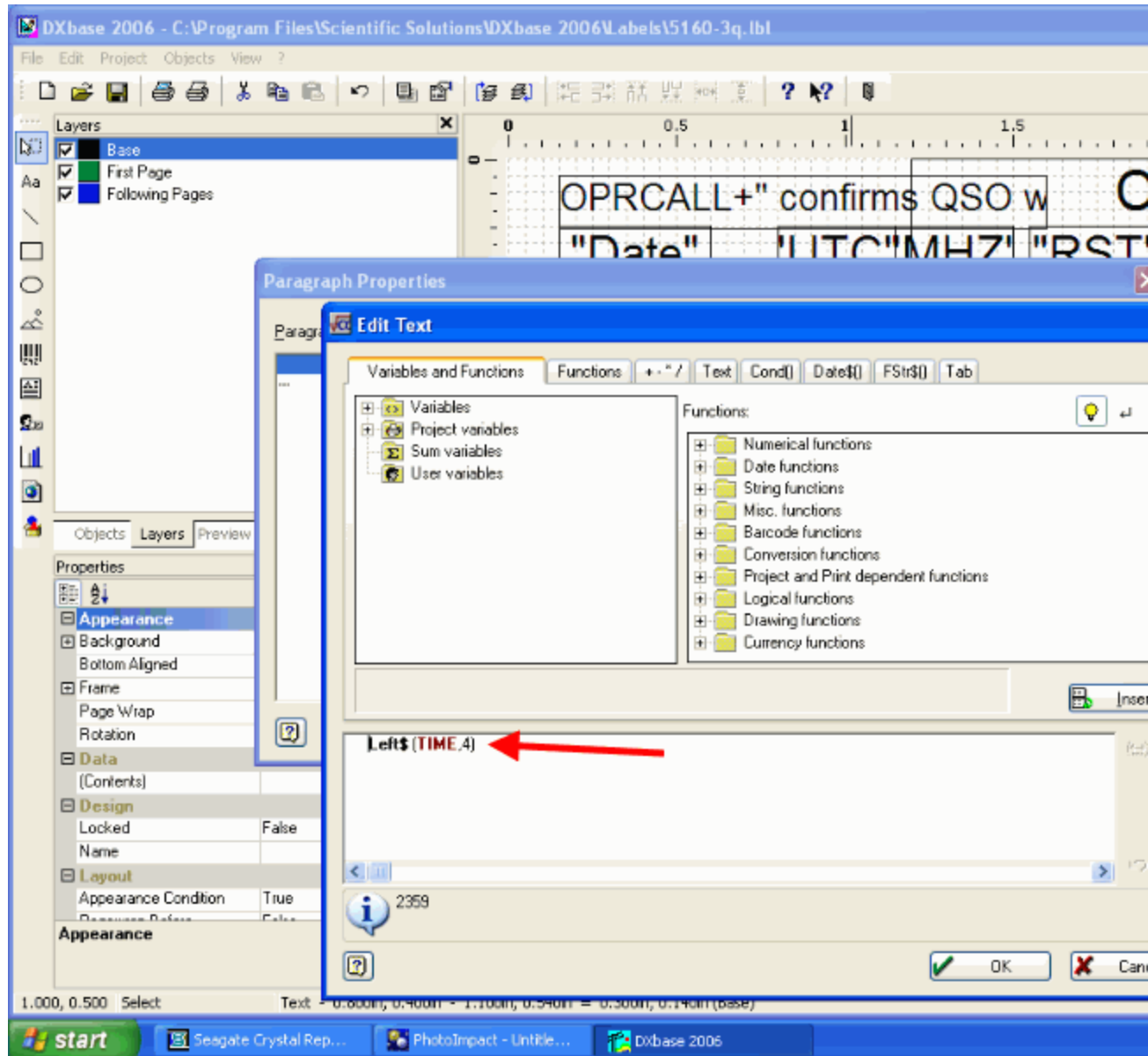
Illustration #2 shows what the next window will look like and contain.

Highlight /select the brown colored TIME and delete it. Leaving the cursor where it is, type-in from your keyboard the following in place of the TIME variable:



Left\$ (TIME,4)

Illustration #3 shows how this will look. Click-on *OK*, then on *OK* again to get back to the original workspace.



Repeat the same above actions for the TIME2 and TIME3 variables. An example of what the TIME2 would look like is:

Left\$ (TIME2,4)


Once you are finished modifying all 3 of the TIME variables, *SAVE* the file. Then EXIT.

Fonts with Slashed Zero

At the time you installed DXbase, an attempt was made to install several new fonts that contain the slashed zero. If this installation of fonts was successful, you will see the new fonts available when you review your available fonts in any of the normal dialog boxes that allow you to select a font. On some systems, fonts are not installed during the installation. For your convenience, the font files are contained in the Fonts folder in your DXbase folder group. You can follow the Windows instructions for installing fonts and install these yourself if needed.

For comparison purposes, this is the standard Windows Arial Font:


WA6AXE confirms QSO with				
GW0TXS				
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW
73 de Joe WA6AXE				



PSE
QSL

This is the same Arial font but with slashed zero:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with				
GWØTXS				
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW
73 de Joe WA6AXE				



PSE
QSL

This is the Slashed Zero Andale Mono Font:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This is the Ham font:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This the Dot Andale Mono font:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This is the Vag Round font (VRB):

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

Use Band instead of Frequency

The BAND field variable is not available directly from DXbase. The variables of FREQ and MHZ are available. But, if you want to use BAND Field (i.e. 15 meters), instead of the FREQ or MHZ Fields, you can do it as follows:

when you go into the Label Designer Module, and make what would normally be the MHZ or FREQ variable Field, you would program the 'Properties' of that one Textbox as: (Note: This is an example of the 80 meter BAND setup for this Textbox)

If(MHZ="3.5","80")

Then you would, for the same Textbox Field, program the 'Appearance Condition' of that one Textbox as: (Note: Again this is an example of 80 meters setup)

MHZ="3.5"

Now, that takes care of the 80 meter BAND.

Then you would INSERT 'another' Text Box Field (right on top of the previous BAND Field), but in the 'Properties', you would change the MHZ and the BAND accordingly, and the 'Appearance Condition' of this Text Box would also be changed accordingly.

Another example: For the 10 meter setup would be:

'Properties':

If(MHZ="28","10")

'Appearance Condition':

MHZ="28"

You would do this same procedure for EACH "HF" BAND from 160 thru 10 meters. This may seem to be very involved, but you will achieve the BAND Field that you want!

In the Textbox right above the actual value of the BAND, we would place a Textbox that would have the 'Properties' of:

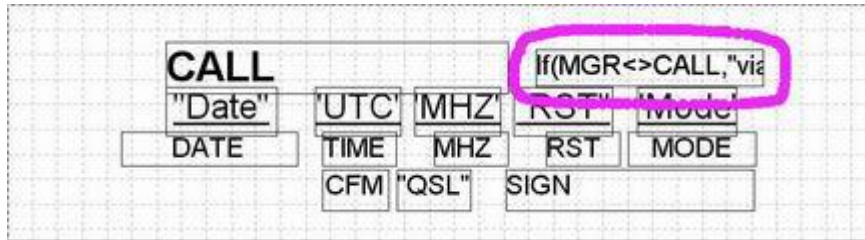
"BAND"

instead of putting the WORDS for MHZ or FREQ in that field labeling textbox.

Conditional Display of Via Manager

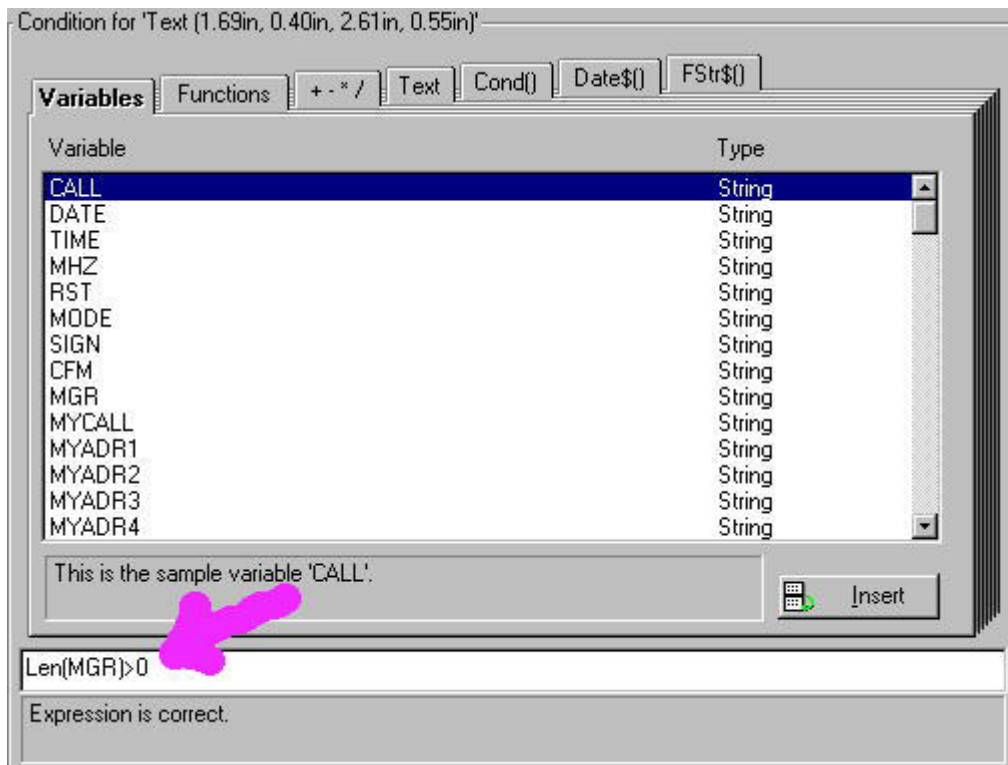
The information below describes how you can have the Via Manager field displayed on your label or QSL card when a manager callsign is present and have nothing printed when there is no manager. The logic discussed below could be applied to any other fields where similar behavior is desired.

A typical label design module snapshot, showing the [VIA MANAGER Field](#). A combination of the programming code shown in the Appearance Condition Menu and the Properties Menu, allow the conditional functionality to occur



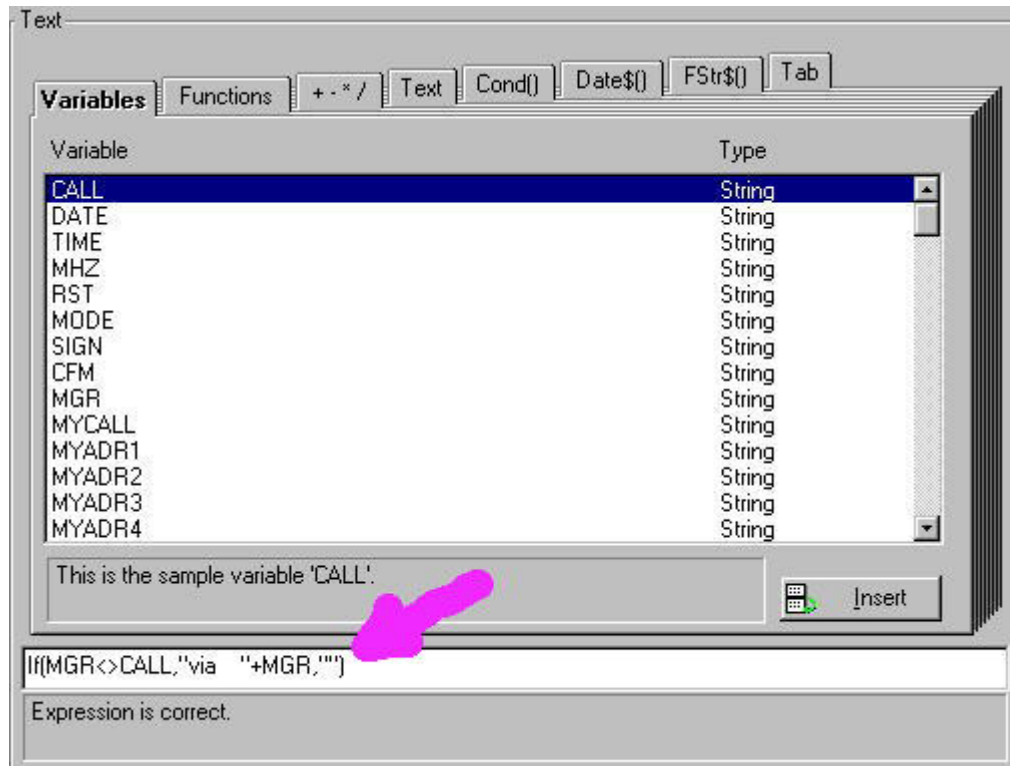
A snapshot of the **Appearance Condition Menu**, showing the `Len(MGR)>0` programming code.

Meaning of the code: "Length of the Manager Field is greater-than zero".
Therefore, If there is something in the Manager Field
(NOT EMPTY), the data is available to be used.



A snapshot of the **Properties Menu**, showing the `If(MGR<>CALL,\"via \" +MGR,\"\")` programming code.

Meaning of the code: If the Manager's call is NOT the same as the Station's call,
then print the word "via" PLUS the Manager's Call.
Otherwise, print **NOTHING!**



Modify Date Format

The DATE format in the Pending Labels Database and the Reports Wizard database is programmed as dd mmm yyyy. It cannot be changed within the Pending Labels Database or the Reports Wizard Database. If you wanted to have a totally different Date Field APPEARANCE on your Labels/SQL Cards/Reports, you CAN do it as follows:

Please NOTE: You can modify these examples to obtain whatever particular FORMAT you might want.

(1) If you want the DATE Field to look like ---> 1999 JAN 08, when you go into the Label Designer Module and make the DATE Field, "instead" of just programming the variable DATE, you would program the Properties of the Date Field as:

`Right$(DATE,4)+" "+Mid$(DATE,3,3)+" "+Left$(DATE,2)`

(2) If you want the DATE Field to look like ---> 1999 01 08, when you go into the Label Designer Module and make the DATE Field, "instead" of just programming the variable DATE, you would program the Properties of the Date Field as:

`(Right$(DATE,4)+" "+If(Mid$(DATE,3,3)="JAN" ,"01" ,"01")+ " "+Left$(DATE,2))`

-- and --

program the Appearance Condition of that Date Field as:

`Mid$(DATE,3,3)="JAN"`

Now, that takes care of the month of January. Then you would INSERT another DATE Text Box Field (right on top of the previous DATE Field), but in the Properties, you would change the

"JAN" to "FEB", and also change the "01" , "01" to "02" , "02" ... and Appearance Condition of this Text Box would be "FEB" instead of "JAN".

You would do this same procedure for EACH MONTH of the calendar.

Using Roman Numeral in Date

The DATE format in the Pending Labels Database and the Reports Wizard database is programmed as dd mmm yyyy. This describes an example of how to use 'Roman Numerals' instead of spelling the MONTH with three characters (i.e. DEC):

It cannot be changed within the Pending Labels Database or the Reports Wizard Database. So, if you wanted to have a totally different Date Field APPEARANCE on your Labels/QSL Cards/Reports, you CAN do it as follows:

Please NOTE: You can modify these examples to obtain whatever particular FORMAT you might want.

If you want the DATE Field to look like ' 08. XII .2000, as an example of how 08 DEC 2000 would look using 'Roman Numerals', when you go into the Label Designer Module and make the DATE Field,

"instead" of just programming the variable DATE, program the 'Properties' of the Date Field as:

```
Left$(DATE,2)+". "+If(Mid$(DATE,3,3)="DEC" ," XII " ," XII ")+". "+Right$(DATE,4)
```

-- and --

program the 'Appearance Condition' of that Date Field as:

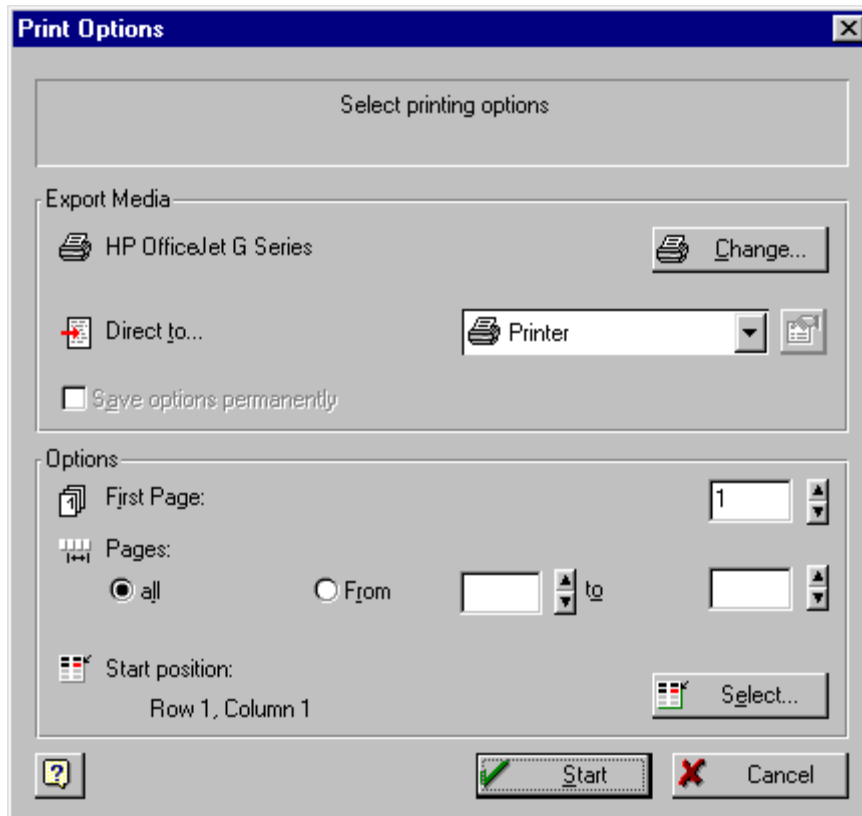
```
Mid$(DATE,3,3)="DEC"
```

Now, that takes care of the month of DECEMBER (DEC). Then you would INSERT 'another' DATE Text Box Field (right on top of the previous DATE Field), but in the Properties, you would change the "DEC" to "NOV", and Appearance Condition of this Text Box would be "NOV" instead of "DEC".

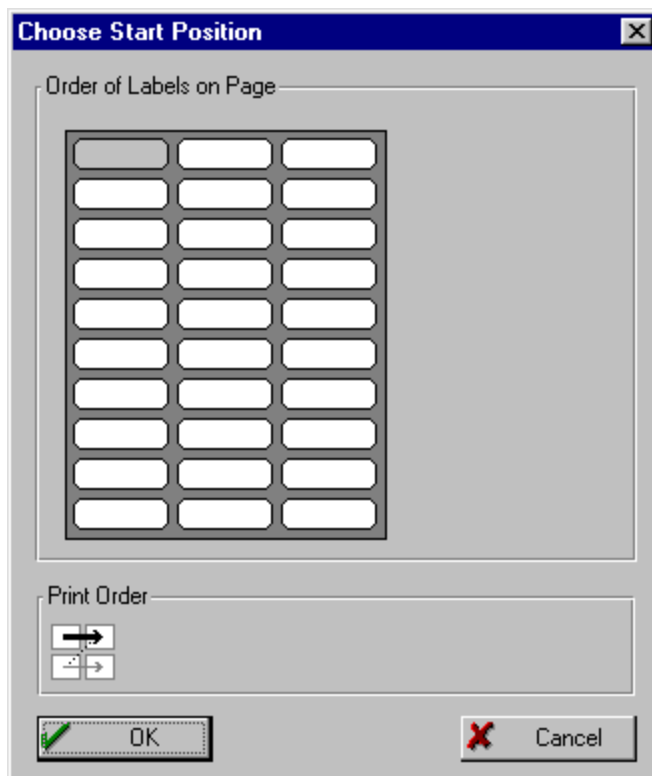
You would do this same procedure for EACH MONTH of the calendar.

Choose Starting Label of a sheet

Using the [SELECT](#) button on the [Print Options](#) menu, permits the selection of where on the sheet of labels the printing is to begin.



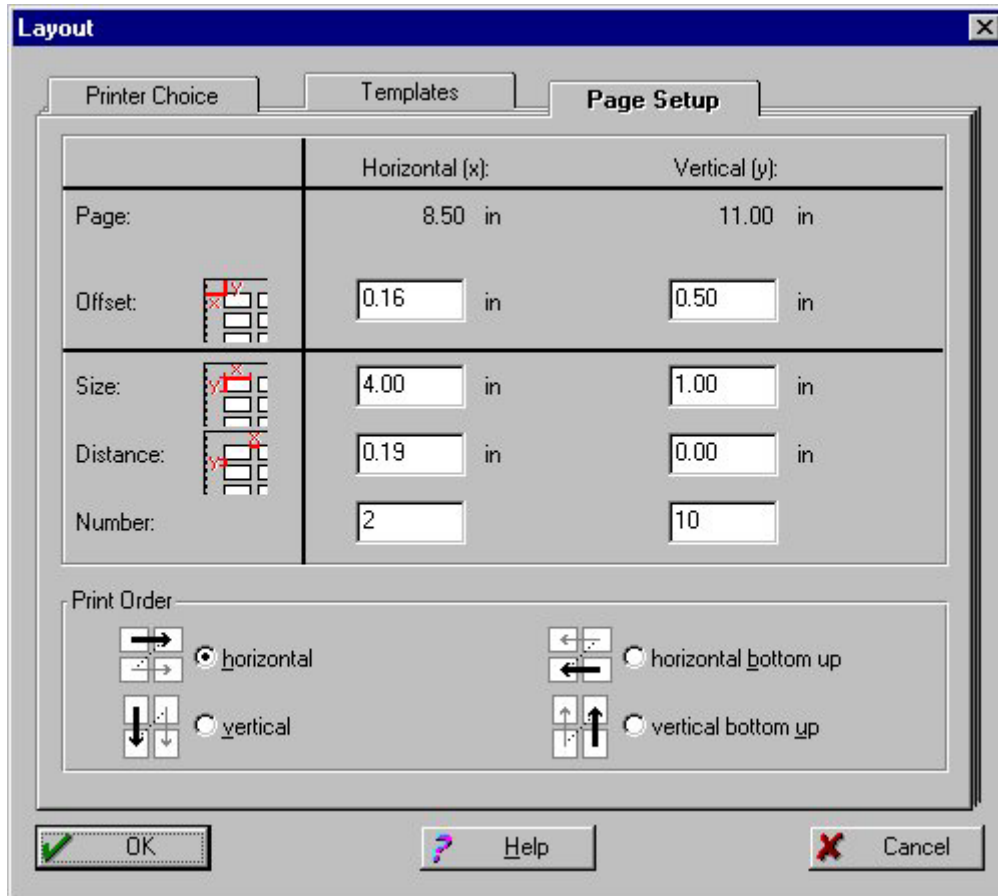
A VIEW of the "Choose Start Position" window, showing that the Print Order will start from the top-left and proceed printing to the right side of the sheet. You can **CHOOSE** where on the sheet the printing is to begin - by clicking on the label you want to start at.



I have found that the best method of Print Order is always to have the SELECTION "start" at the bottom-right and proceed UP the sheet! This is called "**Horizontal Bottom Up**".

As can be seen in the next VIEW, one of the selections - when you are "designing" a label - is to have the printing "Horizontal Bottom Up". To change the printing pattern from "Horizontal" to "Horizontal Bottom Up", go into the TOOLS, DESIGN LABELS, menu and bring up your label file of choice. Then go to PROJECT, PAGE SETUP menu. Choose Horizontal Bottom Up instead of Horizontal. Then SAVE the file. For this one file, your printing will always start at the bottom of the sheet and proceed up the sheet.

Note: you can still SELECT where on the sheet the printing is to begin - by using the SELECT button on the "Print Option" window.



Use my callsign on QSL cards

When using the designer module, users may wish to place their own callsign on the label or card. There are several ways to obtain your callsign and place it on the card or label.

1. You could place a text field on the label or card in the designer and simply enter your callsign as the text. Using this method, the callsign will be "fixed" at whatever you type without regard to any database fields in DXbase.

2. You could place a variable field on the label or card in the designer. Using a variable has the advantage of letting the label or card automatically change the callsign that will appear based on what you have entered into user options. To use this method, select the variable "mycall" from the list of variables and drag it to the label or card. The value that will actually appear on your label or card will be whatever callsign you have entered in the user options under Tools | Personal Options | Operator tab callsign field. The callsign that would appear on all labels or cards you print will be whatever callsign is entered here.
3. This method is a variation of option 2. In the QSO log of DXbase, there is a field called Operator. This field is automatically populated when you log a QSO. The value that is put in this field is whatever you have entered as your callsign in the General User Option tab. Some operators change callsigns but keep all their QSOs in one QSO database. However, the operator callsign reflects which callsign they actually used when they made a QSO. You can use this callsign value on your card or label by selecting the variable "operator" and drag this to your label or card. Using this method, the callsign that will appear on your card or label will be whatever callsign is in the operator field of the QSO log for each label or card that you print.

Auto mark a QSO for a label

Some users may want to avoid having to manually click the save QSO label ICON for each QSO that they log. For them, they already know that they will want to have a QSO label for each new QSO that they log. If this situation applies to you, DXbase provides a convenient method to accomplish this. In the QSO log, there is a field called "Flags". When looking at this field in the log, it will appear to be blank; however, if you click in the field, a drop down box appears that contains a checkbox for YL, QRP, User1, and User2. You can use the User1 and User2 boxes to identify QSOs that should have a QSO label. By using one or both of these fields, you can then use the Selection Wizard to automatically create a QSO label for all QSOs that have either the User1 or User2 fields set. Afterwards, you can erase the checkmarks in all User1 and User2 fields. In addition, there is a user option under the log tab where you can have the User1 or User2 fields automatically checked each time you log a new QSO. If you want to use this technique, the following steps could be used:

1. To have DXbase automatically mark the User1 or User2 field each time you log a new QSO, place a check mark in the User1 or User2 box located in user options under the log tab.
2. Log QSOs as you normally would. Each time you log a QSO, the User1 or User2 box in the Flags field will be automatically checked.
3. When you are ready to fill the pending QSO label database with all marked QSOs for a label, open the **Selection Wizard**, choose Labels as your output type, remove the test-only check, click the QSO Filters button and place a check in the User1 or User2 box and close this window. Click the start button. DXbase will now examine each QSO record and if the User1 or User2 fields are checked in the QSO record, a QSO label record will be automatically created.
4. To print the labels, follow the standard procedure for opening the User Designed Label module.
5. Use the Tools | Reset Flags option to **erase the check mark in the User1 or User2 field** of all QSO records. This allows you to start over with a clean slate.
6. If at any time, you decide that you don't want the User1 or User2 fields in the QSO record automatically marked, simply open User options under the log tab and remove the check from the User1 and User2 boxes.

You may have found other uses for the User1 and User2 fields in the QSO log, if that is the case, you may want to consider the impact of using this approach for automatically marking QSOs for a label in case it would conflict with your other uses for these flags.

Logging

Callsign Notes

There are two different places for storing notes in DXbase. These operate differently as follows:

Notes for Each QSO Record

These are notes that are part of each individual QSO record. The Notes field of the QSO record is where you populate this kind of remark or note. Entries that are made in the QSO notes field do NOT appear in the Callsign Notes window. They will only appear when you view that particular QSO record. You should use the QSO notes field for comments that only pertain to that particular QSO. For example, “It was raining during this QSO.

Notes for Each Callsign

These are notes that apply to more than just a particular QSO. They are comments that you might want to see whenever you have a QSO with this station. These notes are stored in a special Notes database and will be displayed in the Summary Window whenever this callsign appears in a current QSO record, or an incoming packet spot for this callsign is received. These notes are entered into the Summary Window notes section as described below. You might use this option for comments such as, operator went to my college, or his XYL is “Mary.

Callsign Notes Description

DXbase maintains a notes database that stores information that is associated with a unique callsign. If notes for a callsign have previously been stored, they will be automatically displayed whenever the following activities are performed:

- ▶ Click on a QSO record in the log
- ▶ Type the callsign of a new QSO entry in the QSO Log and press tab key
- ▶ Click on a DX packet spot
- ▶ Enter a callsign in the callsign field of the Summary Window and click the Find ICON
- ▶ A DX packet spot is received and **auto display** screen updates is turned on

Summary

SPath 89.8 Distance 32.7 Sunrise 10:56
 LPath 269.8 Local Time 09:26 Sunset 00:29

HF-COUNTRY [USA GEORGIA] Lock

LAT +34.10 LON +84.51 Callsign AA4LU

	10	12	15	17	20	30	40	60	80	160	6	2
CW	C	*	*	*	C	*	C	*	*	C	*	*
Phone	C	*	C	*	C	*	C	*	C	*	*	*
RTTY	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
Digital	*	*	*	*	W	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

Test notes for DXbase made by me.

USA GEORGIA K

Caution: If you have activated the VHF Packet or Internet interface and have the automatic screen update feature turned on, click the **“Lock”** button before you begin making any changes or additions. This will prevent any other processes from interfering while you are making changes. Otherwise, the information that you type could be erased by an incoming packet spot. After you have completed your changes and saved them, click the **“Lock”** button again to reactive automatic screen updates for this window.

ADD New Notes

Click in the callsign field of the Summary Window and enter the callsign. Usually the callsign field will be pre-populated with the current callsign from your QSO log or from the last DX spot received. Enter your notes. Select RECORD/UPDATE from the application menu, or click the Save Record ICON. If an existing record is displayed, you can overwrite the callsign with a new callsign and click the Save Record ICON. In this case, DXbase will ask you if you want to change the previous record’s callsign to the new one, or if you want to create a new record with the new callsign.

Change Existing Notes

Overtype the existing notes with your changes. Or, if you are adding additional notes to what already exists, simply position your cursor at the end of the existing text and enter the additional notes. Select RECORD/UPDATE from the application menu, or click the Save Record ICON.

Delete Notes

Click in the Notes View to make it have the focus. Select RECORD/DELETE from the application menu. Caution: A record must be displayed in the note view before you can execute a delete.

Find Notes

Enter the callsign that you wish to find and click the Find ICON on the application toolbar. If notes exist, they will be displayed; the fields will be empty if a record is not found.

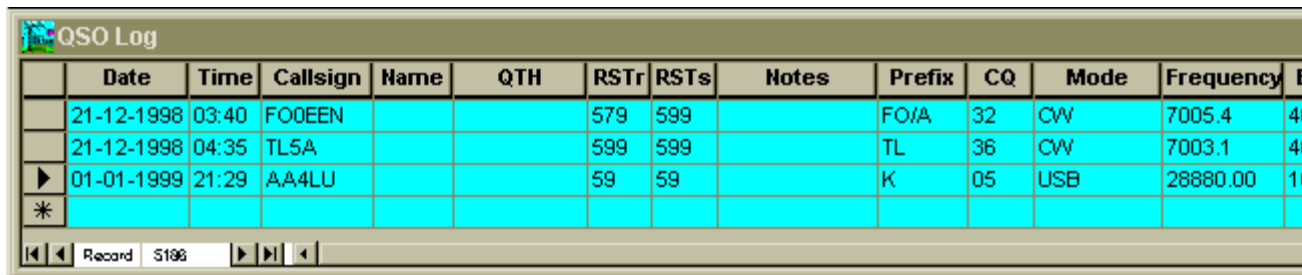
General Logging Procedures

The first step in preparing DXbase for logging is to ensure that you set the **User Log Options** with the default values that you wish to have assigned when you log a QSO record. There is virtually no limit to the number of QSO records that are supported unless of course you run out of hard disk space! The default sort index is Date and Time.

There are three rules that you must remember to follow when adding or changing entries:

1. Enter the callsign first and always press the tab key or enter key to leave the callsign field. If you are entering old QSOs, you should enter the date and time first, then enter the callsign, then press the tab key and make any desired modifications to the values that have been automatically populated. Remember that DXbase user options provide two different ways for how it **processes the date/time**. Be sure you have set this option correctly before logging QSOs. By following this convention, you will insure that DXbase populates the other fields in the record with default values. If you are entering a record for a date that is not the current date, then enter the date and time first. Then enter the callsign and exit the callsign field with the tab key or enter key. After **default values** are populated, you can then click in any of the fields and make modifications before you save the record.
2. If you enter a callsign, and then click on another record, click the save ICON, or otherwise cause the record to be saved without pressing the tab button, DXbase will automatically populate default values first and immediately save the record.
3. Always save your changes by either clicking some other QSO record, or by selecting RECORD/UPDATE from the application menu. You can also click the Save Record ICON on the toolbar.
4. Duplicate QSO records are not permitted. A duplicate QSO is defined as one that contains the exact same callsign, date, time, mode, and band as some other QSO already in the QSO database.

Note: There are many additional QSO fields that are not shown in this display.



The screenshot shows the 'QSO Log' application window. It contains a table with the following columns: Date, Time, Callsign, Name, QTH, RSTr, RSTs, Notes, Prefix, CQ, Mode, Frequency, and Band. The table has four rows of data. The first row is highlighted in blue. Below the table is a status bar with navigation buttons (left arrow, right arrow, first, last, search) and a text field showing 'Record 5196'.

	Date	Time	Callsign	Name	QTH	RSTr	RSTs	Notes	Prefix	CQ	Mode	Frequency	Band
	21-12-1998	03:40	FO0EEN			579	599		FO/A	32	CW	7005.4	40m
	21-12-1998	04:35	TL5A			599	599		TL	36	CW	7003.1	40m
▶	01-01-1999	21:29	AA4LU			59	59		K	05	USB	28880.00	10m
*													

- ▶ Click the left arrow to move up one record
- ▶ Click the right arrow to move down one record
- ▶ Click the left arrow with a vertical bar to move to the beginning of the log
- ▶ Click the right arrow with a vertical bar to move to the end of the log
- ▶ The record number of the current record is displayed on the log status bar
- ▶ Click the column header button to sort the log by that column

- ▶ Click inside one of the fields in a record to make that record current and to update statistics windows
- ▶ Click the row button to the left of a QSO record to highlight the entire record to prepare for a deletion.
- ▶ After changing a field, if you click in another record, your changes are automatically updated and saved.
- ▶ If you make changes or additions and fail to save the record, your changes will be discarded and not saved.
- ▶ Press the ESC key to cancel an operation and return the record to its original condition.

QSO Fields

Only the callsign field **requires** keyboard input. After entering a callsign, if you click the Save ICON, QSO defaults will be automatically populated for all blank fields and the record will be saved. If you wish to review the defaults assigned or if you want to modify any other fields before saving the record, you **must** press the tab or enter key after entering a callsign.

Most fields contain drop down combo boxes that hold all of the valid entries. To select an entry, click the button in the field and then scroll through the drop down list to the entry you want, click on the entry and it will be populated into the field. Many fields contain check boxes that simply require that you click in the box to either check or uncheck the field. The callsign, frequency, RSTs, RSTr, and date fields require that you type in the fields; however, they are generally populated with default values and will not usually need to be modified.

QSO Notes

There are two types of notes supported in DXbase.

1. The notes field in the QSO record provides a means for entering comments that pertain to that specific QSO record. The only place that this note will appear is in the QSO record where they were entered.
2. The **notes view** provides a means for notes that are not related to a specific QSO record but instead pertain to the callsign of a station. Anytime you log a QSO record, DXbase will search its notes database and if notes exist for that callsign, they will be displayed in the Summary Window in the lower right corner portion of this window.

Hide or Resize Fields

All QSO fields except the callsign field can be **hidden**. You can also resize fields. For both cases you resize or hide a column by placing your cursor on the vertical grid line on the right side of the field and while holding down the left mouse button drag the column to the left. If you wish to unhide a field, click the right mouse button anywhere inside the QSO Log and choose the unhide option.

Scrolling Records

DXbase uses cache memory for storing QSO records. Each time you run the application, this cache is filled with only a small number of records. Each time you drag the vertical scroll bar to the bottom, the next group of records will be loaded into memory and the vertical scrollbar will be automatically repositioned to the relative position of the database records just read. If you are trying to scroll to the end of the log, you will have to repeatedly drag the vertical scroll bar until all of the records have been accessed at least once by cache memory.

A better approach to get to the end of the log is to click the Last Record button located on the QSO horizontal status bar to the left of the horizontal scroll bar. This will automatically take you to the last record and update the cache memory with the total record count. Once you have been to the last record, scroll bars are automatically adjusted to accurately position you from beginning to end of the log. If you change the sort index of the log by clicking on any of the column header buttons, you will again have to repeat this process.

Depending upon the sort index in use, when you click the vertical scrollbar, you will see a small window appear. This window will either contain the value of the Date field or the callsign field of the first visible record that will be present when you release the vertical scrollbar. The horizontal scrollbar also displays a small window that contains the first column title that will be visible when you release the horizontal scrollbar.

Population of Date/Time

The date and time fields in the QSO log can be populated in several ways depending upon how you have configured User Options:

1. The Date Selection entries in User Options under the "Log" tab will direct DXbase to either use the current system date and time in UTC, or, use the last date and time that was logged during this session of DXbase. If you are entering "old QSOs, you should set this option to use the last date/time logged. If you are logging QSOs as you make them on the air, you should set this option to use current system date/time.
2. As you use DXbase, there may be times when you enter a QSO, but you do not actually save it because you are still waiting to work the station. DXbase handles this method of logging with the [User Option](#) called "Change Date/Time when saving QSO. If you have this option turned on, then regardless of what date and time values are displayed in your QSO record, DXbase will automatically change them to the current system date and time at the moment you save the record. If you are logging "old QSO records, you should turn this option off.

QSO Log Field Description

In an effort to accommodate a variety of needs, DXbase contains a large number of QSO log fields. Some of these are required, but many are optional.

Date - This is a required field. It can be auto populated based on your system clock, the last date logged, or direct entry. Entry format is controlled by user options.

Time - This is a required field. It can be auto populated based on your system clock, the last time logged, or direct entry.

Call - This is a required field. It can be auto populated based on an incoming packet spot, or by direct entry.

Name - This is an optional field. It can be auto populated from a CDROM address database, or by direct entry, or auto populated based on a previous QSO that contains data in the name field.

QTH - This is an optional field. Any data can be entered into this field.

RSTr - This is a required field. It represents the signal report you received. It will be auto populated based on the mode.

RSTs - This is a required field. It represents the signal report you sent. It will be auto populated based on the mode.

Notes - This is an optional field. Enter any remarks that pertain to this specific QSO. DXbase will auto populate with field with the QSX frequency retrieved from some HF radios if the radio is in split mode. On some radios this is not possible.

Prefix - This is a required field. It identifies the primary or standard country prefix for the QSO. It is auto populated based on the contents of your prefix databases. Choose from the drop down list to modify this value.

CQ - This is a required field. It represents the CQ zone. It will be auto populated based on your prefix databases. If required, choose from the drop down list. A right mouse option allows recalculating the zone if you have changed the entry in the prefix field.

ITU - This is a required field. It represents the ITU zone. It will be auto populated based on your prefix databases. If required, choose from the drop down list. A right mouse option allows recalculating the zone if you have changed the entry in the prefix field.

Mode - This is a required field. It can be auto populated based on an interface with an HF radio, user options, or the last mode logged. Choose from the available choices in the drop down list.

Frequency - This is an optional field. It will be auto populated for some HF radio interfaces. Beware that DXbase uses the Band field for all statistics calculations and awards generation. The frequency field is not used for internal calculations.

Band - This is a required field. It can be auto populated based on an interface with an HF radio, user options, or the last band logged. Choose from the available choices in the drop down list.

WPX - This field is auto populated by DXbase. It represents the prefix used for the WPX award.

State - This is an optional field. It can be auto populated based on past QSO information with this station or if available on a CDROM address database interface. It can only contain entries from the drop down list for US States.

County - This is an optional field. If the QSO prefix indicates USA, then this field will be available for use. Choose from the entries in the drop down list.

IOTA - This is an optional field. Use the drop down list to select the IOTA.

GRID - This is an optional field. Enter the Grid Square. Note that the field allows up to six characters. If you elect to use six characters, DXbase will treat this as a different grid square as compared to a four-character entry. In most current awards, only four characters are used. You should NOT mix four-character and six character grids since they will be handled as if they are different.

Ten-Ten - This is an optional field. Enter the distant station's Ten-ten number.

Special 1 and Special 2 - These are optional fields. You can enter up to ten alpha/number values in these fields. The content of these fields is available for filtering and awards creation. These fields cannot be globally erased. These might be used for keeping up with special user defined award information. Review the Award section of this help file to acquaint yourself with how this field can be used and then decide how to best take advantage of its use for your purposes. The field names cannot be changed.

CFM - This is a required field. Click in this field and a drop down list will appear. It can be auto populated based on user options. It is used to identify QSO records that are confirmed. Card means that you received a QSL card. LOTW means that your QSO is confirmed in the ARRL's Logbook of the World database. Both means that you have both a QSL card and also a confirmation in the Logbook of the World.

QSLS - This is an optional field. Click in this field and a drop down list will appear. It is used to identify QSO records for which you have sent a confirmation. Card means that you have sent a QSL card. LOTW means that you have uploaded the QSO information to the ARRL's Logbook of the World database. Both means that you sent a card and you have uploaded the QSO information.

QSL Sent - This is an optional field. It is used to identify that a QSL card was sent and the date that it was sent.

QSL Via - This is a required field. It is used to identify the method used (or planned to be used) for sending a QSL card. DXbase will auto populate this field based on user options.

Route - This is a required field. It is used to identify the DXbase manager route for this QSO. Since some stations have had different QSL routes, this provides the means to select the specific route. It is auto populated with a default value of 1 that means the first route in the manager mapping database if any exists.

Valid - This is a required field. It identifies if this QSO is valid for DXCC purposes for the mixed and mode award categories. It is auto populated based on some rules such as maritime mobile is not valid and QSOs prior to 1975 are not valid for the CW award.

AWARD - This is an optional field. It contains a drop down list of check box fields to indicate what awards this QSO has been credited for. Place a check mark next to each award that this QSO was submitted and credited for. Options include DXCC, WAZ, WPX, VUCC, IOTA, Spec1, Spec2, 10/10, and USACA.

SELECT - This is an optional field. It contains a drop down list of check boxes and is used to tell DXbase that you want this QSO to be selected as first choice when an award generation is processed by DXbase. Note that even if you place a check mark next to a particular award, the QSO will only be used if it is needed to meet the criteria for the award that is being generated. If some other QSO already has been marked as credited for this award, the entry here will be ignored. Place a check mark next to the awards for which you want this QSO to be selected. Options include DXCC, WAZ, WPX, VUCC, IOTA, Spec1, Spec2, 10/10 and USACA.

Flags - This is a multiple selection field. Click in the field and use the drop down list to mark the following:

YL

QRP

User1

User2

Note: User 1 and User 2 are provided for users to be able to mark particular QSO records for their own purposes. These fields are available as filter criteria in many other DXbase modules. As an example, you may wish to uniquely mark all QSOs with a club member. You could use one of these fields to accomplish this and then be able to produce special reports and awards based on this field. (Just an example). DXbase does provide a means for erasing the check marks globally in all User 1 and User 2 fields so that you can reuse them differently later if you like.

Satellite - This is a required field. It is used to identify the name of the satellite that was used to make this QSO. DXbase will automatically populate this field based on user options.

QSL# - This field is optional. It is intended for use in being able to match a QSO record with a physical QSL card. You could assign each QSL card a unique number that you write onto the card. Then, for that QSO record, enter the number that you assigned. This would allow you to file your QSL cards in numerical order and be able to easily identify the card based on your log. This field is also used by the DXCC Award module to allow DXbase to place multiple QSOs for the same card in the appropriate place on your **DXCC submission QSO** form.

REF# - This is a read only field. It cannot be changed and is automatically assigned by DXbase for each record added. It is used by DXbase to uniquely identify each QSO record.

Power – This field is used to identify your transmitter output power. It is automatically populated with the value stored in the User Options Log tab.

QSL Date Received – This optional field is used to identify the date that a QSL card was received. It is automatically set to the current date whenever you set the CFM field for QSL card.

Operator Call – This field is used to identify the callsign that was used to make this QSO. It is auto populated based on user options in the General user tab. Only callsigns that have been registered can be used in this field.

LOTWREC – This field is used to identify the date that the ARRL's LoTW database shows that you received a matching confirmation for this QSO. This field is automatically populated when you import an LoTW ADIF file into your database.

ENTIME - this is an optional field that lets you record the ending time of the QSO. To populate this field, you can manually enter the time, or, you can click the right mouse button and select the "Set QSO end time menu item. The end time will be populated for whatever QSO record you clicked on when you selected the right mouse menu. Additionally, the end time is automatically at the time when you save a QSO record.

PROPMODE – This is an optional field that gives you a place to enter special mode info such as SCATTER, EME, etc... It is a free form field and is not validated.

CDROM Logging Exceptions

Although DXbase provides an interface to third-party CDROMs, there are situations where data cannot be used.

1. When logging a QSO, DXbase will populate the name field only if data for the name is present in the CDROM record for that callsign.
2. When logging a QSO, DXbase will populate the US County if one is present in the CDROM record for that callsign. AND, the entry from the CDROM must be correctly spelled so that it is consistent with the county data contained in DXbase. If the county returned by the CDROM is not present in the DXbase reference data county table, the county will not be used from the CDROM. Generally, DXbase cannot use the county information for the State of Alaska because most CDROMs contain the borough and return that information as the county. Alaska only has four regions and does not have counties. When logging a QSO with Alaska, it will be necessary for the user to select from one of the four regions in the county field of the QSO if they want to track counties.
3. When logging a QSO, DXbase will populate the US State if one is present in the CDROM record for that callsign. If the State abbreviation returned is not valid as a US State in the DXbase reference database State table, it will not be used.
4. When logging a QSO, DXbase will populate the GRID field if one is present in the CDROM record for that callsign, or if the latitude and longitude are present from the CDROM the grid will be computed and populated into the QSO record.
5. When logging a QSO, DXbase will populate the QTH field if the CDROM returns a field explicitly named city. If the CDROM does not return a field named city with data, DXbase will leave the QTH field empty.

Adding QSO Records

Manually Entering A QSO record

Scroll to the end of the QSO Log and enter the data to be logged. DXbase can populate all fields in the log except the callsign field with default values. You can overwrite or change any of the default values prior to saving the record. Default values will only be generated if you click in the callsign field, enter the callsign, and press the Tab or Enter key. ***If you do not press the Tab or Enter key to leave the callsign field, but instead click on another field, default values will not be generated for any of the fields and you will have to enter data into all required fields yourself.***

You can position the QSO Window to the last empty row in two ways:

1. Use the scroll bar and scroll to the end of the log where you will see an empty row.
2. Click the "Last Record button on the QSO Window or Select the Edit/Last record menu choice when the QSO Window has the focus.

Click the left most position in the callsign field of the empty QSO record and type in the callsign, then press the TAB key. Pressing the TAB key invokes DXbase logic which automatically populates all of the fields in the log with the default values selected in Options AND automatic lookup of other fields such as the CQ zone, Date, Time, etc.. If you wish to change any of the data populated by DXbase, simply position your cursor in the field to be changed and click your left mouse button. Overtyping the field with the data. NOTE: Many QSO fields will automatically provide a drop down list of valid entries. Simply click on the desired entry and your choice will be automatically inserted into the field.

To save a new QSO record, you can select RECORD/Update from the main menu, or, simply click on any other record in the QSO log. Either method will cause DXbase to save this newly entered QSO record. You can also click the Save ICON.

When a new QSO record is saved, DXbase automatically updates internal statistics tables to reflect this entry. Your DXCC, WAZ, IOTA, WPX, GRID and WAS statistics for worked/confirmed will now include data from the new QSO record.

Cancel or Undo an entry

To cancel adding a record and erase all fields that were entered for the new record, choose RECORD/CANCEL from the application menu. You cannot cancel an entry after you have saved the record. You must delete a record once it has been saved.

To undo changes to an individual field in a record, click the Undo Icon on the main toolbar.

Logging DX Spots

DXbase provides several ways to populate the information from a DX spot into your QSO log.

1. From the VHF packet window, Internet packet window, or the DX Info spots tab window, right click on the DX spot that you wish to log. Select the “Log current entry menu choice from the pop up menu that appears.
2. Click the VHF or Internet “Log current entry ICON and the last DX spot received will be logged.
3. In the VHF packet window, or Internet packet window left click your mouse on the DX spot that you wish to log and then click the Log DX spot ICON on the VHF or Internet packet toolbar. This is the ICON that has the pencil on it. Notice that red arrows are for VHF packet and blue arrows are for Internet packet. Be careful with this option because if a new DX spot arrives before you click the “log DX spot ICON, the new DX spot info will be logged and not the entry that you left clicked. In periods of heavy packet activity, option 1 will be safer.



Change or Delete QSO Records

Edit Existing Record

Scroll to the record you wish to change and click in the field(s) you wish to change, overtype the field(s) you want to change with the new values, save your changes by either clicking on another record, or from the application menu choose RECORD/UPDATE. You can also click the Save Record ICON.

Cancel or Undo an entry

To cancel all changes to an entire record before it has been saved, choose RECORD/CANCEL from the application menu. You can also press the ESC key if the QSO log window has the focus. You cannot cancel an entry after you have saved the record. You must edit the record again and make the necessary corrections or delete the record.

To undo changes to an individual field in a record, click the Undo Icon on the main toolbar.

Delete Existing Record

Scroll to the record you wish to delete, click the row button to the left of the record. The record will become highlighted. From the application menu, choose RECORD/DELETE. You cannot cancel or undo a deletion once you have executed the delete command. Do not use the delete key when you want to delete an entire record. The delete key will only erase the contents of the current field in the record.

Updating Confirmed/submitted fields

There are two ways to change the status of confirmed or submitted for DXCC and WAZ.

The recommended and easiest method is to use the [Previous QSO](#) dialog to locate and display all records that meet the criteria that you need to change. Once displayed, you can change the status of many fields directly in this dialog.

The second way is to change the status directly in the QSO log. To accomplish this, you would first find the record you wish to change, overtype the fields to be changed, and then save the changes. If you have a lot of records to change, this might be cumbersome since you first have to find each different record to change.

Examples:

► You have just received a stack of cards from the QSL bureau and now you want to change the records in your log to show that these are confirmed.

Use the Previous QSO dialog, enter the callsign and press the enter key, or click FIND. Click the CFM button, or place a check mark in the CFM column and then press SAVE. To save a record, click on another record, or, click the save button.

► You worked a station many times during a DX pedition, but now it was reported by the ARRL that QSOs with this station are not valid for DXCC. Therefore, you want to set all of these QSOs as not valid.

Use the Previous QSO dialog, enter the callsign and press the enter key or click FIND. Check the Not Valid for DXCC column for each of these QSOs. Save your change for each record that you modify.

Note: In the examples above, you could have also made the changes directly in the QSO log, but you would have to find each QSO separately.

Advantage or Disadvantage of Previous QSO option

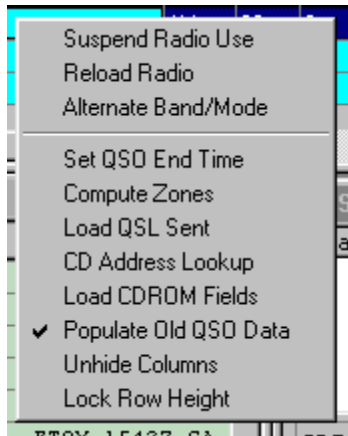
The Previous QSO module provides the benefit of some very simplified and fast methods for making normal updates to QSO records. It's easy to display groups of records for a particular callsign, prefix, IOTA, etc. There are buttons which speed up the process of replying to QSL cards, storing a label, and so forth.

The disadvantage is that only certain QSO fields can be modified from the Previous QSO module. For example, you cannot change the country prefix, IOTA, State. If you will need to change these fields you will have to make the changes directly in the QSO log.

In short, the Previous QSO module was intended to offer a convenient method for dealing with some specific needs. It was not intended to be a duplicate of all the functionality available directly in the QSO log.

QSO Log Pop-up Menu

If you click the right mouse button in any field within the QSO log, a popup menu will appear. In some cases, if the field in which you click is already in the edit mode, the right mouse may not have any effect. If this occurs, click in a different field in the same record.



Suspend Radio Use

This is a toggle option that allows you to temporarily disable retrieving the frequency/mode from an HF radio. A check mark appears to the left of this menu item to identify that radio retrieval is suspended or disabled. To reinstate radio retrieval, click this option and the check mark will be removed. When retrieval of HF radio data is suspended, user option default values from the log tab in user options will be used. This feature may be helpful in the case where you have a second radio for VHF operation and wish to log a QSO made on this radio. By establishing the VHF default values in user options, you can still achieve some level of automatic logging of frequency/mode even though the radio is not interfaced to DXbase.

Alternate Defaults

This option allows you to over ride the values that are auto populated from your HF radio, user options, or previous QSO logged for the band and mode values. By clicking this option, DXbase will automatically overwrite the band and mode fields of the current record with the defaults that were entered in User Options for Alternate Defaults in the log tab.

Reload Radio

This option will only work if the QSO record is in edit mode. If you are adding or changing a record, edit mode is denoted by the appearance of a pencil ICON in the row header button field. If you choose this option, DXbase will query your HF radio for the current setting of VFOa and overwrite whatever may already appear in the frequency field with the new frequency obtained. If the **radio fails to respond**, the frequency field is left unchanged.

This feature may be useful for those cases where you have already loaded information into the QSO log but have not yet saved the record because you have not actually worked the station.

During the course of trying to work station, he may QSY to a frequency different than what was originally populated into the frequency field.

Executing this option will have no effect on any other fields in the current record. If the new frequency is for a different band or mode, you will have to overtype those fields and change them manually. Or, you could simply cancel the entire entry and log the station again.

Set QSO END Time

This option populates the current system time into the ENDTIME field. Note that at the time you save a QSO record, the end time will be automatically populated based on the system clock at the time you save the QSO.

Unhide Columns

This option displays a dialog which allows you to select any QSO fields that you want to **unhide** . If you select a QSO field that is not hidden, the action will have no effect.

Compute Zones

This option is available only if the QSO record is being edited. Use this option when you change the prefix that is auto populated by DXbase and you want DXbase to compute the CQ and ITU values based on the new prefix that you selected. Select this option and DXbase will populate the new CQ and ITU zone values. If the QSO record is NOT in edit mode, this option will have no effect.

CD Address Lookup

This option causes DXbase to perform an address lookup on your optional CDROM and display the results in the QSL Info Window. The callsign that will be used in the lookup is the one from the record that you clicked in when you selected the right mouse button.

Load QSL Sent

Selecting this option results in DXbase populating the current system date into the QSL Date Sent field. If an entry already exists in this field, it will be overwritten with the current date.

Load CDROM Fields

Selecting this option results in DXbase accessing your third-party address database and if an entry is found for the callsign of the QSO record, the information will be populated into the appropriate QSO fields that are empty for which data was found in the address record found. Remember to save the record after new information has been populated.

Populate Old QSO Data

This option auto populates selected fields in your log based on what was entered in a previous QSO with the same station. Think of this as a way to bring forward the last values that were entered for this station for fields like the US State, US County, GRID, etc... To toggle this feature on and off, just click the menu item.

Lock Row Height

This option disables resizing the vertical height of a QSO record's row. This helps prevent accidental resizing of the field height.

Searching for QSO Records

To locate a QSO record, you can search on any value in any column. This search is not based on any database indices. Therefore, any value can be located. You can think of this as an “Exact Match and a “Partial Match rolled into one. The more you enter in the “Find What field of the find dialog, the more precise the search will be. The application displays the status of the search in the status bar. This design allows for partial searches in any column. Searches are column specific. Therefore, before you request a search you must click in the column you wish to search. You may want to click the column header that will cause the QSO database to be sorted by that column and simultaneously make that column current for purposes of performing a search.

To begin a search, from the application menu choose RECORD/FIND or if you want to do a find and replace, choose RECORD/REPLACE. Be careful when using the “replace operation. Sometimes the characters you want to replace may appear in parts of the field that you did not expect thus causing some changes to be made that you did not anticipate. We recommend that you avoid using a global replace ALL operation unless you are certain that only the expected changes will occur.

Warning: When using the EDIT/FIND feature, you must click into a record that has already been saved. You cannot begin your search by clicking into the last empty QSO record line. Always click into a valid record field to begin your search.

Example: To search for the first QSO on 20 meters

Click in the band field of a QSO record or click the band column header.

Click the binocular ICON on the application toolbar or choose RECORD/FIND from the application menu.

In the Find dialog box, type 20 as the text to find.

NOTE: the search can be up or down from the current record so select what is appropriate

Start the search.

To search on some other field, simply click in the field you wish to search and repeat the above steps substituting the text you wish to find.

Searching for data that contains a space

Sometimes you may want to search for an entry where your search value contains a space such as when searching in the US County field for DEL NORTE. To locate values that contain a space you

must use a single quote before and after the value you want to find. So, to locate the county named DEL NORTE you would enter 'DEL NORTE' (notice the single quote.

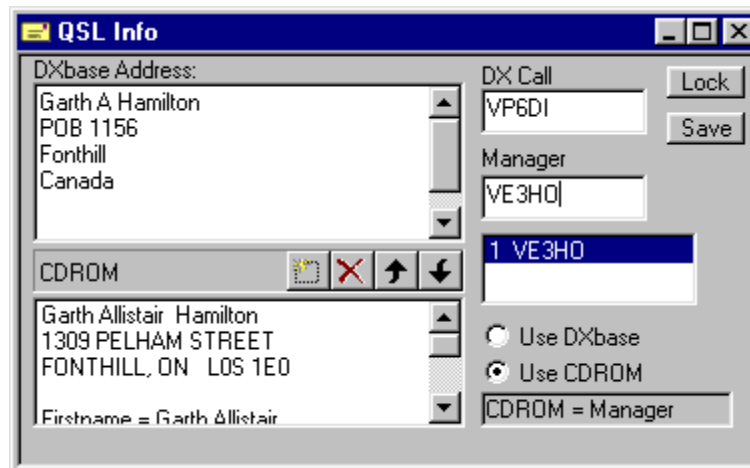
Using wildcard characters

You can use the asterisk (*) wildcard in your search. For example to locate all counties that contain DEL with anything following, you would enter DEL* and this will return for example DEL NORTE.

An alternative method for finding QSO records is to use the [Previous QSO](#) feature.

Adding a Manager while logging

During normal logging, you may wish to add a manager map for a DX station that uses a manager that you already have in your Manager Address database. Or, you may wish to add a new manager address to the database for a station you are working. This can be accomplished directly from the QSL Info window's ADR tab.



The manager address functionality in DXbase uses two different databases. The relationship between these two databases is described in the [Manager Overview](#) . Through this technique, you have a lot of flexibility in how manager address information is identified.

Adding or changing a Manager Address

You can add or change a manager address directly from the General Info Manager tab. Simply fill in the fields or overwrite your changes. Select which address you want saved by clicking either the Use DXbase or the Use CD button. Select from the main menu Record/Update. You can also click the save ICON. Be sure the focus is set to the Manager window when saving a record.

- ▶ Click the “Lock button. This prevents incoming packet spots from overwriting the window while you are typing.
- ▶ Enter address information and Manager callsign. Note: if you wish to change an existing address, you must first find that manager record and then overwrite with your changes.
- ▶ Save your changes by clicking the Save ICON or choose Record/Update..
- ▶ Click the “Lock button to re-enable automatic screen updates.

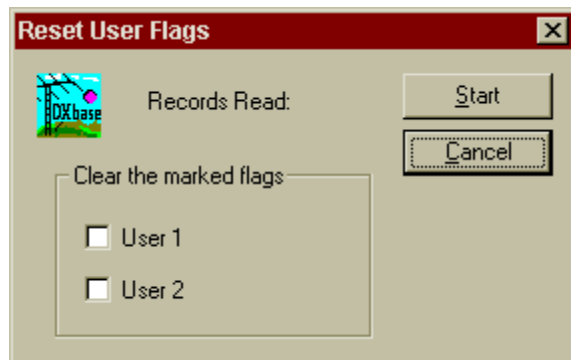
Adding a new Manager Map

- ▶ Click the “Lock button. This prevents incoming packet spots from overwriting the window while you are typing.
- ▶ Enter the DX Call
- ▶ Enter the Manager.
- ▶ From the main application menu, select RECORD/update to save your entry.
- ▶ Click the “Lock button to re-enable automatic screen updates.

Your new entries will now be available for automatic lookups when you click on the appropriate QSO record, or when a DX spot is received, for the DX Call you have mapped.

Reset User Checkbox Flags

DXbase provides two user defined checkbox flags in the QSO database. If it becomes necessary to remove the checkmarks from each QSO record for these fields, you can use this option to clear all records at once.



Place a checkmark in the fields you wish to have cleared, and press the start button.

The end result will be that all QSO records will be modified to remove the check mark from the fields you selected.

Using Alternate Default Option

While in the QSO log, a right mouse menu item called Alternate Default is available. This option can be useful when you have on HF rig interfaced with DXbase and another that is not. You may occasionally make a QSO on the non interfaced radio and wish to log it. By default, the frequency, mode, and band will be retrieved from the radio that is interfaced. To erase the entries that were retrieved, and replace them with alternate settings, use this feature.

If you select the Alternate Default choice, the following will occur:

1. Band will be overwritten with the band entry from **User Options Log tab**.
2. Mode will be overwritten with the mode entry from User Options Log tab.
3. Notes field will be overwritten with the notes entry from User Options Lob tab.
4. Frequency field will be erased.

Note: This option will have no effect unless the QSO record is in edit mode as signified by the pencil ICON being visible in the row button located at the far left of the QSO record.

Auto mark a QSO for a label

Some users may want to avoid having to manually click the save QSO label ICON for each QSO that they log. For them, they already know that they will want to have a QSO label for each new QSO that they log. If this situation applies to you, DXbase provides a convenient method to accomplish this. In the QSO log, there is a field called "Flags". When looking at this field in the log, it will appear to be blank; however, if you click in the field, a drop down box appears that contains a checkbox for YL, QRP, User1, and User2. You can use the User1 and User2 boxes to identify QSOs that should have a QSO label. By using one or both of these fields, you can then use the Selection Wizard to automatically create a QSO label for all QSOs that have either the User1 or User2 fields set. Afterwards, you can erase the checkmarks in all User1 and User2 fields. In addition, there is a user option under the log tab where you can have the User1 or User2 fields automatically checked each time you log a new QSO. If you want to use this technique, the following steps could be used:

7. To have DXbase automatically mark the User1 or User2 field each time you log a new QSO, place a check mark in the User1 or User2 box located in user options under the log tab.
8. Log QSOs as you normally would. Each time you log a QSO, the User1 or User2 box in the Flags field will be automatically checked.
9. When you are ready to fill the pending QSO label database with all marked QSOs for a label, open the **Selection Wizard**, choose Labels as your output type, remove the test-only check, click the QSO Filters button and place a check in the User1 or User2 box and close this window. Click the start

button. DXbase will now examine each QSO record and if the User1 or User2 fields are checked in the QSO record, a QSO label record will be automatically created.

10. To print the labels, follow the standard procedure for opening the User Designed Label module.
11. Use the Tools | Reset Flags option to **erase the check mark in the User1 or User2 field** of all QSO records. This allows you to start over with a clean slate.
12. If at any time, you decide that you don't want the User1 or User2 fields in the QSO record automatically marked, simply open User options under the log tab and remove the check from the User1 and User2 boxes.

You may have found other uses for the User1 and User2 fields in the QSO log, if that is the case, you may want to consider the impact of using this approach for automatically marking QSOs for a label in case it would conflict with your other uses for these flags.

Special handling for automatic field population

QSL Via field logic

The QSL Via field value is automatically populated based on the default you have set in User Options Log tab. However, if you have set Bureau as your default, as you log a QSO, DXbase will check the Primary Prefix Table to determine if the country you are logging has a bureau. If it does not, then the QSL via field will be automatically set to "Other instead of your default value of Bureau. Otherwise, the QSL Via field will be autopopulated with whatever value you have set in User Options Log tab.

Logbook of the World

Logbook of the World Overview

The American Radio Relay League (ARRL) has established a project to create a master database that would contain QSO information submitted from amateur stations throughout the world. This project has been named "Logbook of the World. This database is intended to make qualification for ARRL sponsored awards convenient and less expensive since QSL cards would not be required. The database maintained would contain confirmation info and apply that information toward any awards that you apply for.

At the time DXbase 2004 was under development, the LOTW system was undergoing beta testing. There are plans for two different methods for submitting confirmation to the LOTW database. One is by way of what is called a "real time api. In this method, the intention is that you could send a single confirmation directly to the LOTW through a connection via the web. This method was not fully developed as of this writing and is not currently supported.

The second method is by uploading an ADIF file. Through this method, the user would obtain an ADIF file containing the QSOs to be submitted and would feed this ADIF file into software furnished by the ARRL that would perform the submission. The DXbase Wizard has been enhanced to allow exporting to ADIF for this purpose.

For more information about the ARRL's Logbook of the World, please visit the ARRL web site.

Logbook of the World Features

In support of the American Radio Relay League's Logbook of the World system, DXbase provides many convenient features:

1. The CFM field in the log allows you to indicate whether a card was received, whether an LOTW confirmation exists, or both.
2. The QSLS field in the log allows you to indicate whether a card was sent, an LOTW submission was made, or both.
3. The DXbase Wizard allows you to filter records based on the LOTW status of the CFM and QSLS fields.
4. Awards modules allow you to compute an award based on LOTW confirmations, QSL card submissions, or both.
5. When using the DXbase Wizard to export to ADIF, you can specify if you want to have the QSLS field for the LOTW automatically marked to show that the record was submitted to the ARRL's LOTW database.
6. The Previous QSO module allows for a one button click to mark a QSO confirmed for LOTW.

Logbook of the World ADIF Imports

An ADIF file obtained from LoTW must be processed differently than a standard ADIF file. This is because normally when we refer to importing we intend to read in brand new records. But with LoTW, we actually want to read existing records and make updates to them, such as updating the LoTW confirmation field.

DXbase provides this capability in the Non DXB Import utility program that was installed with DXbase. Use the program group and select Non DXB Import from the DXbase group. But, be sure you close DXbase first.

In the Non DXB Import utility there is an import choice for an LoTW ADIF file. Use this option whenever you are importing an ADIF file obtained from LoTW. DXbase will first try to find the

existing QSO record in your database and if found, it will update the record to reflect an LoTW confirmation. It will also update other information such as IOTA, State, County, ITU, and CQ if any of these values are present in your source LoTW ADIF record AND if the value passes DXbase validations for properly formatted data.

If a QSO record cannot be found in your DXbase database, the record will be treated as a new QSO record and will be added to your DXbase database.

Numeric Statistics

Using HF Numeric Statistics

Automatic tracking of numeric statistics for countries worked, confirmed, and not worked is maintained within the DXbase databases. To see numeric statistics, select OUTPUT/HF Numeric Statistics from the application menu. Choose the type of statistics you want from the sub menu choices: Country, CQ zones, IOTA, WPX, States or USACA.

DXCC Statistics

☐ PHONE
 ☐ CW
 ☐ RTTY
 ☐ DIGITAL
 ☐ Dig/RTTY
 ☒ MIXED
 ☐ Confirmed

	WRK		CFM		WRK		CFM		WRK		CFM		WRK		CFM		WRK		CFM	
<input type="radio"/> 2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 10	267	168	180	59	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	282	184	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 12	10	1	19	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	28	3	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 15	285	210	222	109	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	308	241	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 17	7	0	14	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	21	3	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 20	323	292	252	157	0	0	2	1	2	1	0	0	330	305	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 30	0	0	8	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	8	3	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 40	124	103	241	174	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	270	225	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 60	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 80	158	151	30	23	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	172	161	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 160	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input checked="" type="radio"/> ALL	334	312	324	255	0	0	2	1	2	1	0	0	335	319	0	0	0	0	0	0

☐ QRP
 ☐ Satellite
 ☐ YL
 Total Available: 1420 1126

ALL: 0 0 0 0 23 6 337

Excludes Deleted Compute List Print List

1A
1S
3A
4w
9A
BV9
BS7
FO/M
4w
9A
BS7
1A
1S
3A
Double Click an entry to see the associated QSO

The statistics dialog will appear and will contain data based on the last band/mode selection you used. To change the information located in each of the five combo boxes on the right, click the

mode/band combination you want and then click “Compute list. DXbase will recalculate your need list.

After statistics are displayed, you can produce a **General Need List** report by selecting the category and then clicking the Print List button. In the list boxes on the right, you can double click an entry to activate the Previous QSO module. This will display all QSO records that match the entry that was clicked. If you want a print of the numeric statistics information, you can print the statistics screen as follows:

1. Click the title bar of the statistics screen to make sure it has the focus.
2. Hold down the ALT key and then press the Print Screen key on your Keyboard.
3. Open Wordpad by using the Windows Start button and navigate to accessories and choose WordPad.
4. Once Wordpad is open, choose Edit/Paste and your screen image will be pasted into Wordpad.
5. Save the Wordpad file, or print it directly.

Example: To see 20 meter CW need lists, click the 20 m button and the CW button then click the need list button. To see satellite, click the satellite button then click the need list button. To see 80m phone, click the 80m button and the phone button then click the need list button. Repeat this procedure for whatever combinations you wish to see. DXbase will save your last selections and will automatically use them the next time you activate numeric statistics.

DX Challenge information is listed on this screen. But remember that the Challenge Award does NOT allow deleted countries to be counted. So, if you access the HF Statistics module and choose to include Deleted Countries, the numeric results listed for Challenge Award will not be accurate because they will include deleted countries. To see accurate DXCC Challenge numbers you must choose to exclude deleted.

NOTE 1: If you click the YL, Satellite, or QRP categories DXbase will ignore the settings you have for mode and band and will simply calculate YL, Satellite, or QRP based on all band mixed mode.

NOTE 2: QSO records marked as satellite are not included in the band/mode statistics. Satellite QSOs are only calculated under the Satellite category for all band mixed mode.

NOTE 3: Statistics assume that the internal cross reference **tables** are up to date.

Using VHF Numeric Statistics

Automatic tracking of numeric statistics for countries worked, confirmed, and not worked is maintained within the DXbase databases. To see numeric statistics, select OUTPUT/VHF Numeric Statistics from the application menu. Choose the type of statistics you want from the sub menu choices: Grid Squares, Countries, WPX or States.

VHF/UHF Country Statistics

☐ PHONE
 ☐ CW
 ☐ RTTY
 ☐ DIGITAL
 ☒ Dig/RTTY
 ☐ MIXED

	WRK	CFM	WRK	CFM	WRK	CFM	WRK	CFM	WRK	CFM	WRK	CFM
<input type="radio"/> 50	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 70	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 144	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 222	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
<input checked="" type="radio"/> 432	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 902	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 1240	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 2300	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 3300	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 5650	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 10G	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 24G	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 47G	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<input type="radio"/> 75G	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Total Available

☐ Confirmed
☐ Worked/
☐ Not Work
☐ Not Conf
☐ Worked

In the list boxes on the right, you can double click an entry to activate the Previous QSO module that will display all QSO records that match the entry that was clicked.

After statistics are displayed, you can produce a **general need list** report by selecting the category and clicking the Print List button. . If you want a print of the numeric statistics information, you can print the statistics screen as follows:

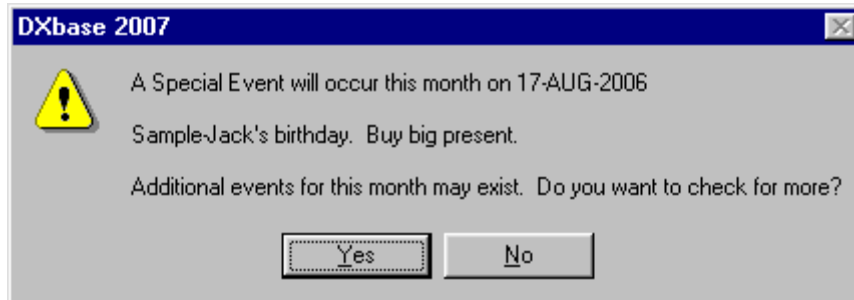
- Click the title bar of the statistics screen to make sure it has the focus.
- Hold down the ALT key and then press the Print Screen key on your Keyboard.
- Open Wordpad by using the Windows Start button and navigate to accessories and choose WordPad.
- Once Wordpad is open, choose Edit/Paste and your screen image will be pasted into Wordpad.
- Save the Wordpad file, or print it directly.

Options

Special Events Notification

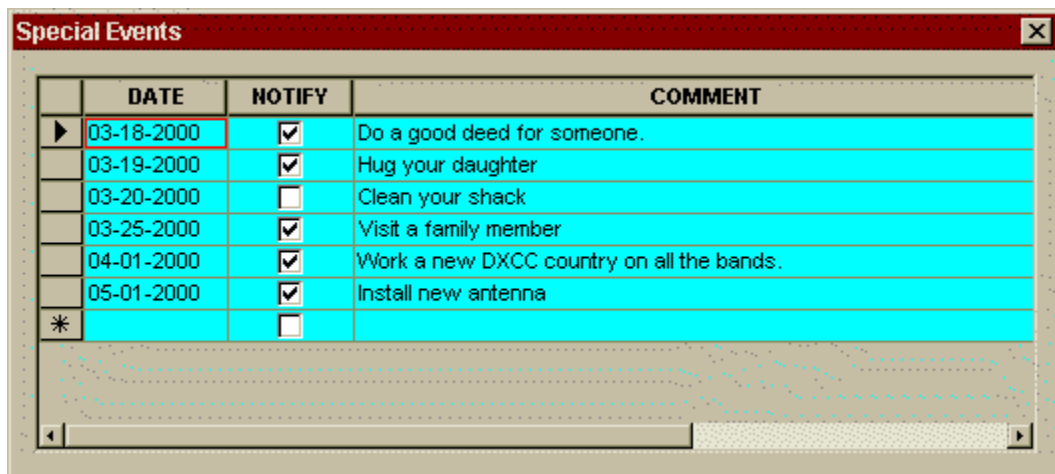
This feature allows you to store the upcoming date and description of any events that you want DXbase to remind you about when the program is started. You could use this to be reminded about upcoming DXpeditions, your wife's birthday, or any other date sensitive event.

At program startup, the software compares the current month based on your system clock and checks your database for any events entered that are scheduled for the current month. If any are found, the following message will be automatically displayed:



Entering Event Information

To enter your event information, choose TOOLS/OPTIONS/Special Events. The following screen will be displayed:



Add Entries

Scroll to the last empty line.

Enter the date of the event.

If you place a check mark in the Notify field, DXbase will notify you about this event each time you start the software if the current month is the same as the month of the event. This option gives you the flexibility to store information about an event without being notified. There is a [master on/off option in User Options](#) that will disable all notifications regardless of the setting of this field.

Enter a description about the event in the comment field.

Click any other record to save the entry, or use the right mouse update record option.

Change Entries

Click on the field you want to change.

Overtyping with your changes.

Click any other record, or use the right mouse update record option.

Delete Entries

Click the left most button on the record you want to delete.

The entire record will become highlighted.

Press the delete key or use the right mouse option delete record.

Personal Data

Personal Data and Callsign

As you print Labels or Lists, DXbase will select the callsign, county, and address information that is used for your personal data from settings that are contained in your database. This information is found on the main menu TOOLS/Personal Options. To modify this information, overtype the necessary fields with your own entries.

The information contained in Personal Options is used for the following:

- ▶ Standard Reports
- ▶ QSO labels and cards
- ▶ Address labels
- ▶ User defined Lists
- ▶ DXCC Award submission
- ▶ WAZ Award submission
- ▶ WAS Award submission

Since this data is stored in your database, you will need to set this information for each different .MDB file that you use with DXbase. This flexibility allows for multiple users in the same family to set their own data. In addition, it allows for each different database to have a different callsign.

New Callsigns

After using DXbase with a particular callsign, you may have occasion to change your callsign. Maybe you obtained a new callsign through the US Vanity callsign process. Whatever the reason, the following process will allow you to change your DXbase software for the new callsign.

NOTE: Prior to being able to use a new callsign in DXbase, the new callsign must be registered. You can request a new registration from the DXbase web site.

Please note that you do not necessarily have to create a new database just because you change callsigns. You may wish to continue to use the same database and change the Opr Call in user options to your new call. This way, past QSOs and new QSOs will share the same database and the Opr Call field of the QSO log will distinguish which callsign was used for that QSO.

This process assumes that you want to keep your existing QSO data and simply change the name of your database:

15. Open User Options General tab and put a check in the "Prompt for database name at startup."
16. Close DXbase.
17. Open Windows Explorer and navigate to your DXbase folder. If you used the default installation, it will be located under Program Files/Scientific Solutions/DXbase xxxx where xxxx is the version number.
18. Copy your existing .MDB file to a new file by clicking on the .mdb filename, use the menu Edit/Copy, then do Edit Paste. On the right side of Windows Explorer, scroll to end of the file list and you will a file called Copy of whatever the filename of your database was. Edit the name to the new name that you want. Be sure to include the .mdb file extension.
19. Close Windows Explorer.
20. Start DXbase and when asked for the Database name, use the selection arrow to select the new database name that you want to use.
21. You can now uncheck the user option from item 1 above.

If you want to start a new empty database for a new callsign, use the DXbase FILE/New Database option to create a new empty database. Perform steps 1, 2, 6, and 7 from above.

Operator

This screen allows for entry of personal data that will be used by DXbase in any of the modules that use your name, callsign, and address. In addition, information contained on this screen will be used for certain fields that are printed on Standard Reports, User defined Reports, and Labels. To access this screen, choose TOOLS/OPTIONS/Personal from the main menu.

Personal Data and Callsign

Operator | DXCC Awards | VUCC

Operator

Name: John Lennox

Address: 736 Cedar Creek Way
Woodstock, GA 30189
USA

US County: Cherokee

My Email: jack@dxbase.com

ARRL Submission Information

Previous Callsigns: WB4GCP

ARRL Expiration Date: 00/00/00

Award Payment

Return DXCC QSL's by: Certified Mail

Award Payment by: Visa/MC

Callsign: AA4LU

Gridsquare: EM34

CQ Zone: 05

ITU Zone: 06

10/10

Country: United States

OK Cancel Help

Enter the appropriate data in each field. Press OK to save the information. We recommend using MM/DD/YY format in the ARRL Expiration Date field. Life members should enter 00/00/00.

The previous Callsigns field is free form. You should enter each previous callsign that will contribute to this DXCC award separated by a comma, e.g., WB4GCP, WN4CED, etc. The Name field represents your name as it will appear on the certificate or labels.

Current Callsign is your present callsign and the one that will appear on the certificate or labels. Gridsquare is used to store your grid locator. Your address should be your return address for the postal address.

DXCC Awards

This screen allows you to record information about DXCC Awards that you may have received. Use of this screen is optional. The information is not used by DXbase for any purpose. It is here just for your convenience. To access this screen, choose TOOLS/OPTIONS/Personal Options from the main menu.

Personal Data and Callsign																																																											
Operator DXCC Awards VUCC																																																											
<div> <div>General Categories</div> <table> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Date Last Submitted</th> <th>Certificate Number</th> </tr> </thead> <tr><td>Mixed</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Phone</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>CW</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>RTTY</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Satellite</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>5BDXCC</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>6 M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>2 M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> </table> </div> <div> <div>Band Categories</div> <table> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Date Last Submitted</th> <th>Certificate Number</th> </tr> </thead> <tr><td>160 M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>80 M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>40 M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>30M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>20M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>17M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>15M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>12M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr><td>10 M</td><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> </table> </div>				Date Last Submitted	Certificate Number	Mixed	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Phone	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	CW	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	RTTY	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Satellite	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	5BDXCC	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	6 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	2 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>		Date Last Submitted	Certificate Number	160 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	80 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	40 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	30M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	20M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	17M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	15M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	12M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	10 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	Date Last Submitted	Certificate Number																																																									
Mixed	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
Phone	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
CW	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
RTTY	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
Satellite	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
5BDXCC	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
6 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
2 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
	Date Last Submitted	Certificate Number																																																									
160 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
80 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
40 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
30M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
20M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
17M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
15M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
12M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
10 M	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																									
<div>OK Cancel Help</div>																																																											

We recommend using the MM/DD/YY format in all date fields. Although these entries are not currently used by DXbase, they may be used in the future. Any future release will expect this date format.

Enter the appropriate data in the fields provided. Click OK to save your entries or cancel to abandon them.

VUCC

This screen is used to save information about any VUCC awards you may have received. It is not used for any purpose within DXbase. It is here simply to offer you a convenient place to record VUCC award information. To access this screen, select Tools/Options/Personal from the main menu.

Personal Data and Callsign

Operator | DXCC Awards | VUCC

	Date Last Submitted	Total Grids		Date Last Submitted	Total Grids
50 MHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	10 GHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
144 MHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	24 GHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
222 MHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	47 GHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
432 MHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	75 GHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
902 MHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	119 GHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
1296 MHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	142 GHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2.3 GHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	241 GHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3.4 GHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Laser	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
5.7 GHz	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Satellite	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

OK Cancel Help

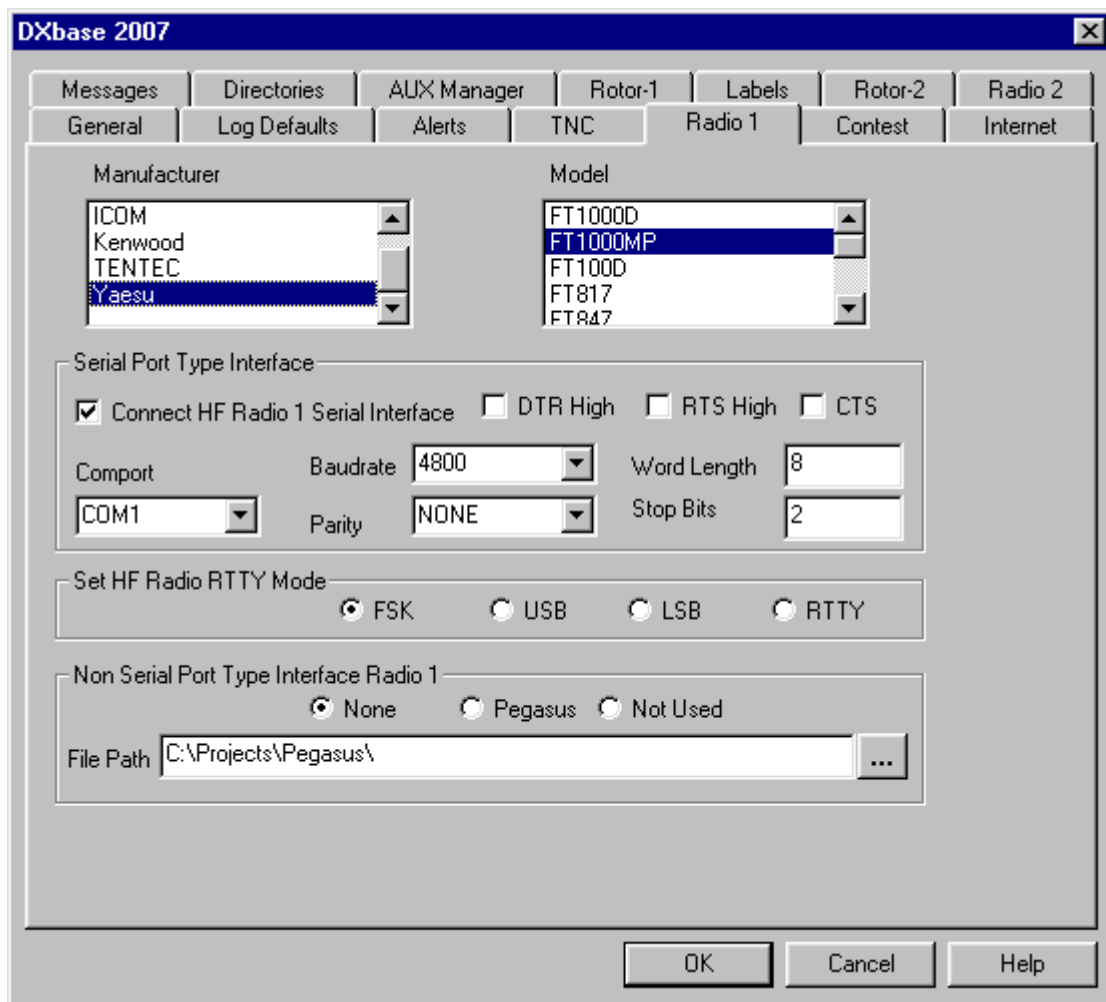
We recommend using the MM/DD/YY format in all date fields. Although these entries are not currently used by DXbase, they may be used in the future. Any future release will expect this date format.

Enter the appropriate data in the fields provided. Click OK to save your entries or cancel to abandon them.

User Options

HF-Radio User Options

To successfully interface your HF radio with DXbase, there are options that must be set in DXbase user options and there may also be options in the radio that must be set. For example, some radios allow the user to specify how many stop bits to use. You must insure that the options set in DXbase agree with what has been programmed into your HF radio. If you are having difficulty, refer to your owner's manual to learn how to identify what options are set within the radio and then insure that DXbase agrees. To access HF Radio User Options, select Tools/Options/User Options from the main menu.



Interface with TenTec Pegasus

The interface for the Pegasus is very different from other HF radios. It uses a file transfer mechanism and does not use the serial port. To set options for the Pegasus, specify the following options:

5. Select the File Path where the Pegasus.IN and Pegasus.OUT files will be placed. This is usually the folder where your Pegasus interface software has been installed. You may need to activate the radio interface in your Pegasus control software as well. Use the button located to the right of the File Path box to navigate to the Pegasus folder.
6. In the Radio Type to Connect box, remove the check from the “Connect HF Radio Serial Interface.
7. In the Radio Type to Connect Box, click the Pegasus button so that a dot appears in this choice.
8. All other options are ignored.

Interface with Serial Port Type HF Radios

The interface for serial port operated HF Radios uses an RS232 interface from a serial port on your PC to the HF radio control device. Some radios use a level converter box and others do not. Consult your owner's manual if you are unsure of the hardware necessary for your HF radio.

Hardware Requirements

4. RS232 compliant serial port with no IRQ sharing with other comports. Be especially careful that you do not have active hardware devices on com1 and com3, or, com2 and com4. These comports usually share the same IRQ and will not function properly. If you have an internal modem, make sure it is not using the same IRQ as the serial port you intend to use for your HF radio interface.
5. The cable that connects from your computer serial port to your HF radio must be RS232 compliant. DXbase uses hardware flow control and unless all the leads are connected in the cable, the interface will not work.
6. Some computer users install a USB to serial port hub. In many cases, these devices will work fine, but in some cases the device does not provide the necessary connectivity for hardware flow control. We only mention this so that you are aware that these devices are not all manufactured the same and some work and others don't. If you have difficulty, try a standard comport instead of the USB converted serial port.

For your convenience, we have assembled [the typical default settings for many HF radios](#). Check this section to see this information; however, remember that if your HF radio configuration has been changed from the factory default, these settings may not be correct for your particular configuration.

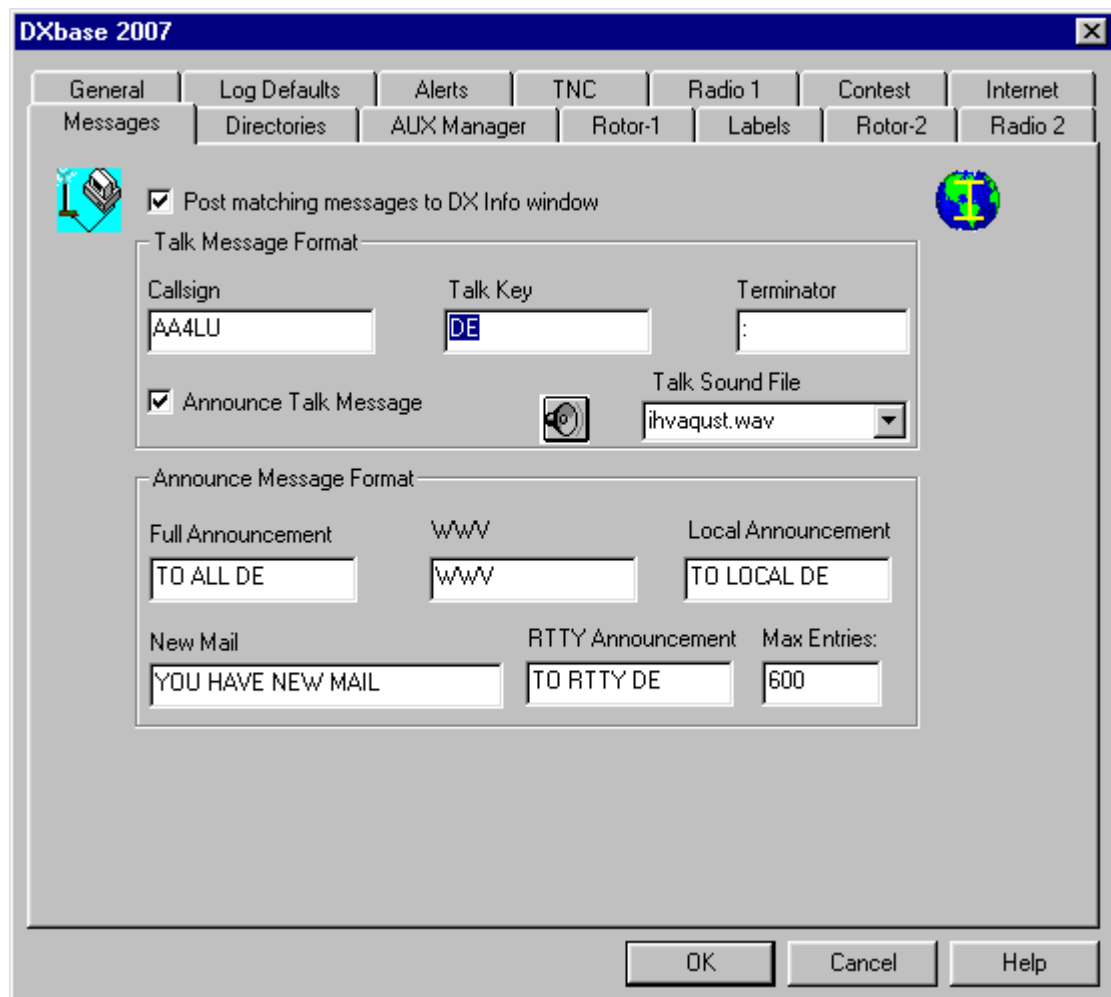
Setting DXbase Serial Port Options

9. Select the Manufacturer of your HF radio
10. Select the model of your radio.
11. The File Path entry is not used for a serial port interface. The contents of this field are ignored.
12. In the Radio Type to Connect box, click the "Connect HF Radio Serial Interface" box. Also click the button marked "none" in the Pegasus section so that DXbase will not expect any file transfer interface.
13. In the set HF radio RTTY mode box, select the mode that DXbase should use when setting your radio for RTTY operation.
14. In the Serial Port Interface box, the DTR High option is needed by some radios when hardware flow control is used. Most do not need this option but some do. We recommend that you set this to off. If you encounter trouble, you can try to set this on to determine if your radio needs this option. If you plan to share the same comport with an internal DXbase CW interface this option MUST be set to off (unchecked).
15. In the Serial Port Interface box, select all options for your particular HF radio. All options must be set, and if they are not in agreement with the configuration on your HF radio, the interface will not operate. Consult your owner's manual for your HF radio to determine how these should be set.
16. In the Serial Port Interface box, the RTS option is needed by some radios when hardware flow control is used. Most do not need this and we recommend that this option is left turned off (unchecked). If

you encounter difficulty, you can try turning this option on. Some hardware not associated with DXbase uses this lead from the port to control a PTT (push to talk) keying option. In this case, this option must be turned off in DXbase otherwise the PTT will be in a constant on mode.

Packet Talk Messages

DXbase includes functionality that will extract messages from incoming packet data. For example, TALK messages, WWV, and Announcements can be recognized. As this type of information is received from packet, DXbase will display it in the VHF or Internet Packet windows. But in addition, it can be stored in the Packet Info Window under the Messages tab. These settings control the manner in which DXbase will recognize messages of this nature.



Check the “Post matching messages.... Box to activate this feature.

Talk Message Format

A talk message will be recognized based on three items of information. If all three are present in a line of data, then it is assumed to be a Talk Message. These items are Callsign which should be your callsign, Talk Key that is usually DE, and a terminator character which is a colon.

The Announce Talk Message box should be checked if you want DXbase to play a sound file which notifies you via your computer's sound system when a talk message is received. The Talk Sound File is the name of the .WAV file that will be played when a Talk Message is received.

Announce Message Format

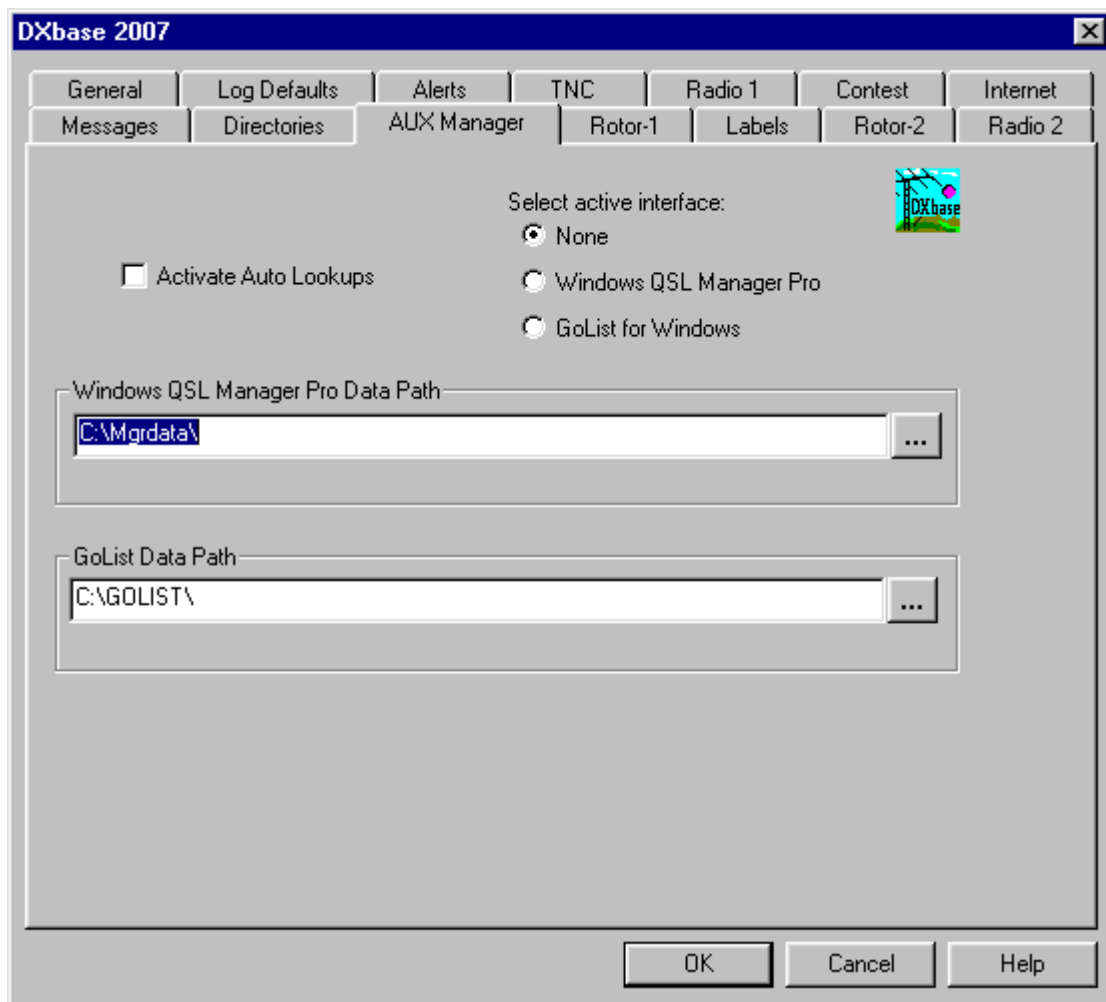
There are four other types of Messages that DXbase can recognize and populate into the Message Tab of the Packet Info window:

<u>Message Type</u>	<u>Default Key</u>
Full Announcement	TO ALL DE
WWV	WWV
Local Announcement	TO LOCAL DE
New Mail	YOU HAVE NEW MAIL
RTTY Announcement	TO RTTY DE

Enter the maximum number of entries that you want to allow to be populated into the Messages tab of the Packet Info window. This setting will not have any effect on the display of messages in the VHF and Internet packet windows. It only restricts how many entries will be populated separately into the Messages tab.

Auxiliary Manager Interface

The AUX Mgr options tab is where you identify any third-party QSL Manager database that you may wish to use with DXbase. To access this set of options, select Tools/Options/User Options from the main menu and then select the Aux MGR tab.



Windows QSL Manager PRO

To establish an interface to this product, follow these steps:

1. Install Windows QSL Manager PRO (32 bit version only) per the manufacturer's instructions.
2. In the Windows QSL Manager PRO data path field, select the path where the MGR.DBF file is located which was installed by Windows QSL Manager PRO.
3. Select Windows QSL Manager PRO from the Select Active Interface list.

GoList for Windows Interface

To establish a direct interface to the GoList for Windows, you must perform several steps:

1. You must have the GoList installed on your hard drive.
2. In the Golist data path field, select the folder where your GoList .OVL and .REC files are located.
3. Select GoList from the Select Active Interface list.

When DX spots are received or when you click on a QSO record, DXbase can perform an automatic lookup to either of the interfaces listed above. To activate this feature, place a check mark in the Activate Auto Lookups box. If you do not use this feature, you can force a lookup from the main DXbase screen.

QSO Log Options

DXbase provides an assortment of user controllable options that define the way default values are populated automatically when you log a QSO record. Select application menu Tools/Options/User Options and click the Log Defaults tab.

Confirmed - This option defines whether a QSO will be marked as confirmed when you log it. If you check this option each QSO record that is logged will be automatically marked as confirmed.

YL - This option defines whether a QSO will be marked as one with a YL operator when you log it. If you check this option each QSO record that is logged will be automatically set as YL operator “yes.”

QRP - This option defines whether a QSO will be marked as one made via QRP when you log it. If you check this option each QSO record that is logged will be automatically set a QRP “yes.

User 1

User 2 - DXbase provides two check box fields in the QSO log that can be used for whatever purpose that you want. Use either or both of these options when you need to have a flag for this QSO set. These fields are located in the drop down box of the Flags field of the QSO log. By placing a check in user options, DXbase will automatically set this User field each time you log a new QSO record. This field is available in the DXbase Wizard, Awards, and User Designed List modules for filtering based on this field.

Special 1

Special 2 - DXbase provides two ten character alpha/numeric text fields that can be used for whatever purpose that you want.

QSO Mode - This option defines the default mode value that will be automatically populated in the mode field of the QSO record when it is logged. If you have an HF radio interfaced with DXbase, the first choice for the mode will be what is read from the HF transceiver. If DXbase is unable to obtain the mode from the transceiver for whatever reason, then the value set in this option will be used.

QSO Band - This option defines the default band value that will be automatically populated in the band field of the QSO record when it is logged. If you have an HF radio interfaced with DXbase, the first choice for the band will be what is read from the HF transceiver. If DXbase is unable to obtain the band from the transceiver for whatever reason, then the value set in this option will be used.

QSL Via - This option defines the default value that will be automatically populated in the “VIA field of the QSO record when it is logged.

QSO Satellite - This option defines the default value that will be automatically populated in the “Satellite field of the QSO record when it is logged. If you check this option, then all QSO records will be marked when they are logged as being made via satellite. NOTE: Satellite QSO records are not included in any numeric statistic calculations except for the general satellite category.

XMIT Power - The value entered here will be automatically populated in the Power field of each QSO record that is saved.

Band Plan Selection

DXbase provides for two separate **Band Plan Mapping** tables. These are called Primary and Alternate. As shipped, the primary band plan table contains entries typical for the USA. The alternate contains entries typical for Europe. Select the table you wish to use. Your selection will cause either the primary or alternate table to appear when you select User Option Band Plan options to modify the entries. It will also determine which table is used for mapping a frequency in a DX spot or log to the corresponding mode.

Alternate Defaults

Sometimes you may have a second radio in operation that is not interfaced with DXbase. You may work a station and wish to log him, but the band and mode that is auto populated by DXbase will come from the radio that is interfaced with DXbase or from the last QSO that was logged. These two options allow you to specify a default that can be populated by using the right mouse popup menu in the QSO log while the record is in being added.

Band - Select the band value that should be used when you select the Alternate Defaults button on the popup menu in the QSO log.

Mode - Select the mode value that should be used when you select the Alternate Defaults button on the popup menu in the QSO log.

Note - Enter any optional notes you want populated when you select the Alternate Defaults button on the popup menu in the QSO Log. Warning, any notes that already exist will be erased and overwritten if you have an entry in this field.

Warn Invalid RST - DXbase performs a validation process when you enter an RST for a QSO record. If the value is not valid for the mode of the QSO, DXbase will notify you of this potential mistake when you have this option checked. You will have the option to override the validation and allow the RST value you have entered to be used. This may be useful where the normal validations would not allow an entry such as 59A. If you do not check this option, DXbase will accept any entry in the RST fields up to three characters and will not warn you if the entry is incorrect based upon customary logging practices.

Date Selection - Select the desired choice when a date is automatically populated into the QSO record that is being logged. Selecting the "Current System" option will cause DXbase to retrieve the date from the system clock at the time you enter the QSO record. The date is actually retrieved at the moment you press the tab key upon leaving the callsign field. Selecting "Last Date Logged" will cause DXbase to use the last date that was used to log a QSO record. If this is the first QSO record being logged since starting the application, the current system date will be used.

Change Date/Time when saving QSO - Check this option if you want DXbase to automatically recalculate the date and time and enter the new values at the time you actually save the QSO record. This will overwrite whatever is already shown but will insure that when you log a QSO, the date and time are the actual values when you save the QSO. If this option is not checked, the date and time values entered will be used.

Populate Name/QTH/Grid from CDROM - Check this option if you want DXbase to automatically access your address CDROM to retrieve the GRID, name, QTH, and US State, if they exist, and populate these into the QSO log. If you already have a previous QSO with this station, and the name or US State was previously populated, the CDROM lookup will be ignored and the data from the previous QSO record will be used.

Populate County from CDROM - Check this option if you want DXbase to automatically access your address CDROM to retrieve the US County and populate this into the QSO log. If you do not care about US county tracking, you should uncheck this option. In some cases, the county

found on a CDROM may not be consistent with the DXbase county table. In this case, the county will not be accepted.

Over ride mode with Band Plan - This option allows DXbase to use the internal Band Plan Mapping table for determining the mode based on the frequency that is entered into your log. If this option is checked, whenever you enter or change the frequency field in the log, DXbase will recompute the mode based on the Band Plan table. It will automatically change the mode entry if needed. (note, after entering or changing a frequency entry, if the mode selected is not correct, you can simply click in the mode field and change it).

Load Band/Mode from HF Transceiver - Check this option if you want DXbase to query the HF transceiver each time you log a QSO record to obtain the mode, band, and frequency values that will be automatically populated in the QSO record. If DXbase is unable to obtain this information, the default values previously described will be used. Note: if Over ride mode with Band Plan is enabled, DXbase will use the mode from the Band Plan mapping table regardless of the mode actually set on the HF radio. This flexibility allows your radio to be set for example, to USB, when in actuality you are operating PSK31. If the Band Plan specifies that PSK31 is the usual mode for the frequency you are using, the mode would be correctly set even though the radio indicated USB.

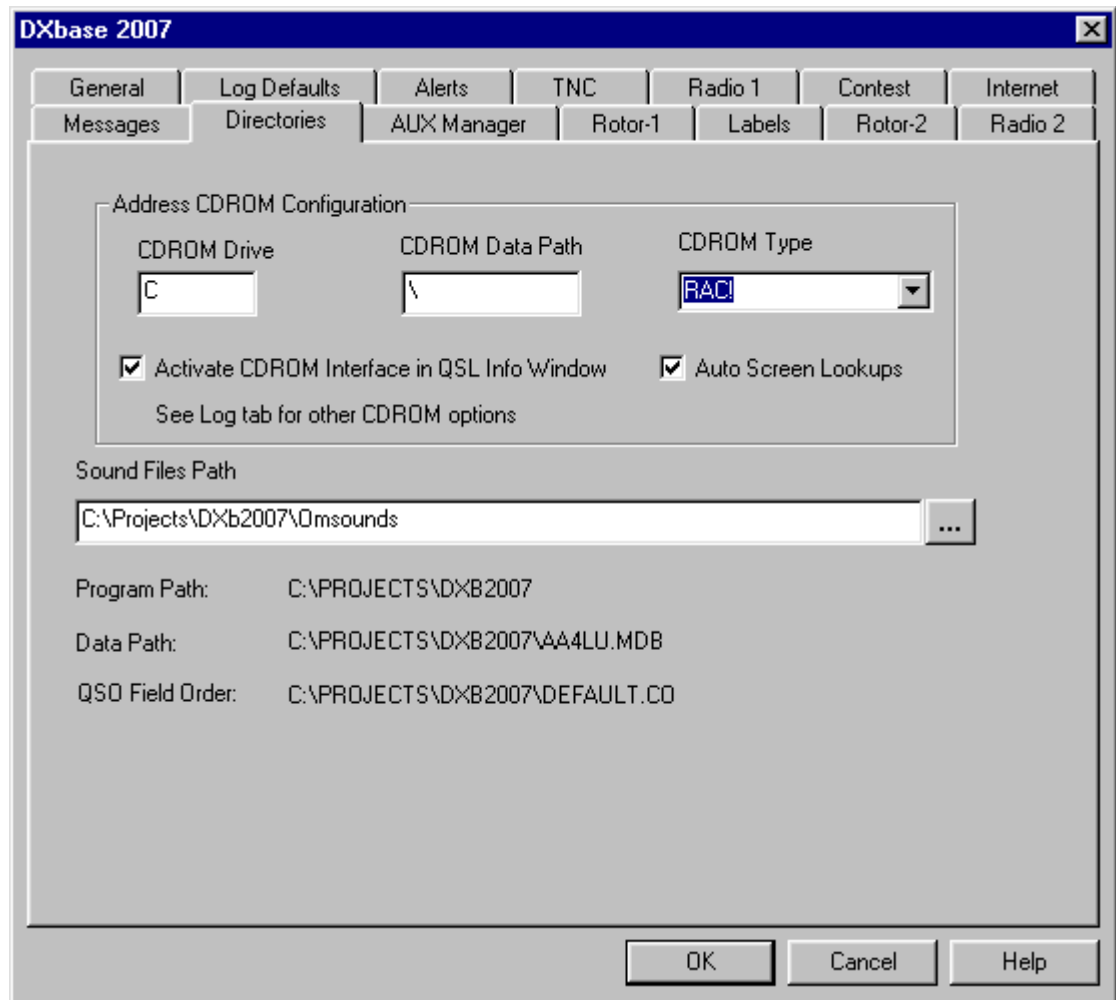
Enable Pop Up Tool tips - Check this option if you want Tool tips automatically displayed when your cursor is placed on a field in the QSO record. Tool tips are tiny pop-up windows that describe the purpose for the field that your cursor is placed on. **Warning: This feature may not work properly on some machines. It is possible that the tooltip, once it is displayed, will not erase properly and leaves distortion on your screen that look like white boxes. If this occurs on your machine, turn this option off and restart DXbase.**

Populate QSL Date Sent Field on Label Save - Check this option if you want DXbase to automatically populate the current system date in the QSL Sent field of the QSO record each time you save a label. If a date already exists in this field it will be over written with the current date. Selecting this option will cause a small delay when saving a label record since DXbase will simultaneously update your QSO database as well.

Warn before overwriting unsaved QSO - Place a check in this box if you want an automatic warning displayed if you attempt to overwrite a pending QSO entry that has not been saved.

Directory Options

These options provide the capability to identify the type of third party Address CDROM that may be used with DXbase. The path for sound files is also specified here. To access Directory options, select Tools/Options/User Options from the main menu and then select the Directory tab.



CD-ROM Entries

1. Enter the drive letter for your CD-ROM drive or hard drive if you place the data on your hard drive.
2. Select the CD-ROM type from the CD-ROM drop down list
3. Enter the CDROM Data path as listed below:

Hamcall	\HAM0\ (that's a numeric zero)
RAC	\ (that's a single backslash)
QRZ	leave blank

NOTE: As CD-ROM address database manufacturers make changes to their product, these options may change and you should consult the instructions provided by these manufacturers.

Auto Screen Lookups

During normal operation of DXbase, you will be receiving DX spots, clicking on QSO records, and clicking on DX spots that have been received. Each time one of these events occurs, DXbase can automatically lookup the callsign that was clicked from your CDROM address database and display the results in the QSL Info window. Place a check mark in this option if you want these lookups to occur automatically. Be cautious of selecting this option if you are using a slow CDROM drive. If your hardware is slow, setting this option on will have a negative impact on the performance of DXbase.

Program Path

This is an informational entry that cannot be changed. It was established based on the folder that was selected at the time DXbase was installed.

Data Path

The current database path is displayed for reference. You cannot change this entry. It is the path that was chosen at the time you started DXbase and selected the database path. Or, it is the path chosen when you installed DXbase.

Field Order Path

The current QSO field order configuration file path is displayed for reference. You cannot change this entry. It is the path that was chosen at the time you started DXbase and selected Field Order configuration file. Or, it is the path chosen when you installed DXbase.

Activate Interface

Place a check mark in this box to enable the CDROM interface within DXbase to automatically display address information in the QSL Info Window. Auto population of info from the address CDROM while logging are controlled in the **Log Defaults tab** of user options.

Note:

DXbase creates two sub-directories under the database directory. One called "Labels which contains all of the label format files, and a second called "Reports that contains all of the report format files. These two directories **MUST** be located one level below the Database Path. If you move them to any other location, DXbase will not be able to find the correct path and you will receive errors whenever you attempt to view/print labels or reports.

Example: Assume your database path is C:\DXbase

Then you must have a Label directory as C:\DXbase\Labels and report directory as C:\DXbase\Reports

Sound Path

Click the path selection button and select the path to the sound files that you wish to use. As shipped, DXbase includes to full sound directories, CWsounds, Ylsounds or Omsounds. The Ylsounds set uses a female voice, the Omsounds uses a male voice. The CWsounds uses morse

code sound files for the letters/numbers of the alphabet and thereby announces DX spots in CW. You can also create your own sounds and use them with DXbase.

Example: C:\DXBASE 2003\Ylsounds

User Label Options

Options listed in this section define the assignment of group numbers to a label when you save one for printing. Group numbers give you a way to segment labels into groups so that you print each group separately if desired. Choose the application menu Tools/Options/User Options and select the labels tab.

The screenshot shows the 'DXbase 2007' dialog box with the 'Labels' tab selected. The dialog has a tabbed interface with the following tabs: General, Log Defaults, Alerts, TNC, Radio 1, Contest, Internet, Messages, Directories, AUX Manager, Rotor-1, Labels, Rotor-2, and Radio 2. The 'Labels' tab is active, showing two radio button options for 'QSO Label Group number based on'. The first option, 'QSO Label Group number based on QSL Via field', is selected and contains a grid of nine spinners for different QSL categories: Bureau (1), Manager (1), Mgr.-Buro (1), Direct (1), Other (1), QSL-Service (1), Direct\$ (1), None (1), and Manager\$ (1). The second option, 'QSO Label Group number based on Confirmed field', is unselected and contains two spinners: Confirmed (1) and Not confirmed (1). Below these are two text input fields: 'Address Label Group' (set to 1) and 'Label Signature' (set to '73 de Yourcall'). There are also two checkboxes: 'Ask before saving a label' (checked) and 'Save ADR label whenever QSO label is saved from QSO Label ICON' (unchecked). At the bottom right are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

QSO Label Group number based on QSL Via field					
Bureau	1	Manager	1	Mgr.-Buro	1
Direct	1	Other	1	QSL-Service	1
Direct\$	1	None	1	Manager\$	1

QSO Label Group number based on Confirmed field			
Confirmed	1	Not confirmed	1

Address Label Group: 1 Label Signature: 73 de Yourcall
Label Comment: Your Comment

☒ Ask before saving a label
☐ Save ADR label whenever QSO label is saved from QSO Label ICON

There are two options for assigning group numbers to a QSO label.

1. A group number can be mapped to each of the different QSL Via choices in the QSO log. Each different QSL Via category can have its own group number. Or, you can assign the same group number to more than one QSL Via category. If you select this option, the group number that is

assigned will be based on your group number entered here, and on the value in the QSL Via field of the QSO for which a QSO label is being saved.

2. A group number can be assigned based upon whether the QSO is Confirmed or Not Confirmed at the time the QSO label is being saved. If you select this option, the group number entered here will be used based on whether the value of the QSO confirmed field is Yes or No. You can assign the same group number to both confirmed and not confirmed. This would mean that all QSO labels would have the same group number.

Signature

The signature is the text that will be saved with each label and used as the contents in the sign variable available when designing and printing labels. Usually you would enter text such as “73 de Jack.

Ask Before Saving

If checked, this option will result in DXbase prompting you before it saves QSO or Address information. If not checked, DXbase will save label information to the pending label database directly without any prompting.

Address Label Group

The value entered here will be used to assign the group number to any address labels that you save.

Save Address label whenever a QSO label is saved

This option causes DXbase to first store the QSO label when you click the QSO label ICON. Immediately after this an address label will be saved if one is present in the QSL info window. In deciding which address to use, DXbase uses the option in the QSL info window for either the DXbase address or the CD address.

Contesting Options

DXbase provides an option for special processing logic during a contest. To access these options, select TOOLS/OPTIONS/User Options from the main menu.

DXbase 2007

Messages Directories AUX Manager Rotor-1 Labels Rotor-2 Radio 2
General Log Defaults Alerts TNC Radio 1 Contest Internet

☐ Contest Mode Active

Parameters

Start Date: 20080811 Start Time: 0000 QSO Note: Some Contest
YYYYMMDD HHMMSS

☐ Use Serial Number Next Serial Number 001

OK Cancel Help

Contest Mode Active

Check this box if you want the contest mode logic to be activated. If this option is not checked, the Parameter entries are not used.

Parameters

1. Enter the starting date for the contest.
2. Enter the starting time for the contest.
3. Optionally, enter any comment you might want to be automatically populated into the QSO Remarks field when you log a QSO record with Contest mode activated.

Serial Numbers

If you want DXbase to generate a sequential serial number, place a check mark in the “Use Serial Number box. The starting serial number can also be modified. If this option is checked, DXbase

will automatically place a sequential serial number in the notes field of the QSO record when logging.

If Contest Mode is activated, DXbase will automatically notify you if you attempt to log a QSO that is a duplicate. You will have the option to either cancel the log entry or to log the duplicate QSO anyway.

General Program Options

Options listed in this section define the overall parameters needed by DXbase in many of the functions that it performs throughout the application. Choose the application menu Tools/Options/User Options and select the General tab.

The screenshot shows the 'DXbase 2007' dialog box with the 'General' tab selected. The dialog has a title bar with a close button. Below the title bar is a tabbed interface with tabs for Messages, Directories, AUX Manager, Rotor-1, Labels, Rotor-2, Radio 2, General, Log Defaults, Alerts, TNC, Radio 1, Contest, and Internet. The 'General' tab is active, showing various configuration options. The 'QTH Location' section has text boxes for Latitude (+34.10) and Longitude (+84.51). The 'Date Format' section has three radio buttons: YYYY-MM-DD (selected), MM-DD-YYYY, and DD-MM-YYYY. The 'Prompts at Startup' section has two checkboxes: Database and Field Order (unchecked) and Special event notification (unchecked). The 'Include Deleted in Statistics' section has three radio buttons: Yes, No (selected), and Prompt. The 'DxbPSK Interface' section has two dropdown menus: Default PSK mode (DIGITAL) and Default PSK SubMode (FSK441). Below these are three checkboxes: Over ride default PSK mode with Band Plan (unchecked), Use mode from external program if valid (checked), and Auto Save QSO (unchecked). The 'Current Operator' section has text boxes for Callsign (AA4LU) and Gridsquare (EM74RC). The 'DX Atlas Version Selector' section has three radio buttons: v2.0 or lower, v2.1 or higher (selected), and None. The 'Max number of spots in DX Info Window' is set to 20. The 'Empty DX Info on exit' checkbox is checked. The 'Grayline +/- minutes' is set to 15. The 'Distance Display' section has two radio buttons: Miles (selected) and Kilometers. At the bottom left is a small DXbase logo and the text 'Master Sound: On'. At the bottom right are three buttons: OK, Cancel, and Help.

DXbase 2007

Messages Directories AUX Manager Rotor-1 Labels Rotor-2 Radio 2
General Log Defaults Alerts TNC Radio 1 Contest Internet

QTH Location

Latitude +34.10
Longitude +84.51

Date Format

☒ YYYY-MM-DD
☐ MM-DD-YYYY
☐ DD-MM-YYYY

Prompts at Startup

☐ Database and Field Order
☐ Special event notification

Include Deleted in Statistics

☐ Yes ☒ No ☐ Prompt

DxbPSK Interface

Default PSK mode DIGITAL Default PSK SubMode FSK441

☐ Over ride default PSK mode with Band Plan
☒ Use mode from external program if valid
☐ Auto Save QSO

Current Operator

Callsign AA4LU
Gridsquare EM74RC

DX Atlas Version Selector

☐ v2.0 or lower ☒ v2.1 or higher
☐ None

Max number of spots in DX Info Window: 20

☒ Empty DX Info on exit

Grayline +/- minutes 15

Distance Display

☒ Miles ☐ Kilometers

Master Sound: On

OK Cancel Help

QTH Location

Enter the latitude and longitude for your location. Use (-) for South Latitude degrees and East Longitude degrees. Otherwise, use (+). These coordinates are used in the calculation of distances

and beam heading throughout the application. If you enter incorrect information, these calculations will also be incorrect.

Example +38.7 -123.5 +0.3

Date Format

Select the desired date format. This format is used by DXbase when it displays a date in one of the fields of any records.

Prompts at Startup

1. Database and Field Order

If you have multiple databases and want DXbase to display a prompt each time you start DXbase so that you can select the database name, then place a check in this box. If you leave this box unchecked, DXbase will automatically load the default database name and will not prompt you for any selection. The default database name will be the database name that was in use the last time you used DXbase.

DXbase provides the ability to define the field order of the QSO log. This is accomplished by selecting your field order preference using the Field Order utility program from the DXbase program group. After selecting your preferences, the results are stored in a configuration file ending in the .CO file extension. You can have as many different predefined field order configuration files as you want. By placing a check in this option, DXbase will prompt you at program startup so that you can select the QSO Field Order configuration desired. Once DXbase is running, you cannot select a different field order. This can only be done at the time you start the program.

2. Special Event Notification

DXbase provides a feature that lets you enter the date and description of any upcoming events that might be of interest to you. Each time DXbase is started, the software will check the current month and compare it to the date of any events that you have listed. If you have any events listed for the current month, DXbase can automatically notify you about them. You might use this feature to receive a warning when a scheduled DXpedition is coming up, or maybe your wife's birthday, etc.

This option turns this automatic notification on or off. Place a check mark in this option if you want DXbase to notify you about events at program start up, assuming that any are due in the current month.

DX Atlas Version Selection

Beginning with version 2.1 of DX Atlas, provisions exist for saving/restoring the screen position and other options in DX Atlas. If you are using version 2.1 of DX Atlas, DXbase will use this

feature. The feature did not exist in previous versions of DX Atlas. BE CAREFUL not to set this option to version 2.1 unless you actually have version 2.1 or higher. If you set this incorrectly, both DX Atlas and DXbase will probably crash!

Include Deleted in Statistics

DXbase provides a numeric statistics module that displays the numeric details of what is worked, confirmed, or not worked. It can include or exclude deleted countries.

Yes = always include deleted and do not ask me before displaying the statistics screen.

No = do not include deleted and do not ask me before displaying the statistics screen.

Prompt = ask me each time before displaying the statistics screen.

Current Operator

1. Callsign

Each time a QSO is logged, DXbase will use this entry to automatically populate the OPR field of the QSO log. This serves to identify what callsign you were using at the time of the QSO. This capability allows you to have a master log containing all of your QSOs even when they were made with different callsigns. Only callsigns that have been registered can be used. If you enter a callsign that has not been registered, the entry will be ignored and not accepted.

2. Gridsquare

This field identifies your grid square. The value is used for labels and reports where your grid square is to be included. If you do not know your grid square, you can compute it using the compute grid square functionality in the Summary window of DXbase.

Grayline +/- Minutes

The value entered is used by DXbase in the Grayline tab of the DX Info Window for determining the difference in minutes which should be allowed in deciding when to include an entry. For example, an entry of 10 would mean to include any country where the sunrise or sunset fall within ten minutes of your local sunrise or sunset.

Master Sound

This text entry is non-editable and identifies the status of the master sound switch. This switch is a toggle which turns all sounds originated from DXbase either on or off. To turn sound on or off, refer to the playing sounds section of this help file.

Default PSK Mode is the mode that will be used by DXbase whenever you log a QSO from the DxbPSK module. Select the desired mode.

Default PSK Submode is the value that will be used by DXbase whenever population of the QSO log Submode field is warranted. If the mode is digital, then this value would be put into the Submode field.

PSK Auto Save identifies what action DXbase will take when you log a QSO from the DxbPSK module. Put a check in this box if you want DXbase to automatically save the QSO with no user intervention. If you want to be able to populated additional fields such as IOTA and Notes before the QSO is saved, leave this box unchecked.

Override Default mode with Band Plan allows you to have the mode selected based on the frequency of the QSO and the mode mappings in the [Band Plan table](#). If this option is checked, the default PSK mode is ignored and the mode extracted by the Band Plan table is used. Note: If a frequency is not passed into DXbase by the other program, then this feature will not work and the default PSK mode will be used.

Maximum number of spots in DX Info is an option that helps you keep your DX Info window reasonably current and prevents the size of the database table from growing too large with unnecessary or outdated spots. Set this option to the number of spots that you want in the DX Spots tab of DX Info. We recommend a value of 100. After the number of spots reaches your setting, DXbase allows an additional 20 to appear. When this threshold is reached, DXbase automatically deletes the first 20. It will continue this cycle indefinitely. To disable this feature, set this option to a numeric 0.

Empty DX Info on exit is an option that causes the contents of the DX spots tab in the DX Info window to be automatically erased when you exit DXbase. If you place a check in this option, all entries will be erased when you close DXbase and you will start fresh the next time you open DXbase.

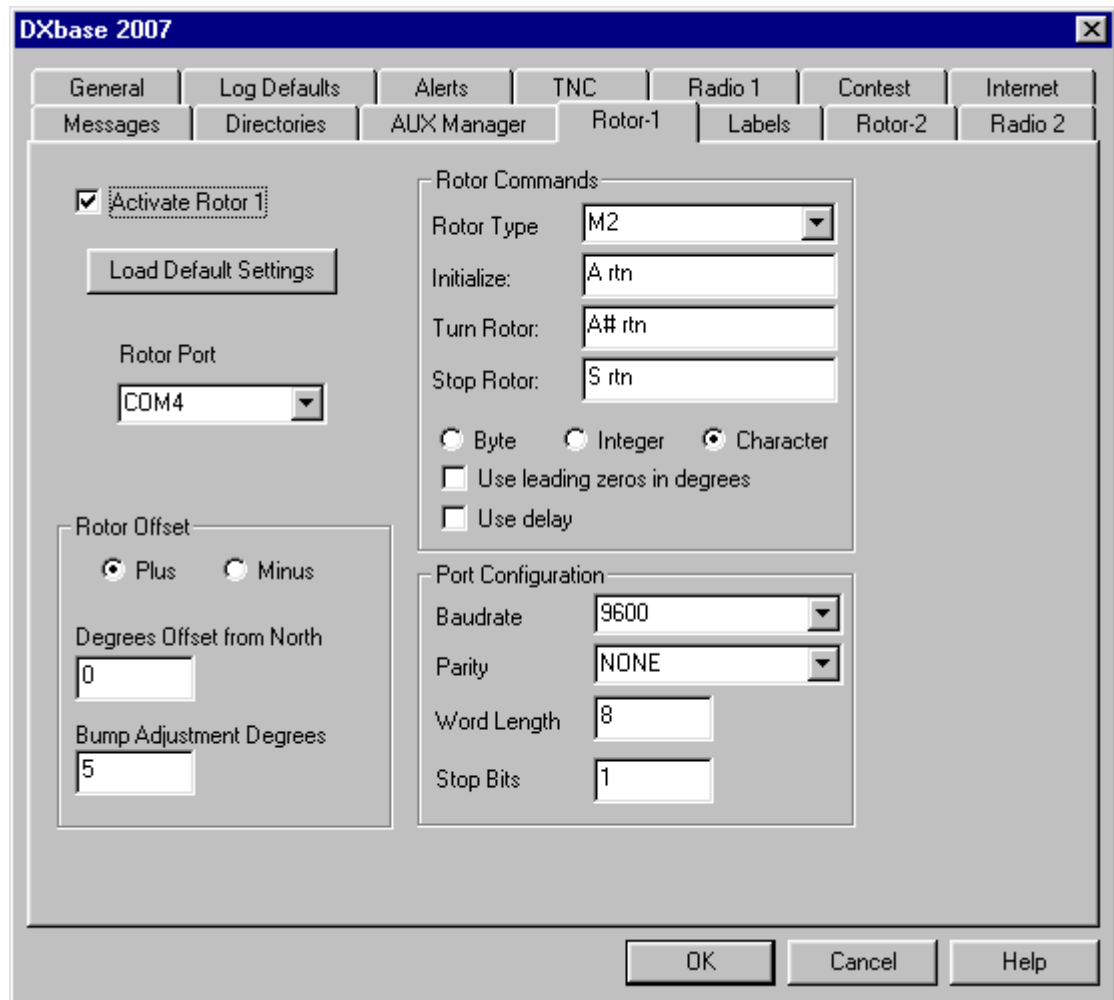
Distance

Select the format for distance that is displayed in the Summary window of the main screen.

Rotor Interface-User Options

DXbase provides a one-way serial port interface to some of the common rotor control units that provide for RS232 interface control. DXbase will allow you to set the rotor position. DXbase does not read data from the rotor. You may have two different rotors. DXbase provides a push button on the rotor toolbar that controls which rotor is active. If you only use one rotor, then it should be assigned Rotor 1 and you should leave Rotor 2 inactive.

NOTE: There are two tabs for rotor options. These are marked Rotor 1 and Rotor 2. Be careful that you select the correct tab for the rotor that you are configuring.



Activate - Place a check in this box to turn the interface functionality in DXbase on.

Rotor Port - Select the comport that is to be used for your rotor interface. This must be a dedicated serial port and cannot be shared with any other device.

Rotor Commands - These entries are automatically selected based on the type of rotor interface that is selected. The only entry that should be used under normal operation is the Rotor type. The other command entries are those that will be sent to rotor to control its operation.

Port Configuration - The port configuration is automatically selected based on the type of rotor that is chosen under the Rotor commands option.

Rotor Offset - These options allow you to indicate any adjustments that are to be used by DXbase when determining the degrees that will be set.

Load Default Settings - In the event that you have modified any of the fields that are normally rotor specific, clicking this button will reload the default values for the rotor that is listed in the rotor command section.

Use leading zeros in degrees - Some rotors require that the degrees be sent with leading zeros when the degrees is less than 100. Place a check in this box if your rotor requires this functionality. Some rotors do not require leading zeros and will not work properly if leading zeros are used. To the best of our knowledge, only the Yaesu rotors require leading zeros.

Bump Adjustment Degrees – Two buttons are provided on the rotor toolbar, left arrow and right arrow. This option specifies how many degrees will be added or subtracted from the current rotor position when you click either of these toolbar arrows. For example, if this option is set to 5, then when you click the left arrow, the rotor will be positioned to the current position minus 5 degrees. Or if you click the right arrow, the rotor will be positioned to the current position plus 5 degrees.

Using the ARSWIN rotor

The ARSWIN rotor interface does not use the serial port information in DXbase. DXbase sends a command directly to the ARSWIN application and performs the activity of turning the rotor. In DXbase user options, you should select the ARSWIN rotor type, check the activate box and that's all that is necessary. You can ignore the serial port related entries. The ARSWIN application must be running in order for this interface to function.

Playing Sounds for DX Spots

Switching All Sound On or Off

DXbase provides an ICON that looks like a speaker. This is a switch for turning all sound on or off. To toggle master sound on or off, move your cursor over the speaker icon located on the DXbase status bar at the bottom of your screen. Click the left mouse button to toggle the speaker on or off.



The cursor will change to a hand image when positioned over the speaker. The speaker will change to a grayed color when master sound is off, and it will display a yellow speaker when master sound is on.

NOTE: On some machines, the speaker may sometimes not be visible although the slot for the speaker will be present. It may look like the speaker box is empty. We are not sure why this occurs on some machines but we believe it is related to the video driver being used. Even though

it may not be visible, it will still act as a switch when clicking in the box. In some cases, if the speaker box is empty, you can force it to appear by minimizing DXbase and then bring it back. This has the effect of making your screen repaint itself and may cause the speaker to then be painted like it should.

You can verify the setting of Master Sound by viewing that displays the current setting for Master Sound.

Sound Titles

The sounds that are produced in DXbase originate from the selections in User Options for TNC, Internet, and Messages. A few sounds are fixed within the software and cannot be changed; however, most can. Consult the section, called Playing Your Own Sound Files, for a description of how to use your own sound files.

Playing Your Own Sound Files

As shipped, DXbase installs three sub directories where sound files are stored. These directories contain the same sound filenames; however, they are actually different. The Ylsounds directory uses a female voices. The CWsounds uses morse code sound files. The Omsounds directory uses a male voice. Special effects sound files such as bell sounds are replicated in these directories. In User Options, directories, you specify the directory path that DXbase should use for sound files. You can select any of these or you can create your own directory of sound files.

Procedure

The easiest way to introduce your own .wav sound files depends on what you want to do. If you merely want to add a special effects sound file, then you should copy it into BOTH existing sound file directory. This insures that your sound file will be available regardless of whether you are using the OM or YL sounds.

If you intend to develop a complete set of your own sound files, including sounds for the alphabet, then you should create a new directory under your DXbase directory. You should then copy ALL sound (.wav) files from the Omsounds directory into this new directory. Lastly, you should then copy your own files into your new directory and overwrite any with the same name. This procedure insures that all sound files are present in your new directory. You should change DXbase User Options in the Directory tab to use the path to your new sound directory.

Except as available in User options for VHF and Internet, all other sound files are shared and are used for both.

System Clock Settings

Whenever DXbase needs to date or time, it queries Windows for the system clock information, automatically converts it to UTC, and presents it through Windows back to DXbase.

System Clock Set to Local Time

If your system clock is set to your local date/time, there are no precautions necessary. These settings perform fine with no other changes required.

System Clock Set to GMT/UTC

Windows contains a mechanism that automatically adjusts for Daylight Savings Time. If your machine is set with the date and time in GMT, there is a strong possibility, due to a quirk of Windows, that the date and times received by DXbase from your Windows operating system could be incorrect by one hour. In order to insure that this does not occur, there is only one known way to set your system clock to GMT without suffering problems.

- ▶ Close DXbase if it is running
- ▶ Open the Windows Date/Time Properties window from the Windows Control Panel, or by double clicking on the time display ICON in the lower right-hand system tray on the Windows status bar.
- ▶ Click on the time zone tab.
- ▶ Select the zone labeled (GMT) Casablanca, Monrovia. You will see the check box labeled “Automatically adjust clock for daylight saving changes becomes grayed out when this zone is selected. NOTE: Do NOT select any of the other choices for GMT. These will not work properly because daylight saving changes impact the system clock and will result in your logged times being off by one hour. This is a quirk of Windows.
- ▶ Save your changes.
- ▶ This procedure will allow your system clock to operate with UTC.
- ▶ Restart DXbase.

Address CDROMs

Options for using a third party address CDROM are set in two places:

1. Path information to your CDROM are set in the [Directory Tab](#) of user options. Auto screen updates for the QSL Info window are also set here.

- Options for populating CDROM data into your QSO log while logging are set in the [Log Defaults tab](#) of user options.

Alert Options

DX Spot Alert Options

DX Alert Parameters can be set by selecting from the application menu Tools/Options/User Options and then select the Alerts tab.

Alert Parameters control a number of events that are performed automatically by DXbase when an incoming DX alert is received from your local PacketCluster™ or Internet Cluster network. These settings control whether DXbase will provide a special sound when TNC or Internet DX spots are received for needed countries. All incoming DX spots are displayed in the VHF Packet Interface screen. These options determine when to “sound an alert. NOTE: The [master Sound](#) switch will turn override this setting and turn all sound off or on.

DXbase 2007

Messages | Directories | AUX Manager | Rotor-1 | Labels | Rotor-2 | Radio 2

General | Log Defaults | **Alerts** | TNC | Radio 1 | Contest | Internet

Global QSL Filter

- ☒ Not Confirmed
- ☐ Not Worked

Global Category Filter

- ☐ Disable ALL Alerts
- ☐ Alert ALL
- ☐ All Band Mixed Mode
- ☐ Mixed Mode Separate Band
- ☐ Mixed Band Separate Mode
- ☒ Individual Mode and Band
- ☐ New Mode or New Band

Individual Band/Mode Filter

	CW	PHONE	RTTY	DIGITAL
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
30	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
40	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
60	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
80	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
160	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Assign Callsign Alerts

☒ Merge RTTY and Digital lookups

☒ Extract IOTA from DX spot

IOTA Alert Options

- ☐ None
- ☐ All Band Mixed Only
- ☒ Same as DX Alerts

All Time New [Red Box]

New Band [Green Box]

New Mode [Magenta Box]

☒ Band then Mode ☐ Mode then Band

OK Cancel Help

There are three levels of DX alert filtering available which work in association with each other to provide maximum user flexibility in determining which DX spots are eligible for alerts.

Global QSL Filter

This option determines whether you want alerts for spots when you do not have this country confirmed, or if you want alerts whenever you do not have it worked. Check the “Not Confirmed” option if you only want alerts to be made when the country is not confirmed. Check the “Not Worked” option if you want alerts when the country is not worked. If you set the confirmed option, you will receive alerts only when the country is not confirmed. If you set the worked option, you will receive alerts if the country is not confirmed and if it is not worked.

Individual Band/Mode Filters

These options allow you to decide what bands and modes should be considered for possible alerts when a DX spot is received. They allow you to tell DXbase that you are interested in working DX spots on this mode and band, but not on some other band and mode. Check those band and mode combinations that you normally would work. If you do not check a particular band and mode combination, DXbase will ignore a DX spot whenever it is for the band and mode combination that is not checked.

Global Category Filter

This option identifies the logic that will be used to determine if you need the country when a DX spot is received. The option set under Global QSL Filter is also applied to the final determination if you should receive an alert notification.

Disable All Alerts - This option turns off all alerts of whether or not you need the DX spot.

Alert All - This option results in all DX spots being categorized as needed.

All Band Mixed Mode - This option is the most general. Upon receipt of a DX spot, DXbase will check to see if you need this country on any band and any mode. If you have a QSO for this band and mode, then no alert will be made.

Mixed Mode Separate Band - This option checks the specific band of the DX spot on any mode to determine if you need this country on any mode for the specific band.

Mixed Band Separate Mode - This option checks the specific mode of the DX spot on any band to determine if you need this country on any band for the specific mode.

Individual Mode and Band - This option provides the most detailed and specific logic. Upon receipt of a DX spot, DXbase will check both the mode and the band of the DX spot and determine if you need this country for the specific band and mode of the station.

New Mode or New Band - This option provides a multiple lookup which first checks to see if the DX spot is an all time new mode for this country. Then it checks if the country is on a new band. If either condition is true then an alert will be generated.

Special Color Encoding

For DX spot entries that will be placed in your DX Info Window, special color coding is provided to make it easier to see the importance of a particular DX spot. The three color categories can be selected by clicking the drop arrow and then selecting the color you wish to use for each category.

1. All Time category represents the case where you do not have the country worked/confirmed.
2. New Band category represents the case where the country is not worked/confirmed on the band for which the spot applies.
3. New Mode category represents the case where the country is not worked/confirmed for the mode of the spot.

If you select Alert All, then this color encoding does not apply since you have asked for all spots to be marked as needed. During testing, we observed occasional instances where the colors shown in the DX Info window have become distorted from what was selected. This was traced to a video driver issue and in some cases updating the video driver eliminated the issue. In other cases, the problem continued to occur. If you experience this issue, first try updating your video driver. If the issue occurs, you can try closing the DX Info window and then select Window, New DX Info from the main menu. You can also try scrolling the entries in the DX Info window to see if having the screen repainted will clear it up. If none of these work, you can restart DXbase.

The order in which your mode and band indicators are chosen can be selected. Mode then band tells DXbase to first check mode then band. Band then mode tells DXbase to first check band then check mode.

Extract IOTA from DX Spot

If this option is checked, DXbase will automatically attempt to identify an IOTA entry from the comments section of an incoming DX spot. It expects to see the format NA160 or NA-160 with a leading and trailing space. If an IOTA entry is found, DXbase will populate the IOTA field in the QSO log if you choose to log a QSO from the DX spot. It will also use this IOTA to display IOTA statistics in the Summary Window for the IOTA category.

IOTA Alerts

DXbase provides the ability to alert for a need IOTA. You can choose to have only IOTA alerts for a all time new one based on mixed mode and mixed band. Or, you can choose to have IOTA alerts follow the same logic that you have selected for DX alerts. Note that IOTA alerts will use the band/mode filters and Global settings in determining what to check. For IOTA alerts to work, you must also select "Extract IOTA from DX spot."

DXbase will first check for a needed DX spot and if it is needed, IOTA checking is not performed. If the DX spot is not needed, then IOTA checking will be performed.

Merge RTTY

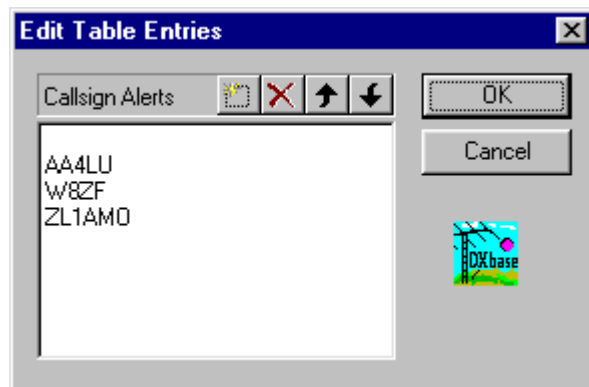
This option tells Dxbase that it should check both your RTTY and your DIGITAL statistics to decide if you need the DX spot. Setting this option treats RTTY and DIGITAL as the same mode consistent with the ARRL DXCC rules. If you want separate alerts for RTTY and DIGITAL (in other words track them separately) then uncheck this option.

Callsign Alerts

See [Callsign Alerts section](#) for information

Callsign Alerts

This is an optional feature. To populate callsign data, select Tools/Options/User Options. Then select the [Alert tab](#) and click the “Assign Callsign Alert button.



Use the buttons to navigate this edit table box. Click the insert button to add a new entry. Click an entry and use the up and down arrows to reposition an entry in the list. Click an entry and click the delete button to remove an entry. To edit an existing entry, double click the entry to be modified and then overtype with your change. Click another entry to save your change.

Enter a callsign if you want Dxbase to look for this callsign anywhere within a DX spot when it is received and to treat this DX spot as if it is needed, even if it is not actually needed for a new country. The callsign can appear anywhere within the DX spot. It can be a callsign of the DX station or the callsign of the originator of the DX spot. This option works in conjunction with the Audible Call Alert setting under TNC and Internet user options.

You can enter as many callsigns as you want; however, **Dxbase will ONLY check the first nine entries**. Entries are not limited to being a callsign. You can enter any text and if that text appears anywhere in the DX spot, it will be recognized. So, for example, you could enter IOTA, and whenever a spot is received with the phrase IOTA, Dxbase will treat this as a needed spot.

VHF TNC Options

VHF-Packet Interface Options

TNC options can be set by selecting from the application menu Tools/Options/User Options and then select the TNC tab.

The screenshot shows the 'DXbase 2007' application window with the 'TNC' tab selected. The dialog box is organized into several sections:

- Interface:** Contains checkboxes for 'Connect TNC' (unchecked), 'Default DTR High' (unchecked), and 'Disable Sound on Exit' (unchecked). A 'Max Packet Lines' text box is set to '500'.
- DXInfo Options:** Contains radio buttons for 'Do not use' (unchecked), 'Save all Spots' (unchecked), and 'Save needed Spots' (checked).
- Screen Updates:** Contains radio buttons for 'None' (unchecked), 'Packet Window' (checked), and 'DX Info Window' (unchecked).
- Announce DX Spots in Voice and Sound Events:** Contains radio buttons for 'Never' (unchecked), 'Only DX Spots Needed' (checked), and 'All DX Spots' (unchecked). Below are four checked checkboxes: 'Audible Mail Alert', 'Audible Call Alert', 'Audible DX Alerts', and 'Audible Bell'.
- Packet Format:** Contains text boxes for 'DX Spot Key' (set to 'DX de'), 'Bell Sound' (set to 'hailfreq.wav'), 'Needed Sound' (set to 'needed03.wav'), and 'Packet Login Host' (set to 'C K4KG').
- Serial Port Interface:** Contains dropdown menus for 'Serial Port' (set to 'COM1'), 'Baudrate' (set to '4800'), and 'Parity' (set to 'NONE'). It also has text boxes for 'Word Length' (set to '8') and 'Stop Bits' (set to '1').

At the bottom of the dialog are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

Connect TNC - Check this box if you want DXbase to establish a communications session with your TNC. If this box is not checked, DXbase will not issue or retrieve any data with your TNC.

Default DTR High - This setting controls how the state of DTR on the comport will be set when DXbase initializes the port. Normal operation is for this to be checked. But, if you intend to use the same port for CW, this box must be unchecked; otherwise, your CW keying circuit will be constantly keyed. Some TNCs and ports will not operate properly unless DTR is high. If you

encounter difficulty in using your TNC, you may need to insure this setting is checked and use some other port for CW.

DXinfo Options - As DX spots are received, DXbase writes the information to the VHF Packet and/or the Internet Packet windows. DXbase also provides another window called DX Info under the DX Spots tab where only DX spots are stored. This option controls when DXbase will place an entry into the DX Info DX spots window. This provides a convenient place to see only DX spots. We recommend that this option be set to "Save Needed DX spots. Or, if you do not plan to use this feature, choose "Do Not Use. Saving all DX spots can cause this table to become very large and result in performance slowing down. You can eliminate performance impacts by frequently emptying the contents of the DX Info DX Spots tab.

Max Packet Lines - This entry identifies the number of VHF Packet lines that will be allowed in the VHF Packet window. When the maximum number of lines specified is reached, DXbase will begin overwriting the oldest entry with the new one so that the maximum is not exceeded. Since this entry impacts the amount of memory that will be required, we recommend that it be set to a reasonable number such as 1000 or less. The maximum allowable is 9999.

Packet Login Host - This is the command that is to be used when you connect to your VHF Packet system host. When you select the right mouse button option in the VHF Packet window entitled "Connect to Host, this is the command that will be sent.

Sound choices - The type of sounds that are used are based on the sound files that have been selected under the User Options Directory Tab. There is a choice for one of the following:

4. YL sounds
5. OM sounds
6. CW sounds

Audible Bell - This option controls whether or not audible sound will be played for the incoming Bell character from

PacketCluster™.

Audible DX Alerts - Check this option if you want DXbase to play the Alert Needed sound whenever it detects that an incoming VHF Packet spot is one that you need.

Audible Mail Alert - If you want DXbase to automatically play a sound notification when New Mail is received for you in the VHF Packet window, check this option.

Audible Call Alert – In the Alert Tab of user options, you can specify a callsign that will trigger DXbase to treat this DX spot as a new one. Check this option if you want DXbase to automatically play a “needed sound whenever a DX spot is received which contains the callsign entered under the Alert tab of use options.

Disable Sound on Exit - Some users leave their TNC in a state that causes DX spots and other PacketCluster data to be stored in the buffer of the TNC while DXbase is not operational. When DXbase is started, the data stored in the TNC buffer is then processed immediately by DXbase. This can result in a large number of DX spots being processed at once which will effectively lock out any screen control until the DX spots and associated sounds such as voice alerts and audible tones are processed. Check this box if you want DXbase to always turn sound off when you exit the program. If this box is checked, each time you start DXbase, all audible alerts and voice alerts will be initially turned off. To turn sound on, you will have to access User Options and turn them on after DXbase has started.

Bell Sound - Each time a message is received from your PacketCluster™ network a standard bell character will precede the message. DXbase intercepts this character and plays the .WAV sound file specified as the Bell Sound. You can select any of the .WAV files in the drop down combo box to be played as “your bell sound. Be aware that sometimes the PacketCluster™ Network sends more than one bell character back to back. DXbase filters any duplicate bell characters so that only one bell character is actually processed. You can click the speaker button to hear the sound file that is selected.

DX Needed Sound - Each time a DX spot is received, DXbase uses the settings in DX Alert Parameters to determine if this DX spot is needed. If it is, then DXbase will play the .WAV sound file chosen in this option. You can select any of the .WAV files in the drop down combo box to be played as “Your Alert Needed sound. You can click the speaker button to hear the sound file that is selected.

NOTE: If no .wav files appear in the drop down list, then click the General Tab and make sure the sound path is correct. Click OK to save your options, then select TOOLS/OPTIONS/User Options again. This is sometimes necessary so that DXbase will know what directory path contains your sound files.

Auto Screen Statistics - Each time a DX spot is received, DXbase will automatically update all of the individual views on the screen such as the country name, CQ zone, etc. if this option is checked.

DX Spot Key - This option identifies the unique characters that are sent by the PacketCluster network in a DX spot. In all previous versions of PacketCluster up to the publishing of this version of DXbase, the key is “DX de. DXbase uses this key to know when an incoming message from PacketCluster is a DX spot.

Announce DX Spots in Voice - Each time a DX spot is received from your PacketCluster™ network DXbase will announce the callsign and frequency of the DX spot over your standard Windows sound system if you have this feature activated. Choose Never to disable this feature. Choose Only for DX Spots Needed if you want the callsign of the DX spot announced when it is a DX spot for a country you need based on Alert Options. Choose All DX Spots to announce the callsign of all DX spots.

Comport - Select the comport number which represents the serial port that is connected to your TNC. If you plan to use other software simultaneously with DXbase that also requires the use of a serial port, you should configure DXbase and the other software to use different serial ports since you usually cannot use the same serial port for both applications at the same time. NOTE: ***Do NOT*** select the same comport that is also used for your HF Radio interface. This will not work and will cause both the TNC and the HF Radio interfaces to be inoperative.

Baudrate - Select the baudrate that is set in your TNC. This is the baudrate used to communicate between your TNC and your computer. It is NOT the baudrate of your PacketCluster™ network.

Parity - Select the parity to be used. Usually this is “None.

Word Length - Select the Word Length. Usually this is “8.

Stopbits - Select the number of stop bits. Usually this is “1.

Other serial port options such as the IRQ and Address are not set in DXbase. These options are part of the basic Windows hardware configuration and must be set through the standard Windows configuration. DXbase simply uses the serial port as it is configured in your hardware settings and it will set the port parameters described above.

Screen Updates

This option tells DXbase when to update your screen based on incoming DX spots. You can choose to have no updates. Or, you can choose to have the screen updated each time a DX spot arrives in the VHF packet window. Lastly, you can choose to have your screen updated only when a DX spot is loaded into the DX Info window. We recommend the last entry (DX Info) because your screen will only be updated based on DX spots that you need. Screen updates refers to updates to the Summary window, QSL info window, previous QSO toolbar, etc...

Important: You must also insure that certain **settings inside your TNC** are set properly.

Internal TNC Settings

In addition to [setting options in DXbase](#), there are some recommended options that should be set in the TNC:

8BITCONV	OFF
ABAUD	Must be same as baudrate set in DXbase user options
AUTOLF	On
BKONDEL	ON
ECHO	Must be set ON so that you can see characters that are sent
FLOW	ON
SCREENL	80
MCON	OFF

A word about the PK232 TNC

If you are using some of the early versions of software supplied with the PK232 TNC, there is a possibility that your PK232 software will leave your PK232 TNC in 'HOST' mode upon exiting the PK232 software. If this occurs, no other software, including DXbase, will be able to communicate with the TNC. You will need to discontinue using this outdated software and obtain an update to your PK232 software that does not leave the TNC in host mode.

Internet Related

Internet-Host File Usage

DXbase adheres to the industry standard for establishing an internet connection via a telnet session. As such, the Windows HOST file is used to obtain the IP address that is to be used for a connection.

Host File placement during installation

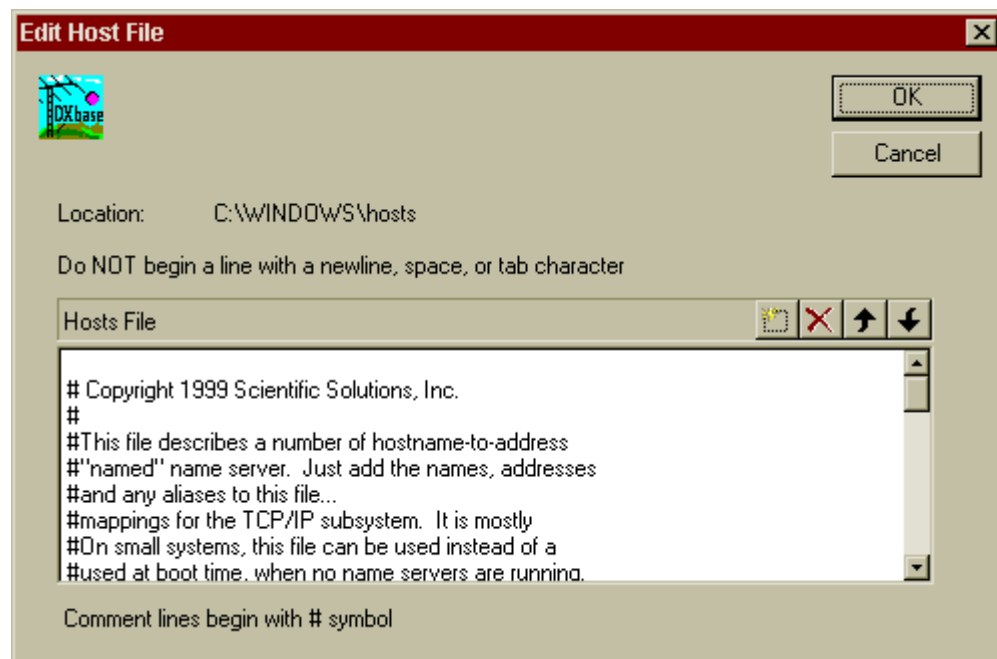
At the time you installed DXbase, a check of your Windows directory was made to determine if you had an existing Hosts file. NOTE: there is no file extension, just the base filename.

If a file by this name was not found, then DXbase installed a its Hosts file that contains most of the currently operational IP addresses that provide Internet Cluster service. If a Hosts file was

already resident in your Windows directory for Win95/98/ME or Winsystem32/drivers/etc for WinNT/2000/XP, DXbase renamed your existing Hosts file to Hosts/dxb24/bak, where dxb24 is the version of DXbase that performed this action. A copy of the DXbase Hosts file was also placed in your DXbase folder in case you need it for some use in the future. If the IP Host list box in the User Options Internet tab is empty or does not contain any valid entries for DX Clusters, then chances are that your system did not allow DXbase to rename your old Hosts file, or some other application has replaced our Hosts file. In either case, you will need to either copy the Hosts file from your DXbase folder into the appropriate folder on your system based on operating system replacing the one that is there, or, you will need to copy the data from the DXbase Hosts file and paste it into your Hosts file.

Editing a Host File

From time to time, you may discover that new IP addresses become available or old ones become disconnected. You can edit your Hosts file from within DXbase. Select from the main menu FILE/Modify Host File.



The current contents of your Hosts file will be displayed.

When making entries into the hosts file, you MUST follow certain predefined rules for the format of what is entered.

5. When entering an IP address the entry will be in four sections such as 24.17.21.123
6. You can follow this with a # symbol and place a short comment after it.
7. If the IP you want to enter requires a specific port, you should follow the entry described in item 1 above with a colon and the port number. No spaces before the colon or after the colon.

8. Some clusters do not use an IP address but instead use the URL description. These entries follow the same rules as above. You can look at the existing entries if you are unsure about the format.

Add a new entry

Click the “New (Insert) button and enter the new IP on the empty line that is displayed. Click anywhere within the window to change out of edit mode.

Delete an existing entry

Click the entry you wish to delete and then click the delete button.

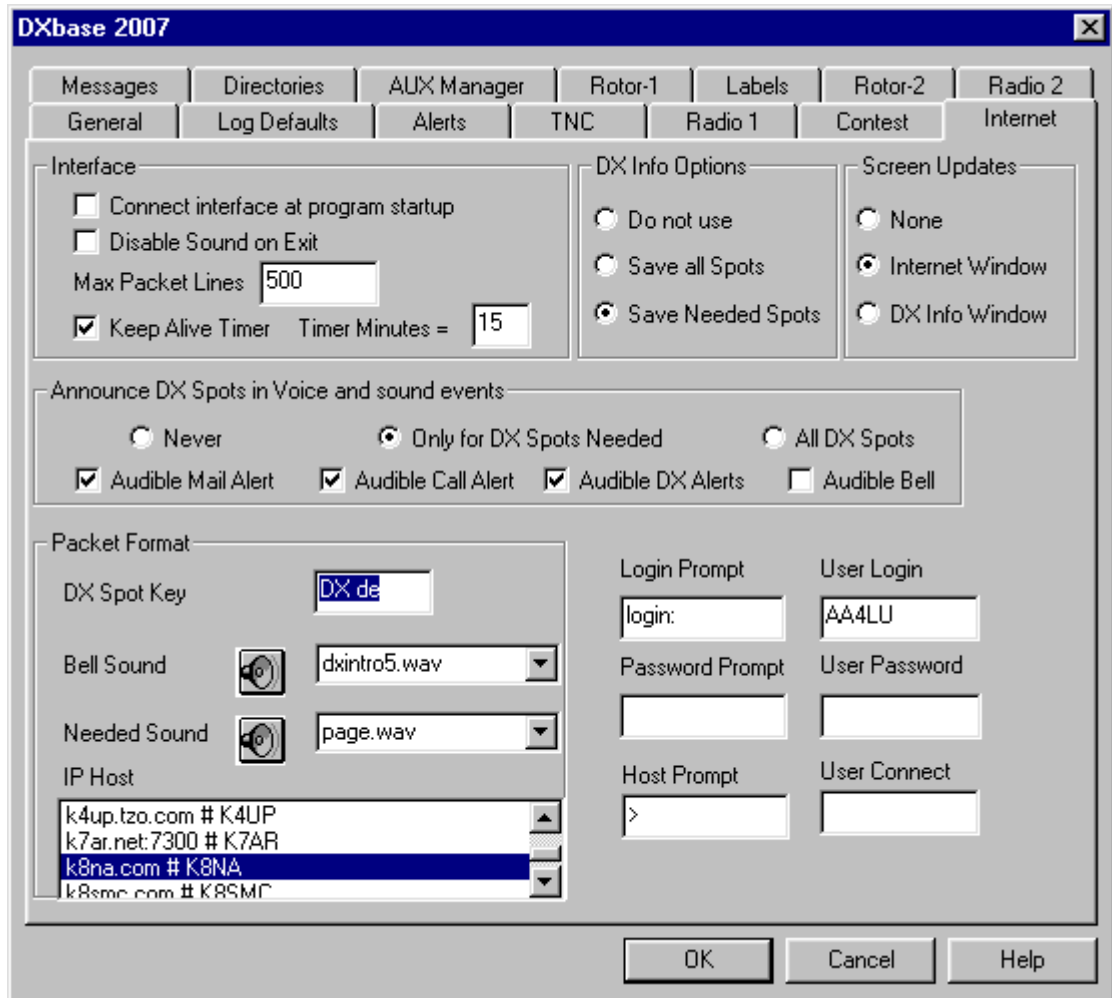
Change an existing entry

Double click the entry you wish to change. The line will be placed in edit mode and you can over type your changes. Click anywhere in the window to change out of edit mode. Click OK to save your changes, or click cancel to abort your changes.

Note: When modifying the hosts file, the hosts file that is being edited is the one that is located in your Windows folders and NOT the copy that was placed in your DXbase folder. So, if you routinely backup DXbase related files, you will want to backup the hosts file from your appropriate Windows folder. The copy that was placed in your DXbase folder was only put there in case you needed to refer to it when editing an existing hosts file.

Internet-User Options

These options control the operation of your interface to the Internet Cluster using Microsoft standard Telnet techniques.



DXinfo Options

As DX spots are received, DXbase writes the information to the VHF Packet and/or the Internet Packet windows. DXbase also provides another window called DXinfo under the DX Spots tab where only DX spots are stored. This option controls when DXbase will place an entry into the DXinfo DX spots window. This provides a convenient place to see only DX spots. We recommend that this option be set to "Save Needed DX spots. Or, if you do not plan to use this feature, choose "Do Not Use. Saving all DX spots can cause this table to become very large and result in performance slowing down. You can eliminate performance impacts by frequently emptying the contents of the DX Info DX Spots tab.

Connect Interface at program startup

This option tells DXbase to automatically try to make a telnet connection to your DX Cluster when you start DXbase. For this option to work, you MUST first have your connection to the internet established before you start DXbase.

Auto Screen Statistics - As DX spots are received in the Internet Packet window, DXbase can automatically update your screen display to reflect statistics and manager information. Place a check here to turn this option on.

Screen Updates

This option tells DXbase when to update your screen based on incoming DX spots. You can choose to have no updates. Or, you can choose to have the screen updated each time a DX spot arrives in the VHF packet window. Lastly, you can choose to have your screen updated only when a DX spot is loaded into the DX Info window. We recommend the last entry (DX Info) because your screen will only be updated based on DX spots that you need. Screen updates refers to updates to the Summary window, QSL info window, previous QSO toolbar, etc...

Disable Sound on Exit - Place a check here to have DXbase automatically turn all sound off upon exiting the program. By doing this, the next time you start DXbase, all sound will be disabled until you turn it back on by clicking the speaker ICON located on the DXbase status bar.

Max Packet Lines - Enter the number of lines that are allowed to accumulate before DXbase begins overwriting the oldest entries. Recommended value is between 1 and 2 thousand. The higher this number, the more memory that DXbase will require.

DX Spot Key - This is the unique set of characters which represents a DX spot. The default is DX de.

Sound choices - The type of sounds that are used are based on the sound files that have been selected under the User Options **directory tab**. There is a choice for one of the following:

7. YL sounds
8. OM sounds
9. CW sounds

Bell Sound - Select the sound file that DXbase will use whenever it received the “Bell character from the Internet host.

Needed Sound - Select the sound file that DXbase will use to announce that you need this DX spot.

IP Host - Select the IP connection that DXbase should use whenever you attempt to establish a connection to an Internet Cluster. You should see a list of choices available in this box. If you do not see any, or if you only see a few, then the DXbase Hosts file has been replaced by some other Hosts file. You will need to **correct this condition** before you can proceed. Once your system is verified to be using the DXbase Hosts file, you can use the “Modify Hosts option to add, change, or delete entries in your Windows host file.

Announce DX spots in voice - Choose this option if you want DXbase to announce the callsign and frequency of each incoming DX spot phonetically using your Windows sound system. Select Only DX Spots Needed to announce the callsign of a DX Spot only if it is needed based on Alert Options. Select All DX Spots to announce the callsign of all DX spots. Select Never to disable this feature.

Audible Mail - Check this box if you want DXbase to automatically notify you when new mail is received over the Internet Packet connection.

Audible Call - Check this box if you want DXbase to play the “Needed sound whenever it detects the callsign entered under User Options Alerts in the call alert field.

Audible DX Alerts - Check this box if you want DXbase to play the “Needed sound whenever it detects a DX spot that you need based on the parameters set in user options Alerts.

Audible Bell - Check this box if you want DXbase to play the “Bell sound file whenever it detects the bell character from the Internet Packet connection.

The following parameters control the automated connection process to your Internet Cluster.

Login Prompt - This is the series of characters received when the host wants you to enter your login. The default is login:

User Login - This is the login that DXbase will send in response to the Login Prompt. This is your callsign. Only callsigns that have been registered can be used. If you enter a callsign that has not been registered, the entry will be ignored and will not be accepted.

Password Prompt - This is the series of characters received when the host wants you to enter your password. The default is Password:

User Password - This is the password that DXbase will send in response to a Password prompt. Usually this is your first name.

Host Prompt - This is the character received when the host is ready to receive a connect request. The default is the greater than symbol>

User Connect - This is the connect command that DXbase will automatically send when it receives the Host Prompt. Usually this is DXC for DX Cluster.

NOTE: Novell installations

If your installation includes Novell's IP/IPX gateway that renames the WSOCK32.DLL to WSOCK32.N01 you may encounter an ERROR STARTING PROGRAM. The DXB2006.EXE file is linked to a missing export WSOCK32.DLL:1140

Rename the WSOCK32.N01 to WSOCK32.DLL

If your system is using a real TCP/IP address, or DHCP, or obtaining the IP address from an IP server, there is no problem.

Internet- Proxy Server Usage

DXbase will function in an environment where the proxy server is configured correctly. Some issues to take into account are:

Each computer will need to be set up with a different internal TCP/IP address and pointed out to the proxy as the default gateway unless you are using DHCP.

Configure your computer's TCP/IP properties.

Consult your operating system documentation and reference material for installing Proxy Servers for further information on configuring your system.

Band Plan

Band Plan Settings

The modern day operation of ham radio has brought many new digital modes that still rely on the SSB mode of operation of the HF radio. In addition, the use of voice and cw modes of operation are different based on the country in which you live. This results in voice operation in what might be considered to be the "CW portion of the band and so forth. DXbase allows you to decide where to make the distinction on what frequency range should be considered to be a particular mode. This information is used primarily in processing incoming DX spots for both VHF and Internet.

This module determines what mode will be assigned when the frequency is in the range that is listed. You can split a band into as many different ranges as you want; however, *it is very critical that frequency ranges cannot overlap*. For example,

Do NOT do this:

10100 10140 CW

10125 10130 USB

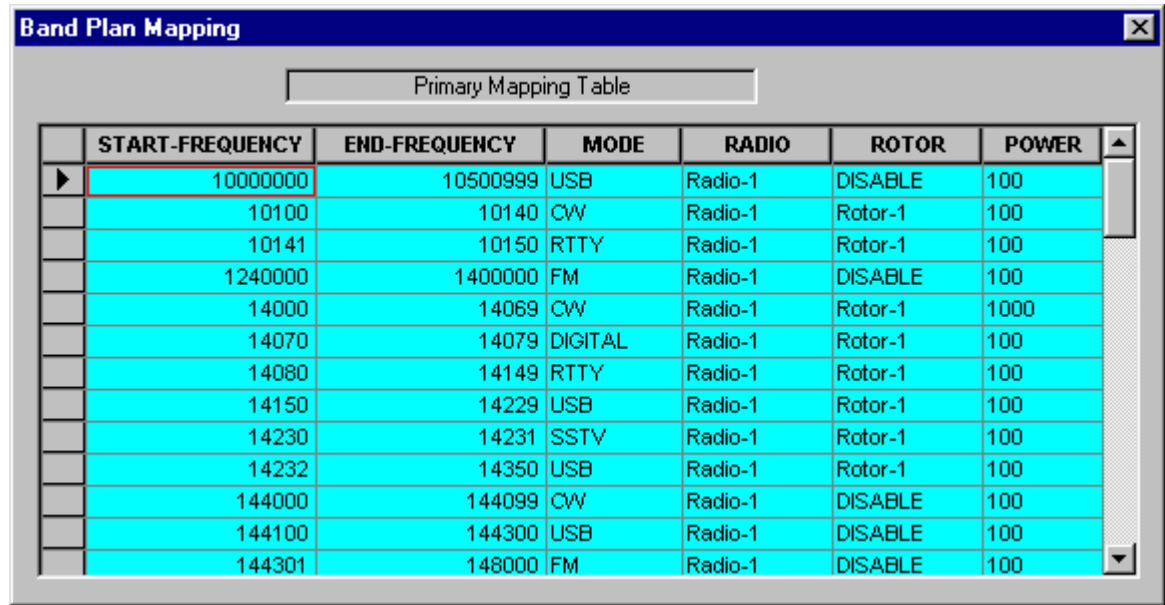
Notice in the above that the second range is already included in the first range. An entry like the above would not yield the correct results because when looking up the mode, DXbase would use the first entry that it found where the frequency fit the range. Thus it would not know about the second range.

Overview

It is customary that certain parts of a band are used for certain modes of operation. For example, the lower end is usually CW, the upper end is usually phone. Certain frequencies are used for SSTV, PSK31, and so forth. This module allows you to map out each part of a band into as many

different segments as you want and allows you to specify what mode should be used whenever the frequency involved falls within that range.

This module is used by DXbase whenever a packet DX spot is received, when logging without an HF radio interface, and is used to over ride the mode retrieved from your HF radio if you have that user option turned on.



	START-FREQUENCY	END-FREQUENCY	MODE	RADIO	ROTOR	POWER
▶	10000000	10500999	USB	Radio-1	DISABLE	100
	10100	10140	CW	Radio-1	Rotor-1	100
	10141	10150	RTTY	Radio-1	Rotor-1	100
	1240000	1400000	FM	Radio-1	DISABLE	100
	14000	14069	CW	Radio-1	Rotor-1	1000
	14070	14079	DIGITAL	Radio-1	Rotor-1	100
	14080	14149	RTTY	Radio-1	Rotor-1	100
	14150	14229	USB	Radio-1	Rotor-1	100
	14230	14231	SSTV	Radio-1	Rotor-1	100
	14232	14350	USB	Radio-1	Rotor-1	100
	144000	144099	CW	Radio-1	DISABLE	100
	144100	144300	USB	Radio-1	DISABLE	100
	144301	148000	FM	Radio-1	DISABLE	100

The default settings shipped with DXbase represent the US band allocation. Normally, this setting is acceptable worldwide. You may want to modify these settings during a Contest Weekend (such as the CQWW) when you are likely to find many stations operating voice in what would otherwise be the CW portion of the band. The simplest way to temporarily setup for a contest such as CQWW would be to change the mode and leave the frequency ranges as they are. For example, in the 14080 to 14149 range which is normally RTTY operation, you might change this to USB during the phone contest. Don't forget to change it back after the contest.

Frequency entries should be full KHZ. Do not use any decimal points or MHZ entries. Only KHZ. Select the mode from the drop down list in the mode field.

NOTE: If the DX spot contains the phrase "RTTY" or "FSK" in the remarks section of a DX spot, the user defined RTTY mode will be chosen.

This module is used for automatically selecting whether to use Radio1 or Radio2, Rotor1 or Rotor2, and the power level for your log. Select which radio, rotor, and power you wish to have used for each frequency range. If you choose Disable for a radio or rotor setting, the automatic selection will be ignored for this frequency range.

Previous QSOs

Previous QSOs Overview

There are two different modules or windows in DXbase that provide information about previous QSOs:

1. The **Previous QSO module** is an interactive window that will appear whenever you select the Previous QSO Module from the Tools menu, click on a band/mode entry in the Summary Window, click the binocular ICON in the Summary window, or use the hotkey assigned to activate this module. This module is a quick way to retrieve all your QSO records based on certain filter criteria. For example, you can list all past QSOs with a certain prefix, callsign, date, IOTA, etc. It allows you to update fields and it gives you an easy way to process incoming QSL cards.
2. The **Previous QSO Toolbar** is a dockable window that automatically lists past QSOs in an abbreviated and freeform display. The previous QSO toolbar can be opened or closed by using the View menu selection. This is a display window only. There is no user interaction with this window. As you click in a QSO record past QSOs with this callsign are automatically displayed in the Previous QSO Toolbar. Similar automatic displays are available when incoming DX spots are received is user options for this auto update feature are turned on.

Previous QSO Module

To display previous QSOs, click the "Previous QSO" ICON on the main toolbar. You can also use the default hot-key of F3 unless you have customized the F3 key to be used for some other function. A third option would be to select VIEW/Previous QSOs from the main menu.

Previous QSOs

	Date	Time	Callsign	RSTs	RSTr	Name	QTH	Notes	Prefix	CQ	IT
▶	02-13-1984	22:38:00	TU2MY	59	59				TU	35	46
	09-07-1984	18:21:00	TU2NA	59	59				TU	35	46
	01-21-1984	19:45:00	TU2MW	599	599				TU	35	46
	01-26-1984	02:58:00	TU2MW	59	59				TU	35	46
	03-04-1990	15:43:00	TU2UI	59	59				TU	35	46
	04-19-1990	01:59:00	TU4BR	59	59				TU	35	46
	12-11-1988	23:25:00	TU4CO	599	599				TU	35	46
*											

Record 1

QSO Field:
 Callsign
Prefix
 CQ Zone
 US State
 Iota
 WPX
 CRD

Value to Find: **TU**

☐ Select Field Order

Label Comment Over-ride

Commands:
 Save QSO CFM QSO Reply SWL Reply
 Find Label Unhide
 DXB ADR LABEL CD ADR LABEL

CFM type to set
☒ Set for Card
☐ Set for LOTY

This module allows the user to customize the display by hiding fields that are not needed and to resize the field width. To hide a field, use the left mouse button and click on the right vertical bar in the column header of the field you wish to hide and drag it closed to the left. To resize a field, click on the left vertical bar of the field and drag it to the left. To unhide a field, click on a record and use the right mouse button selection to unhide fields. Your customized settings will be saved when you close the dialog box and will be automatically used the next time you select this dialog.

This feature allows you to easily locate and display previous QSO records with a station, zone, prefix, etc. The default lookup that is used when you click the ICON is dependent on the *last* activity that you have performed. If a DX spot was received and you have not clicked on a QSO record in the log, then the default lookup will be the callsign of the last DX spot received. If you have clicked on a QSO record in the log, then the default lookup will be the callsign from the log. If you activated this window from the HF or VHF Numeric Statistics modules, the value that was selected in that module will be the default that is displayed here.

Changing Search Parameters

To modify the lookup parameters and display previous QSO records based on different selection parameters, select the QSO Field you wish to use for the search from the "QSO Field" list in the "Previous QSO dialog box. Overtyping the "Value To Find" field with the actual value that you wish to search for and press the enter key or click the Find button. DXbase provides some special lookup fields so that you can specify more than one filter criteria:

Band+Mode+Country (40+CW+GM) where 40 is the band, CW is the mode, and GM is the country prefix

Band+Mode+CQ	(20+USB+36) where 20 is the band, USB is the mode, and 36 is the CQ zone
Band+Mode+State is the US State	(160+AMTOR+GA) where 160 is the band, AMTOR is the mode, GA
Band+Mode+IOTA the IOTA.	(80+LSB+NA160) where 80 is the band, LSB is the mode, NA160 is
Band+Mode+GRID	""
Band+Mode+WPX	""
Band+Mode+Spec1	""
Band+Mode+Spec2	""
Band+Mode	""

Updating Records

In this module, you can edit the fields of a QSO record. For example, you can add an entry for the US State, County, Etc. To save your changes, simply click on another record, or use the Save button. This module does NOT allow you to add a new QSO record, or to delete a record. To add or delete a QSO record, you must perform this activity in the QSO log directly.

Select Field Order

Place a check in this box if you want DXbase to ask you for a field order configuration file the next time you activate the Previous QSO module. A configuration file allows you to specify the order in which the QSO record fields will appear.

Button Functions:

Save - Stores the record that currently has the focus.

Find - Queries the database based on the criteria entered in the "Value to Find" field.

QSO CFM - Marks the record which currently has the focus as confirmed and saves the change

Label - Stores a QSO label in the Pending QSO label database based on the current state of the record. If it is marked confirmed, the label will indicate TNX, if it is marked not confirmed the label will indicate PSE.

Reply - Marks the current record as confirmed, stores a QSO label to the pending label database, and saves the record. This is a powerful feature designed to make processing of bureau QSL cards as simple as possible.

Unhide - Displays the Unhide QSO fields window.

SWL – This button allows you to respond to an SWL report. When clicked, a pop up window will appear that let's you enter the SWL callsign. When you close this pop up, a label is stored that automatically places TNX for the QSO, Hrd wrking in the label comment field, S as the label group, SWL as the RSTs.

CFM Type to Set – This provides a means for telling DXbase what kind of confirmation you want made. Card means that you are marking QSL cards received. LOTW means that you are marking QSOs as confirmed in the [ARRL's Logbook of the World](#). When you click the Confirm button, DXbase will mark the confirmation based on the setting in this box.

CD Address label and DXB Address label

These buttons allow you to save an address label based on the choice you make. The CD adr button saves the address displayed in the QSL info window for CD lookup. The DXB adr button saves the address displayed in the QSL info window for a DXbase address lookup.

Label Comment Override

This field allows you to over ride the default comments from user options with whatever is typed into this field. If this field is blank, then the default comment from user options label tab is used.

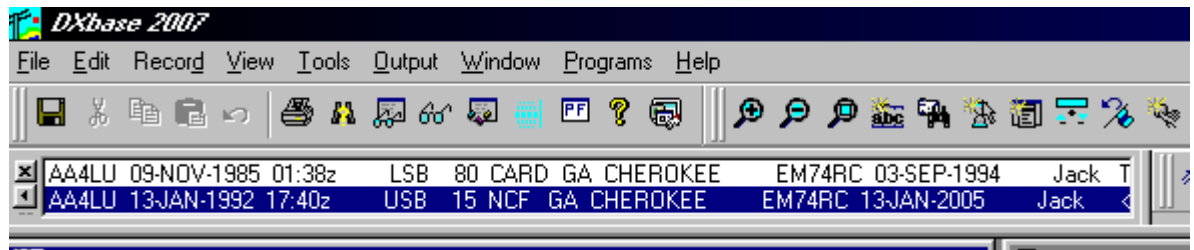
Remember to save any changes you may have made to a QSO record before you close the dialog. Otherwise, the change will be ignored.

NOTE:

The last line displayed in this window may show a default field value of USB and 2mtr. Please ignore this line. It has no meaning.

Previous QSO Toolbar

The previous QSO toolbar is a dockable and sizeable window. It can be displayed or hidden by accessing the View menu and clicking on it's title to toggle it on or off. This window can also be moved around the screen and docked to the top or bottom of your screen.

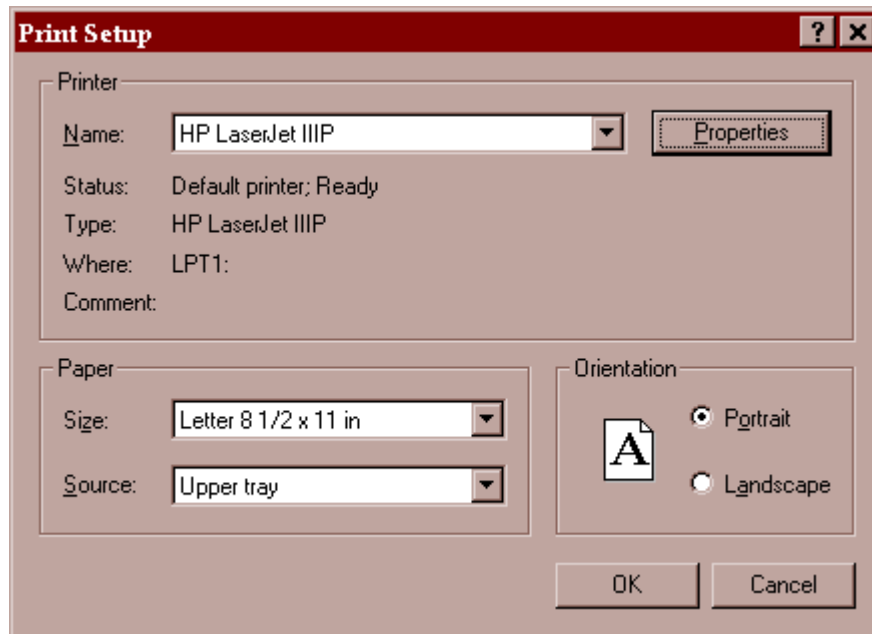


In this example, the previous QSO toolbar is docked to the top of the screen and has been sized to show three QSOs. Each time you click on a callsign, a packet DX spot arrives, or you click on a DX spot from the DX Info window, this window is automatically updated to show any past QSOs with the callsign you clicked.

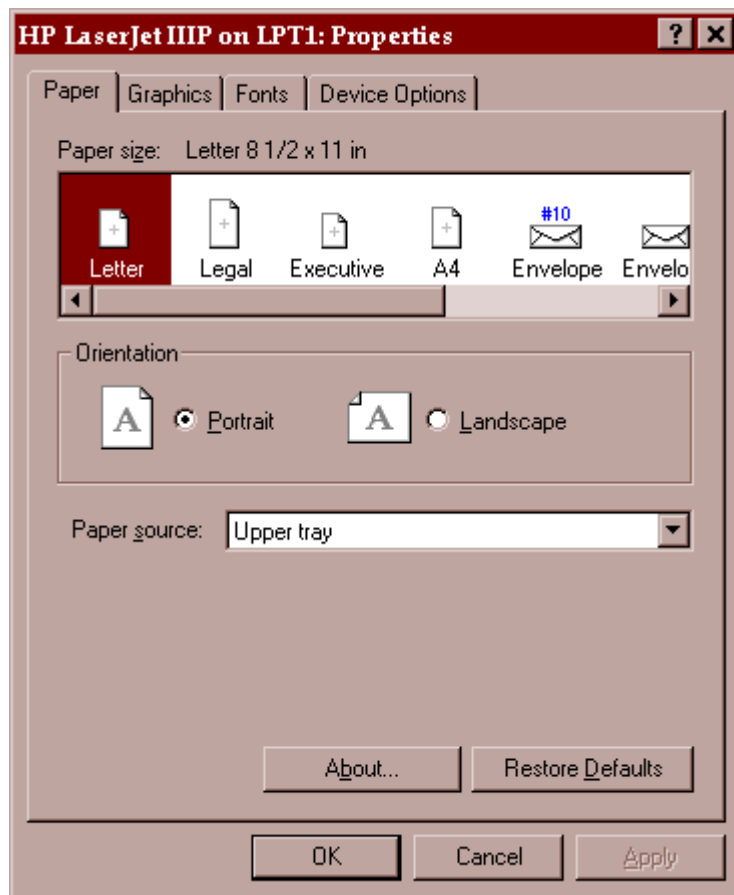
Printing

Printer Setup

DXbase provides direct access to the Windows printer setup dialogs. These allow you to configure your Windows printer parameters. Please refer to your Windows 95/NT help systems for a more detailed explanation about each of the available settings. We merely reference them here to point out where you would set general options such as paper size, margins, etc. With the QSO Log View current, select FILE/PRINT Setup from the application menu. Set the options as necessary for your installation. Remember that to print your log it is best to select Landscape because the Log is very wide.



If you click the Properties button you will have access to set the printer options as well.



Printing QSO Log

There are two ways to obtain a print of your QSO log. The method described below discusses printing from the log directly from the File | Print menu. Before selecting File | Print, make sure you have the QSO log window current by clicking in it. An alternative method for printing your log is to use a [User Designed List](#). Some sample User Designed List projects were installed for your convenience and they provide a more “report like printout.



You can easily print your QSO log. The log will be printed in exactly the same format as it appears in the QSO log display. If particular columns are hidden, they will not appear in the printed output. If grid lines are turned off, then they will not appear in the printed output. If you have more than one printer, make certain you have set the Windows default printer to the printer you wish to use before you proceed. Refer to your Windows help for instructions on how to set the default printer. This printing option essentially prints what you see in the QSO Log window.

Before printing your log, you should first set a page title and footer. To do this, select FILE/HEADER-FOOTER from the application menu.

Header / Footer

Header/Footer

Left Aligned	Centered	Right Aligned
	\$D	

Font...

Header Footer

Distance to Frame:

Header: 0.40 in Footer: 0.40 in

Page numbering

First Page No. auto

OK Cancel ☐ Save settings to profile

You can define the appearance and content of both the header of the log report and the footer. There are several options:

► Use one of following predefined character sets and simply type it into the cell in which you want it to appear. The cells represent the relative position on the page.

\$D	The current date and time
\$P	The page number currently being printed
\$N	The total number of pages to be printed
\$A	The name of the application (DXbase xxxx)
\$F	The first page number

You may want to place an entry such as (Page \$P of \$N) which might print as Page 1 of 5

► You can type text into any of the cells and the text will appear on the printed pages. You might want to add an entry with your callsign.

► To set the font and font size for a cell, click in the cell and then click the font button. Set the font and font size options and then click OK. You must set each cell independently. In other words, each cell can have a different font and size.

► To save your changes only for a temporary time while the DXbase is running, simply click the OK button. If you want your setting to be used now and each time you run DXbase for these to be the defaults, then place a check in the “Save settings to profile box and then click OK. To cancel your changes, click cancel.

You should set your printer parameters using FILE/PRINT Setup. In particular, you should change the format to landscape so that the log will be printed sideways on the page.

Other Options

DXbase provides other methods for obtaining a print of your QSO records. These options provide the capability to exercise more control over the records that will be included in the print.

► **User Defined Lists** allow the user to create a customized list and offers the option of using the entire QSO log of records as the base, or using the output from the Selection Wizard.

► **Standard Reports** provide some predefined reports that automatically extract particular types of QSO records based on the type of standard report selected.

User Defined Log Prints

There are two ways to obtain prints of your QSO log. One way is to print the log **directly from the log display**. The other is to use a User Designed List. The advantage of the second method is that you have much greater control over the formatting of the presentation and the selection of the fields to be included.

A sample **User Designed List project** was installed. You can use this as is, or you may wish to modify it for your purposes.

Below is a sample of what the "log in ARRL paper format" user designed list report looks like.



Logbook of AA4LU

DATE	FREQ	MODE	PWR	TIME	STATION WORKED	REPORT		TIME OFF	QTH	COM
						Sent	Rec'd			
14 AUG 1967	0	SSB		2322	XW8AA	59	59	2322		
16 JAN 1975	0	SSB		1901	4W1GM	59	59	1901		
02 FEB 1975	0	SSB		1805	CR7GJ	59	59	1805		
02 MAR 1975	0	SSB		1534	CR7JO	59	59	1534		
03 JAN 1976	0	SSB		1708	5U7AG	59	59	1708		
06 JAN 1976	0	SSB		1544	VU7GV	59	59	1544		
08 MAR 1976	0	SSB		0516	VP8OB	59	59	0516		
03 JAN 1977	0	SSB		1806	EP2AH	59	59	1806		
08 AUG 1978	0	SSB		1526	ZL4LR/A	59	59	1526		
02 JAN 1979	0	SSB		1301	JT1KAI	59	59	1301		
12 JAN 1979	0	SSB		2330	JT1KAI	59	59	2330		
15 JAN 1979	0	SSB		1303	A6XJA	59	59	1303		
02 FEB 1979	0	CW		1201	JT1KAI	599	599	1201		
16 FEB 1979	0	CW		1714	ZS2MI	599	599	1714		
16 FEB 1979	0	CW		2106	ZS2MI	599	599	2106		
08 MAR 1979	0	SSB		1816	FR7ZL/T	59	59	1816		
11 APR 1979	0	SSB		0040	1S1DX	59	59	0040		
22 JAN 1980	0	CW		0525	OK3TAB/D2A	599	599	0525		
23 APR 1980	0	CW		0506	ET3PG	599	599	0506		
26 JUN 1980	0	CW		0335	3B6CD	599	599	0335		
19 JUL 1980	0	SSB		0058	SV1IW/A	59	59	0058		
24 AUG 1980	0	CW		0212	UA0LJ	599	599	0212		
17 SEP 1980	0	SSB		1953	FR0DZJ	59	59	1953		
05 DEC 1980	0	SSB		1335	UH8HA1	59	59	1335		
07 DEC 1980	0	SSB		1256	J20/A	59	59	1256		
01 JAN 1981	0	SSB		1150	UG6GBM	59	59	1150		

3/31/2002 - 11:28 am

Reports and Charts

User Defined

User Designed Lists Overview

DXbase provides a powerful report generator that allows for customization of a report based on the contents of your QSO log. To help avoid confusion, we refer to this activity as “lists rather than reports since DXbase also provides dozens of predefined reports.

The process of creating and using “User defined Lists is similar to the methodology used for creating Labels; however, there are some unique differences that are described below. DXbase is designed so that the format of the list is completely independent of the records or contents of the list. At the time you generate a list, you will have the option of using the entire QSO log as the base for the records that will appear on the list, or, you can specify that only records contained in the output from the Selection Wizard are to be used. You will also have options presented which allow you to select the sort order on the list. The list will be displayed on your screen in WYSIWYG format and you will have options for printing to your printer or sending the list through the Windows Messaging System if you have this installed.

DXbase uses the concept of a Project for user defined lists. A project is a set of files that contain formatting information about a particular list that you design. You can think of this as if you were creating a document in a text editor. You would open a blank document, add some text and so forth, and then you would save your document and assign a filename. List Projects are similar. You start out with an empty (new) project, add your text, pictures, records and fields, etc., and then you save your project by assigning a name. We recommend that you always place your List Projects in the same directory. This will insure that when you select a particular project for display and printing, that all available projects appear in the filename dialog that you will use to select the project name. Otherwise, you will have to remember where you stored various List Projects later. Note that List Projects do not use the same filename extensions as labels.

Step 1

► Activate the List Designer module and create a List Project. You can have as many of these type projects as you want. Each List Project will have its own name that you will use when you print the list. When you assign a name to a List Project, we recommend that you try to use a name that will be meaningful to you so that you can recognize what this particular List Project represents. In addition, within the List Designer module, there is an option for you to enter text that describes this project. Be sure to use this option because the description that you enter will appear in the file selection dialog later so that you can easily recognize the characteristics for a particular List Project.

► While designing your List Project, you can place fixed text, pictures, etc., anywhere on your page. The primary difference between this process for Lists as compared with designing labels is that you will place a table on your page for a list. The table represents the area of the page that

will contain the records that are to be printed. You will size the table to fit the portion of the page that is to display records.

► Using the features in the List Designer, you will decide which fields from the QSO record are to appear on the list. Additionally, you can specify the fonts, colors, etc., for each field. For expert users, you can define filter criteria, and other complex conditional statements that control appearance and record selection.

► When complete, you will save the List Project and assign a name for this project.

At this point, you now have a List Project established and stored.

Step 2

DXbase provides two options that control what QSO records will be used when you display or print a List Project. One choice is to use the full QSO log database, the second is to use the output from the Selection Wizard. Each time you use your List Project, you can specify which choice you want without having to make any modifications to the project.

If you want to use the output from the Selection Wizard, you should run the Selection Wizard to create your output file; otherwise, you can use the full QSO Log.

When you select the option to display a User Defined List, you will be asked which QSO database to use, the sort order, and the name of the List Project.

You should decide what options you want to use so you will be ready to provide this information when asked.

Step 3

By this point, you are now ready to display or print a User defined List.

► Select Print User Defined List

► Enter the choice of data to use and sort order

► Select the List Project name

► Choose the other print options if you like

- ▶ Display the report on the screen
- ▶ Print to printer if you like

After you have created a List Project during step 1 above, you can use that project as often as you want without having to redesign the List Project.

Detailed help is available in the Designer Module when this is active and will provide information about how to create a project and various features that are contained within the Designer Module. The Help File associated with the Designer module is different than this help file that you are currently reading. The help file in the designer module is only available when the designer module is active on your screen.

User Designed Charts Overview

DXbase provides the ability to create graphs and charts. Charts are classified as a user defined report since they are created similar to other user designed reports. In the current implementation, charts are NOT intended to be mixed with other data on a combined report. In other words, you can have a user designed report, or a user designed chart, but trying to mix a chart and a report in the same project is not supported.

For your convenience, many sample charts have already been created and are available for your use. You can access these in the same way that you select user designed reports. The project names all have the word chart in the project name for easy identification. Each sample project name is descriptive so that you can identify the purpose for the chart.

Add a field to a list project

DXbase includes some sample list projects that can serve as a starting point for users to modify and create their own reports. The following explanation describes the process to add a new field to an existing project.

- ▶ Click "List Designer" ICON.
- ▶ Select "Reports" directory and the project name "logbook.lst" or your project file
- ▶ Click OK

- ▶ Left click the mouse inside of the page rectangle that is displayed so that this now has the focus.
- ▶ Right click the mouse and choose properties.
- ▶ Click the Header tab.
- ▶ Click insert

▶ In the "Edit Table" box that appears, type the name of the column header you want to add. The text you type must have double quotes around it. For example "My-Column"

- ▶ Click OK

Your new column title will now appear in the Columns list. Click it, and then set the column properties. This completes the steps to get your column header and the column established.

Now we must add the data for that column.

- ▶ Click the Data Line tab.
- ▶ Click Insert
- ▶ In the "Edit Table" box, click the variable tab and click the data variable that you want displayed in the new column.
 - ▶ Click Insert button
 - ▶ Click OK

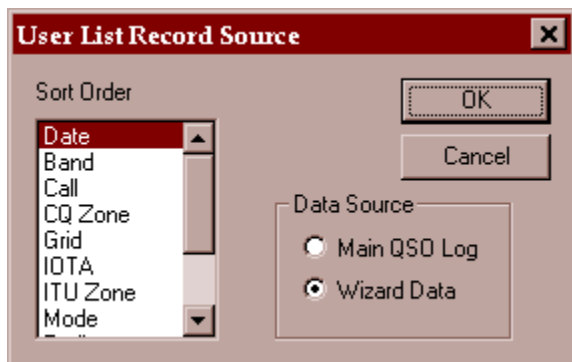
Your new variable name will now appear in the Columns list. Click it and now set the column properties for this. You should set these properties to agree with the width etc... that you previously set for the column header.

- ▶ Click OK

Your new column will now appear on the design form and also in the preview window.

Display or Print a List Project

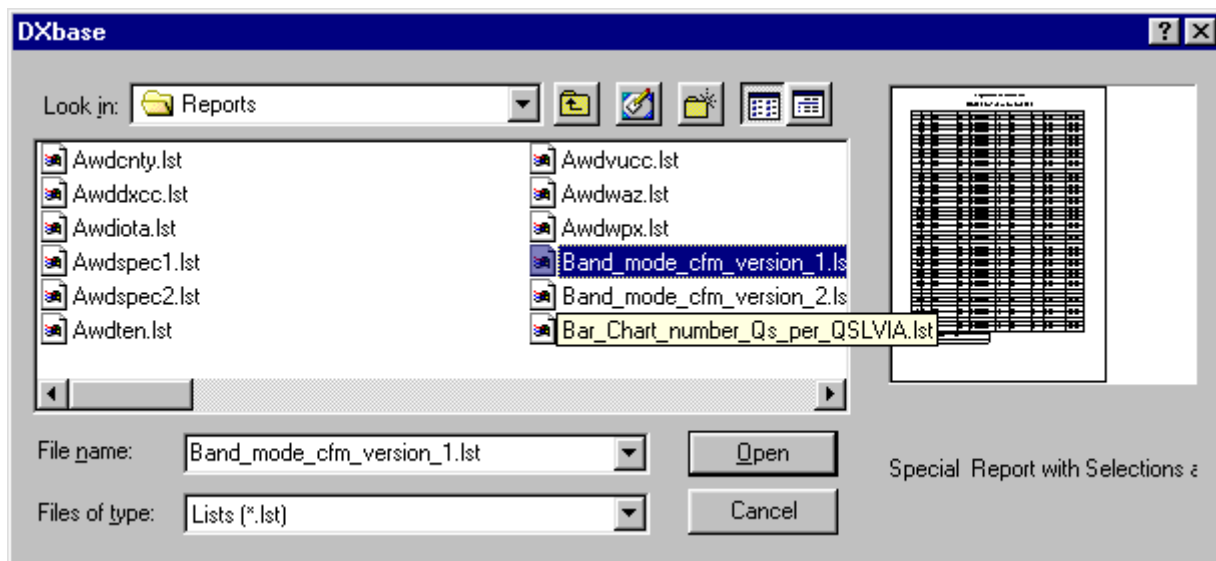
You can select a previously created List Project for display on the screen in WYSIWYG format and also to the Windows compatible printer. Before proceeding, be sure, if you intend use output data from the Selection Wizard, that you have already created this data. From the application menu, choose OUTPUT/USER Defined List, or use the Print List ICON on the toolbar.



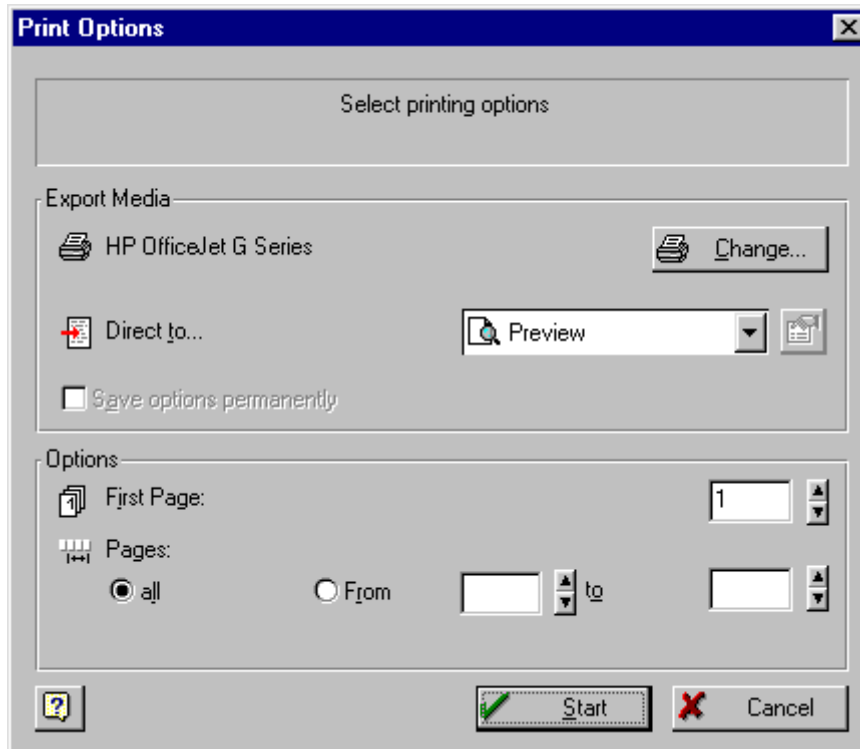
Highlight the sort order

Select the Data source

Click OK when done, or Cancel to abort



Select the List Project you wish to display and print and click open.



Select the output type you want in the Export Media box. Typically you will want to select Preview and view the report on your screen. Once displayed, you can print the report to your printer by clicking the printer ICON that will appear.

Using Sample Reports and Charts

The samples provided can be used as is with no need on the part of the user to change anything. The samples each demonstrate certain features available but certainly not all of the capabilities available to you. Use the samples as a means of learning how to do things. Open a sample in the List designer module so that you can see the actual design. Click on the fields with the right mouse and explore the property settings for that field. The graphical design module can be a little difficult at a glance, but once you explore it, you'll begin to understand the capabilities.

Remember that if you make any changes in the design module, those changes will overwrite the original project that was installed by DXbase. We urge you to use Windows Explore and make a copy of the sample you wish to "play" with, and work with your copy rather than change the original. The files are located in the reports folder under your main DXbase folder. Each project will appear with two or three files all of which have the same base file name. Copy each of them to a new name and keep the same file extensions. For example,

A report project might be named myproject as the base filename. You would see files such as:

Myproject.lst

Myproject.lsv

Myproject.lsp

To make a copy of this project, you would copy each file and change the base name only. So, you would end up with

MyNewTest.lst

MyNewTest.lsv

MyNewTest.lsp

It is critical that you copy each of the two or three files and give each of them the exact same base filename.

Sharing List Projects with Others

The design of List Projects in DXbase includes complete independence between the format of the list, and the data that is used on the list. This architecture allows for sharing your list projects with others. The exception may be if your List Project contains any fixed test, others may wish to modify this text.

To share a List Project with others, send them the following two files:

Assume you have a List project named MYLIST. You will find several files that contain this base file name, but there are only two files that you should furnish to others:

MYLIST.LSV

MYLIST.LST

Do not send any other files. The other files contain system and printer specific information for your computer and will be automatically created if they do not exist. Advise the recipient to copy these two files into the directory where they store their List Projects, and that's all there is to it. If your List Project contains any graphics images such as .JPG pictures, you must also send them these graphics files as well.

User Defined Sample Charts

Tutorial Make a new Chart

For your convenience, we have included the sample project that is created from the steps below. If you want to try your hand at creating a different chart project, select a new name and use it instead of the MyChart name used below.

- Start Dxbase
- Main Menu - Tools / Design List project ...
- At the next window (DXBASE), type in MyChart - then click-on Open
- At the Project Wizard window – click-on Cancel
- Go to Main Menu / Project / Page Setup .. click-on the Export Media TAB and select "Preview" – then go to the upper righthand portion of this window and click-on the Green Checkmark
.. Then click-on OK.
- GO to Main Menu / Project / Options .. when the Options window comes up, click-on and
mark Show Grid and also Snap to Grid .. Click OK.
- Designer Main Menu – Objects / Insert / Chart
- Take the cursor and move it to the following location on the workspace:
- Top Ruler 1.0 / Left Ruler 2.0
- Then with the Left Mouse button "held down", move the mouse down and to the right so that you are making a rectangular box – ending at the following coordinates:
- Top Ruler 7.4 / Left Ruler 9.0

- Release the Left Mouse button – you have just created the workarea that the CHART will be located in.

- We will be creating a Pie Chart that will show the "percentage of QSOs per BAND".

- With the "Preview" TAB (lower portion of your screen) pushed, take your mouse and move it anywhere in the Chart's workspace. Then Right-click the mouse and a MENU window will appear. Select the Contents.

- Now, a Chart Properties window will appear.

- In the upper/left area – select - Pie

- Select the Datasource TAB,

- Datasource .. type-in - BAND (all in uppercase)

- Segment Labels .. pulldown the selection arrow and select – Value and percentage with one decimal

- Select the Type of Calculation TAB,

- At the Calculation Mode for Equal Data Values: .. pulldown the selection arrow and select - Number of Values

- Select the Options TAB,

- At the Title area .. type-in (exactly as shown here): 'Chart showing number of QSOs per BAND' the critical item here is that the ' must be at the beginning and at the end of your Title .. and do not use any ' anywhere else in your title.

- Click-on OK

- Designer Main Menu - File / Save / File / Exit

- You have now created a Pie-Chart and you can now run it against your wizard data or your complete Logbook. To run the Chart file, go to Main Menu - Output / User Designed Lists /

- Now make your selections in the "User List Record Source" window

- Select the filename of MyChart.lst

- Select Start - your chart is done!

Chart Sample Qs per band and Qs per mode

This is a sample chart that displays two bar graphs. It shows number of QSOs per band in one graph and number of QSOs per mode in the other. To use this sample:

1. Select User Designed Lists under the output menu item from the main DXbase menu.
2. Select the source data as either Wizard data or main QSO log.
3. Select the project title for this sample, "Chart_Qs_per_Band_Qs_per_Mode".
4. Select Preview in the Export Media box to display on your screen.
5. After the data is read, there may be a small delay while the graphic is being created for display on your screen.

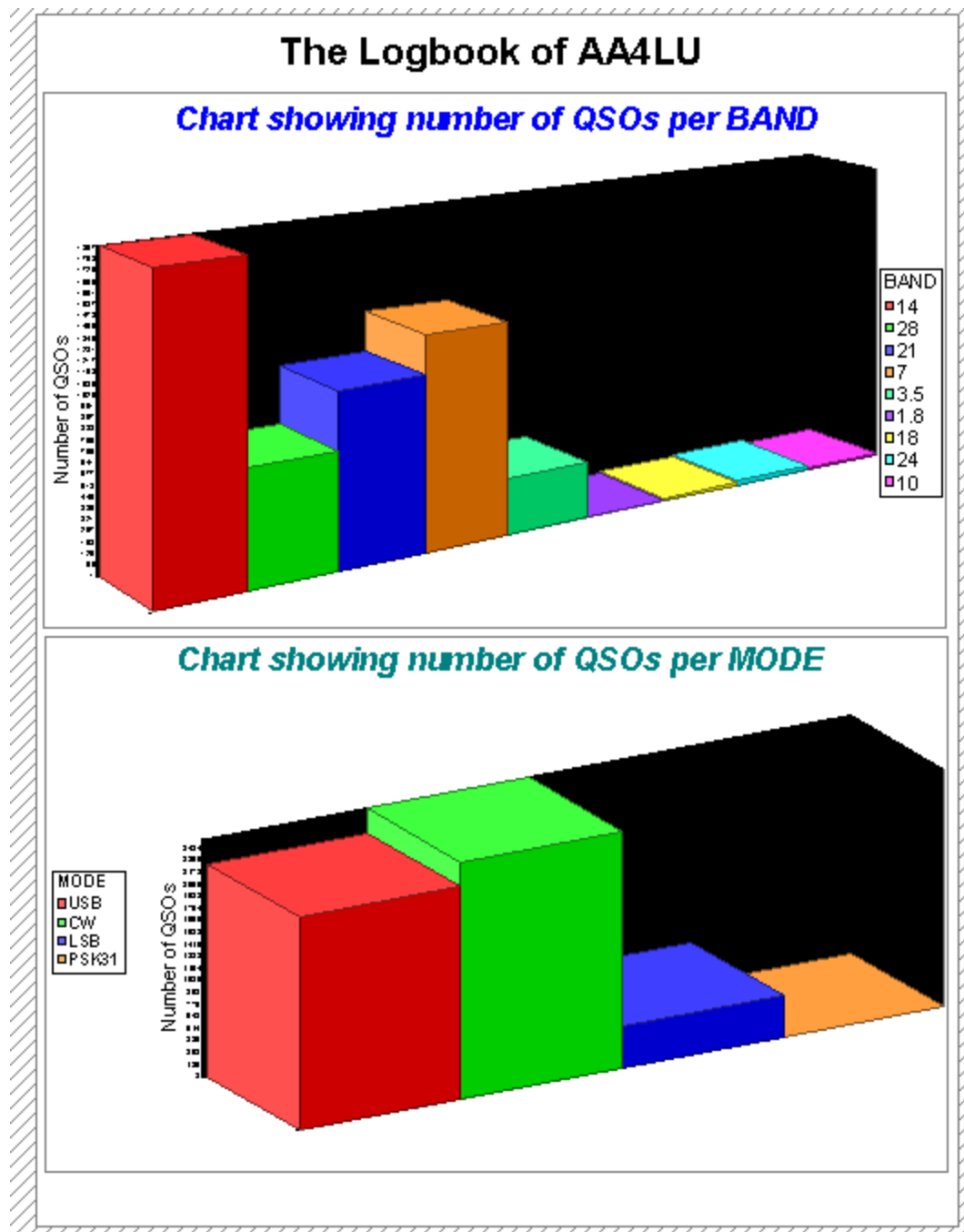


Chart Sample Number of Qs per QSLvia

This is a sample chart that displays a single bar graph. It shows number of QSOs per category of QSLvia. To use this sample chart:

1. Select User Designed Lists under the output menu item from the main DXbase menu.
2. Select the source data as either Wizard data or main QSO log.

3. Select the project title for this sample, "Bar_Chart_number Qs_per_QSLVIA".
4. Select Preview in the Export Media box to display on your screen.
5. After the data is read, there may be a small delay while the graphic is being created for display on your screen.

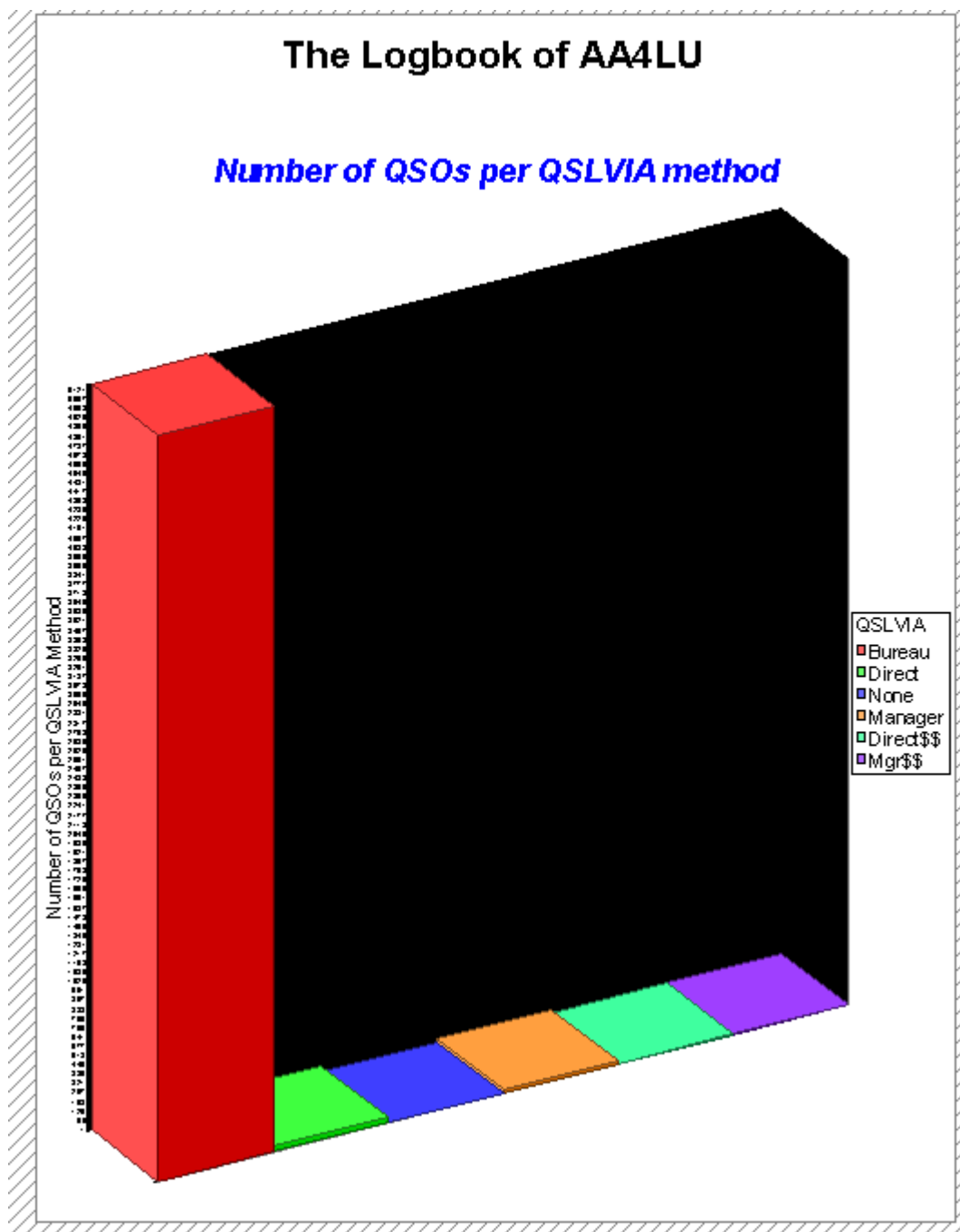


Chart Sample using stacked bars

This is a sample chart that displays stacked bars on a single graph. It shows the number of QSOs by QSLvia category with each category stacked one on top of the other with a separate bar per band. To use this sample chart:

1. Select User Designed Lists under the output menu item from the main DXbase menu.
2. Select the source data as either Wizard data or main QSO log.
3. Select the project title for the sample, "Stacked3d_CHART_QSLVIA_per_band".
4. Select Preview in the Export Media box to display on your screen.
5. After the data is read, there may be a small delay while the graphic is being created for display on your screen.

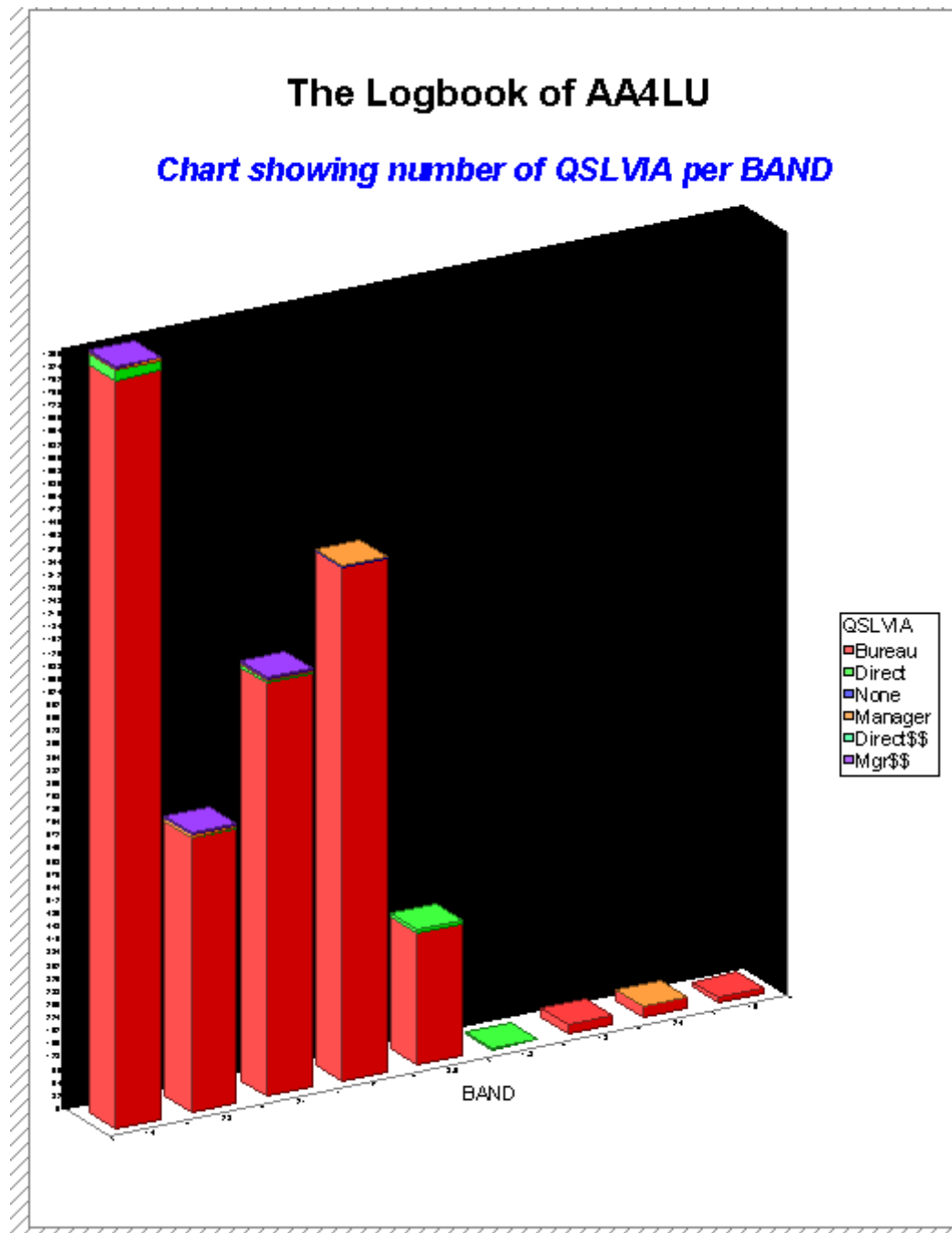


Chart Sample CFM and Not CFM

This is a sample chart that displays a multi-row, multi-column graph. It shows the number of QSOs Confirmed and not Confirmed by band. To use this sample chart:

1. Select User Designed Lists under the output menu item from the main DXbase menu.

2. Select the source data as either Wizard data or main QSO log.
3. Select the project title for this sample, "Multirow_chart_CFM_notCFM_per_band".
4. Select Preview in the Export Media box to display on your screen.
5. After the data is read, there may be a small delay while the graphic is being created for display on your screen.

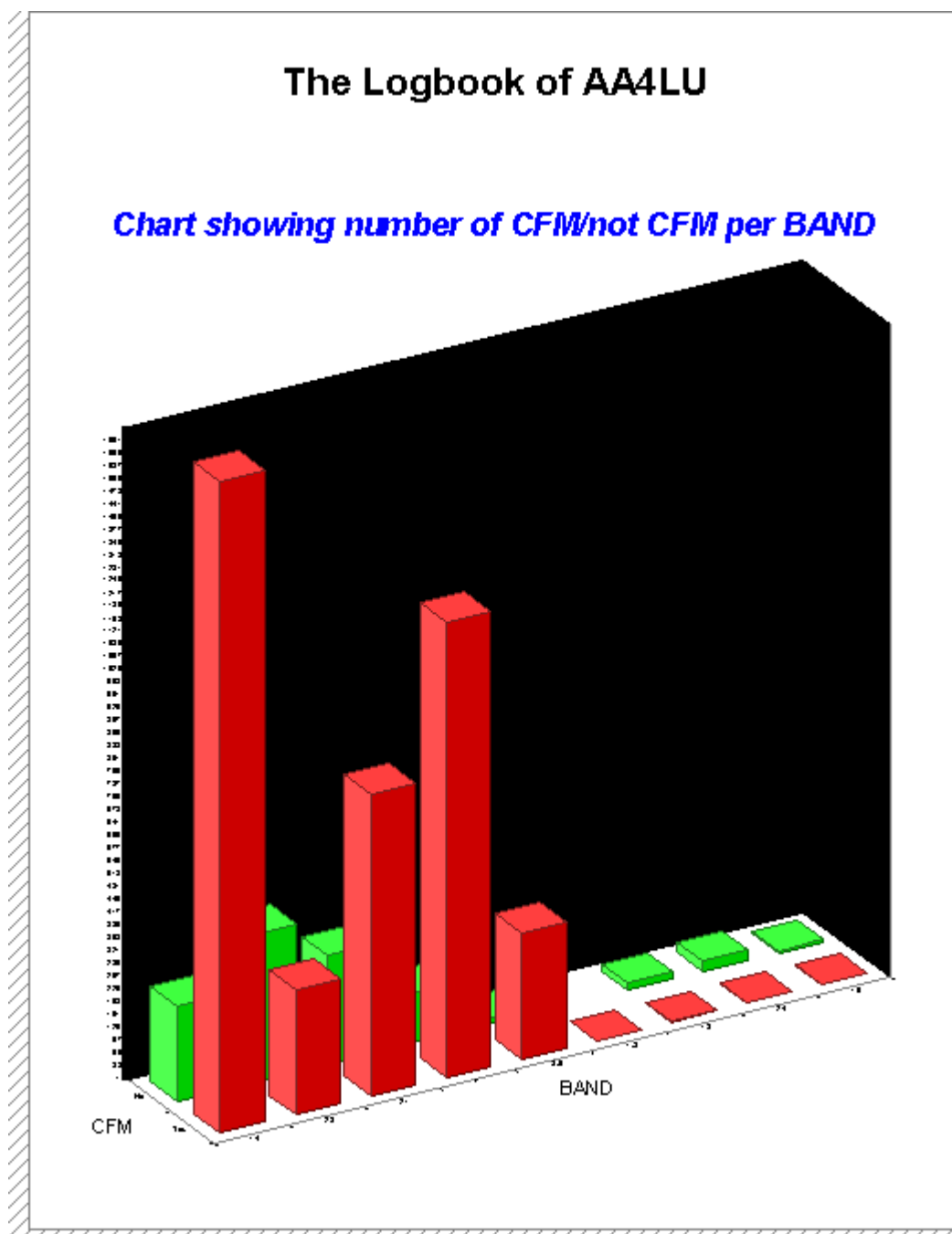


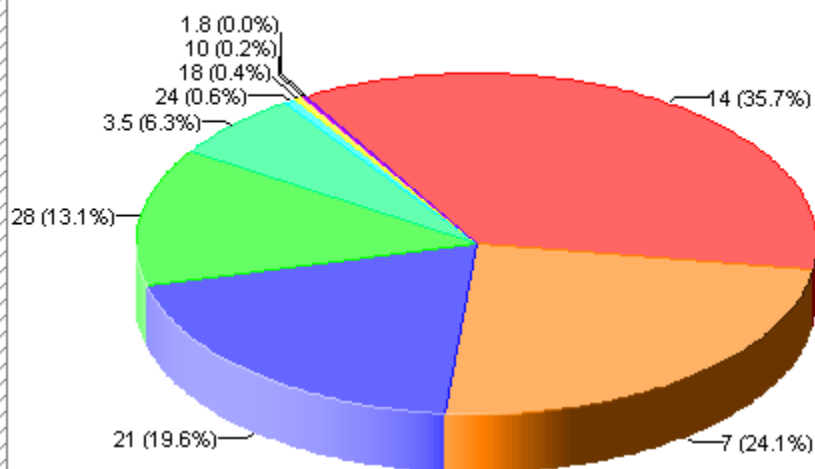
Chart Sample using a Pie Chart

This is a sample chart that displays a pie chart on a single graph. It shows the percentage of QSOs by band.
To use this sample:

1. Select User Designed Lists under the output menu item from the main DXbase menu.
2. Select the source data as either Wizard data or main QSO log.
3. Select the project title for the sample, "Pie_Chart_percent_Qs_per_band".
4. Select preview in the Export Media box to display on your screen.
5. After the data is read, there may be a small delay while the graphic is being created for display on your screen.

The Logbook of AA4LU

Pie Chart showing percentage of QSOs per BAND



User Defined Sample Reports

Tutorial Make a new report

PLEASE NOTE: The REPORT you will be making has only 5 columns. They are Date, Time, Call, Band, and Mode. And, the Report will ONLY be looking for the MODE to be RTTY. This is strictly a SAMPLE REPORT - to hopefully get the person comfortable with programming a simple REPORT. And, they can then possibly change whichever FIELD they might want to, to get a different output of the Report.

- Start DXbase

- Click on main menu TOOLS, then Design List Project

- The Table File window will appear. Goto the File Name area of that window. Type-in "MyReport " - then Click OK.

- When the "Project Wizard" window come up – click-on "Cancel"

- Go to Main Menu / Project / Page Setup .. click-on the Export Media TAB and select "Preview" – then go to the upper righthand portion of this window and click-on the Green Checkmark
.. Then click-on OK.

- GO to Main Menu / Project / Options .. when the Options window comes up, click-on and
mark Show Grid and also Snap to Grid .. Click OK.

- The REPORT Designer module is now ready for you to start.

- Goto OBJECTS, INSERT, and TABLE.

- You will see that the cursor is shaped as a " + " ... Put the cursor at the coordinates of 1.0 and 1.0 - and then hold-down the left mouse button - and DRAG the mouse DOWN and TO THE RIGHT,until you reach the coordinates of 7.5 and 10.0 ...Release left mouse button.

- Click the right-mouse-button and then click on Contents.

· The TABLE Contents window will now appear. Click-on the "tab" DATA LINE. Click-on INSERT icon. If the "Fields" has a "+" next to it, click-on that "+" and all of the available "fields"

will come into view. Double-click DATE. Click OK. To the righthand side of this "Table Contents"

window, look for Layout / Width. Set that to 1.30 ... Click-on any other area of the righthand side menu (to save the setting you just made). Now, look again to the lefthand side of that Table window, and, click on the " ... " just beneath the word "DATE".

· STAY there with the TABLE window and again click-on INSERT icon. Double-click CALL. Click OK. Be sure that CALL is still highlighted in blue. To the righthand side of this "Table Contents"

window, look for Layout / Width. Set that to 1.30 ... Click-on any other area of the righthand side menu (to save the setting you just made). Now, look again to the lefthand side of that Table window, and, click on the " ... " just beneath the word "CALL".

· STAY there with the TABLE window and again click-on INSERT icon. Double-click TIME. Click OK. Be sure that TIME is still highlighted in blue. . To the righthand side of this "Table Contents"

window, look for Layout / Width. Set that to 1.30 ... Click-on any other area of the righthand side menu (to save the setting you just made). Now, look again to the lefthand side of that Table window, and, click on the " ... " just beneath the word "TIME".

· STAY there with the TABLE window and again click-on INSERT icon. Double-click BAND. Click OK. Be sure that BAND is still highlighted in blue. . To the righthand side of this "Table Contents"

window, look for Layout / Width. Set that to 1.30 ... Click-on any other area of the righthand side menu (to save the setting you just made). Now, look again to the lefthand side of that Table window, and, click on the " ... " just beneath the word "BAND".

· STAY there with the TABLE window and again click-on INSERT icon. Double-click MODE. Click OK. Be sure that MODE is still highlighted in blue. . To the righthand side of this "Table Contents"

window, look for Layout / Width. Set that to 1.30 ... Click-on any other area of the righthand side menu (to save the setting you just made). Now, look again to the lefthand side of that Table window, and, click on the " ... " just beneath the word "MODE".

· Now, again, staying with the TABLE window, click-on the "tab" HEADER LINE. Now, a new window called "choose a Table Line Definition" will appear. SIMPLY CLICK "OK" !!!!!!!!!!! And, voila!! your Data Lines' field contents have now appeared as WORDS in the HEADER LINE.

· Now, again, click-on the "tab" DATA LINE. Then LOOK down towards the lower middle of the TABLE window and you will see a button called "Appearance Cond. ..." . Click-on that button. Now, TYPE-IN the following - and PLEASE NOTE that the way you type it in MUST imi MUST be EXACTLY as I show it here!

MODE="RTTY"

Now click OK to get out of that window. Then click OK again to get out of the TABLE window.

· Now, bring the to an area "just outside of WORKAREA and left mouse click once. The highlighted outlined workarea should now be GONE!

· Now, go to Main Menu, FILE, SAVE. Then click-on FILE, EXIT.

· Congratulations, you now have made your first REPORT.

· Now you can run this REPORT against your whole logbook or run it against just your selection wizard data.

Grids worked in a year

This sample report demonstrates counting records in a specific year. In this example, the year 2001 was used.

The report title is Special_Grid_Report. Select this title from the Output | User Designed List option.

- *The only **critical step** that must be done is:*
 - *When you click-on **Output / User Designed Lists...** and the **User list Record Source** window is open, you must select the Sort Order **" GRID "***

- *This report can be run using the Data Source of either the "Wizard Data" or the "Main QSO Log"*

User Prompts band-mode-cfm

**This Report allows the user to 'select'
one BAND, one MODE, and one CFM status.**

The report can be run using the complete Logbook or using the Wizard data.

Instructions:

- To use this report, select Output | User Designed List from the main menu and select Band_mode_cfm_version_1 as the report title when asked.
- After you type-in the BAND or MODE or CFM status, click only the "OK for All" button! Do not click the OK button.. This is necessary, because we are telling the program that our 'selection' is "OK for All" of the QSOs we are sampling.
- When you are typing the CFM status of either Yes or No, please be sure that you type it "exactly" as: Yes or No ...
For example: The 'uppercase' Y and 'lowercase' es are critical here!

**Please note: In my sample report photo (link is below), I used
BAND of 28, MODE of RTTY, and CFM of Yes.**

Logbook of WA6AXE

Printed on: January 8, 2002

QSO#	PRFX	CALL	TIME	DATE	BAND	MODE	CFM	QS
1	P4	P4DX	1655	04 JAN 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Manag
2	A3	A35RK	0025	17 MAR 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Manag
3	KH6	NH6XM	2213	17 OCT 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Direct
4	KH8	AH8LG	2215	17 OCT 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Direct
5	JA	JA2BHJ	2221	17 OCT 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Burea
6	VP5	VP5JM	2303	17 OCT 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Manag
7	UA0	RA0FF	2322	17 OCT 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Manag
8	T2	T24IA	2342	17 OCT 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Manar

No Dupe with user prompts

This Report Program is a *MODIFIED* version of "User Prompts band-mode-cfm" that allows the user to 'select' *one* BAND, *one* MODE, and *one* CFM status... And, the dupe country(PFX) QSOs are suppressed on the printout and the totals.

The report can be run using the complete Logbook or using the Wizard data.

Some special instructions to be used with this report:

- To use this report, select Output | User Defined Lists from the main menu and then select Band_mode_cfm_version_2 as the report title.
- ***The first critical step that must be done is:***
 - When you click-on Output / User Designed Lists... and the User list Record Source window is open, you must select the Sort Order " PREFIX "
- After you type-in the BAND or MODE or CFM status, click only the "OK for All" button! Do not click the OK button.. This is necessary, because we are telling the program that our 'selection' is "OK for All" of the QSOs we are sampling.
- When you are typing the CFM status of either Yes or No, please be sure that you type it "exactly" as: Yes or No ...
For example: The 'uppercase' Y and 'lowercase' es are critical here!

Please note: In my sample report photo (link is below), I used BAND of 28, MODE of RTTY, and CFM of Yes.

Logbook of WA6AXE

Printed on: January 8, 2002

QSO#	PRFX	CALL	TIME	DATE	BAND	MODE	CFM	QSL
1	3D2	3D2DK	2336	29 DEC 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Manage
2	6Y	6Y5/DL7 VOG	1442	31 DEC 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Manage
3	A3	A35RK	0025	17 MAR 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Manage
4	CT	CT1EGW	1533	26 DEC 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Bureau
5	DL	DF7VX	1740	21 MAR 1999	28	RTTY	Yes	Bureau
6	EA	EA7ESH	1631	27 DEC 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Bureau
7	F	F50IH	1726	21 MAR 1999	28	RTTY	Yes	Bureau
8	FG	FG/F5NZO	1640	26 DEC 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Manage
9	FM	FM5CD	1401	03 JAN 1999	28	RTTY	Yes	Manage
10	HA	HA3VAM	1552	11 NOV 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Bureau
11	I	IT9PKO	1422	02 JAN 1999	28	RTTY	Yes	Bureau
12	JA	JA2BHJ	2221	17 OCT 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Bureau
13	KG4	KG4OX	2210	08 MAR 1999	28	RTTY	Yes	Manage
14	KH6	NH6XM	2213	17 OCT 1998	28	RTTY	Yes	Direct

QSLs pending from a manager all modes

Displays user defined report that lists QSO information for QSLs that have not been received when your card was sent to a manager, manager \$\$, Direct, or Direct \$\$ as reflected in the QSL via field of the QSO record. This report includes QSOs for all modes and bands.

To use this report, select Output | User defined Lists and select the report title of:

qslmgr_allmode_pendrpt

QSLs pending from a manager one mode

Displays user defined report that lists QSO information for QSLs that have not been received when your card was sent to a manager, manager \$\$, Direct, or Direct \$\$ as reflected in the QSL via field of the QSO record. This report includes QSOs only for one mode and band.

To use this report, select Output | User defined Lists and select the report title of:

qslmgr_onemode_pendrpt

QSLs pending prompt user

Displays user defined report that lists QSO information for QSLs that have not been received when your card was sent to a manager, manager \$\$, Direct, or Direct \$\$ as reflected in the QSL via field of the QSO record. This report prompts for user specific information before producing the results.

To use this report, select Output | User defined Lists and select the report title of:


qslmgr_askpendg

Fonts with Slashed Zero

At the time you installed DXbase, an attempt was made to install several new fonts that contain the slashed zero. If this installation of fonts was successful, you will see the new fonts available when you review your available fonts in any of the normal dialog boxes that allow you to select a font. On some systems, fonts are not installed during the installation. For your convenience, the font files are contained in the Fonts folder in your DXbase folder group. You can follow the Windows instructions for installing fonts and install these yourself if needed.

For comparison purposes, this is the standard Windows Arial Font:


WA6AXE confirms QSO with					
GW0TXS					
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW	
					73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This is the same Arial font but with slashed zero:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with					
GW0TXS					
<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>	
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW	
					73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This is the Slashed Zero Andale Mono Font:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This is the Ham font:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This the Dot Andale Mono font:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This is the Vag Round font (VRB):

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

Awards Related

Overview of Awards Reports

DXbase includes default reports that can assist in reviewing awards related QSO records. These reports were created as user defined reports. Therefore, you access these reports as follows:

To modify the design of a report, use the main menu TOOLS/Design List Project selection.

To print the report, use the main menu OUTPUT/User Designed List selection.

The reports described here are not the Awards submission forms. Those are discussed under the Awards section of this help file. Here we are describing special reports that provide listing of QSO records. You can use these reports as is, or you can modify them to meet your needs.

Modifying Awards Related Reports

We strongly recommend that if you intend to modify any of the default user defined reports as shipped by DXbase that you leave the default report along and make a copy of it to use as your modified version. This will insure that the defaults shipped are not confused with your modified version.

Use Windows Explorer to make a copy of the .LSV and .LST filenames. For example, to make a copy of the default DXCC related report, you would perform the following:

1. Open Windows Explorer and navigate to the DXbase reports directory.
2. Copy the files Awddxcc.lsv and Awddxcc.lst files to a temporary directory, rename the base filename to the name you want to use, and then copy the renamed version of these two files back into your DXbase reports directory.
3. If we assume that you used the name Mydxcc.lsv and Mydxcc.lst, then you would copy these back into your DXbase reports directory.
4. Open your new report from the main menu by selecting TOOLS/ Design List Project module and make the changes desired.

Note: You will also see the base filename of these reports existing with a filename extension of .LSP. This is a printer specific format file and there is no need to copy/rename this file. It is automatically created for you whenever you print a user designed report.

Standard

Standard Report Names

These titles represent the Standard Predefined Reports available. DXbase also contains a Report Designer module that allows you to design your own reports based on your QSO database. The report names described here are only a sample of what is actually installed with DXbase. The best way to learn about a report is to open the Standard Report module and click on a report name. A description of the report will appear on the right side of your screen for the report that you clicked. From time to time, new reports may become available as well.

Records that do not qualify for the type of report selected will not be included on the report. Some reports will prompt you for input. These prompts accept the standard wildcard characters of asterisk (*) and question mark (?). In cases where you are prompted, the default is "ALL" which is represented by the wildcard character '*'. Input prompts are CASE SENSITIVE. In most cases the data should be entered in Upper case, but if in doubt, if the field in your QSO log is Upper case then enter the value here in Upper case. If the field in the QSO log is lower case, then use lower case.

The following reports are available:

ADRXRF Provides a cross reference listing of QSO labels and Address labels that are in your pending label database. This provides a useful tool for being able to identify which address labels go with which QSO labels.

PRIMPFX Provides a listing of your Primary Prefix database.

COUNTY Provides a listing of your County database.

IOTADB Provides a listing of your IOTA database.

MGRMAP Provides a listing of your Manager Mapping database and associates them with the QSL Address database.

PFXMAP Provides a listing of your Prefix Mapping database and associates them with the Primary Prefix database.

DXSPOTS Provides a listing DX spots from the Packet Info Window.

FAVFREQS Provides a listing of the entries in your Favorite Frequency database.

STATEDB Provides a listing of your US State database.

CALLMAP Provides a listing of your Call Mapping database and associates them with the Primary Prefix database.

QSOLABEL Provides a listing of records in the Pending QSO Label database.

TENTEN Provides a listing of QSO records which contain a TenTen number.

WITHPFX Provides a listing of your QSO log with records grouped by Prefix. This report prompts for a prefix and you may use wildcards for example use ***** to list all records, use C* to obtain prefixes which begin with C, etc.

WITHCQ Provides a listing of your QSO log with records grouped by CQ zone.

WITHITU Provides a listing of your QSO log with records grouped by ITU zone.

WITHSAT Provides a listing of your QSO log which have the Satellite field marked as NOT none.

QSONOCFM Provides a listing of your QSO log for records which are not confirmed.

QSOCFM Provides a listing of your QSO log for records which are confirmed.

WITHIOTA Provides a listing of your QSO log for records which contain an IOTA entry.

WITHGRID Provides a listing of your QSO log for records which contain a GRID entry.

QSLNOREC Provides a listing of your QSO log for records which are not confirmed but have an entry in the QSL SENT field

WITHWPX Provides a listing of your QSO log for records which contain an entry in the WPX field.

WITHUSAC Provides a listing of your QSO log for records which contain an entry in the COUNTY field.

CITYDATA Provides a listing of your city database.

WITHSP1 Provides a listing of your QSO log for records which contain an entry in the Special 1 field.

WITHSP2 Provides a listing of your QSO log for records which contain an entry in the Special 2 field.

QSLNUMB Provides a listing of selected QSO fields and the QSL number field.

If you don't see a report that will meet your need, we may (as time permits) consider developing a report. Send us your requirements via email and we will let you know the cost (if any) on a case by case basis.

Display Standard Report

There are many different standard reports available. Standard reports are predefined and formatted and cannot be changed by the user. Before you attempt to print a report, you must first set the printer you intend to use as the default Windows printer. Refer to Windows help for instructions on setting the default printer.

Callsign in the report title

Most reports include the user's callsign in the page header of the report. The callsign used is the one that is entered in the [DXCC Award Settings](#) options. The callsign entered in this option is database specific. This allows for different members of the same household to have their callsign reflected in the reports they create. To set the callsign, from the application menu select Tools/Options/Personal and then click settings. Enter the callsign and click OK.

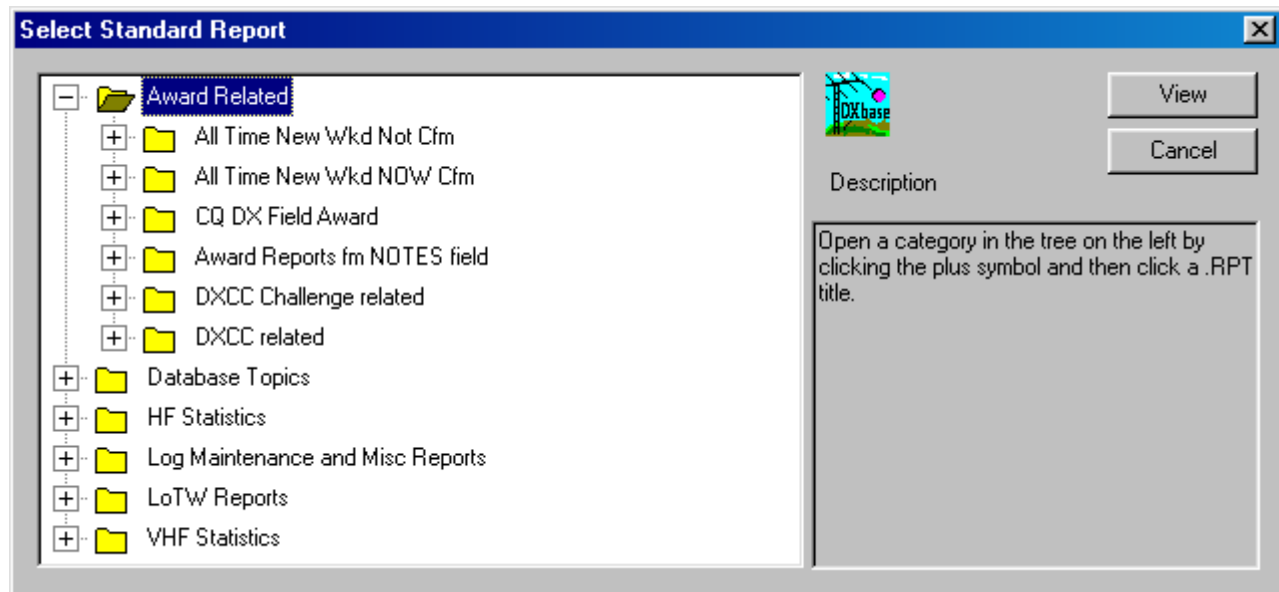
Report Accuracy

All reports reflect the actual values contained in your database. If you suspect that statistical information is not correct, chances are you may need to initialize tables or you may be misinterpreting the contents of the report.

Displaying a report

From the application menu, choose OUTPUT/Standard Reports

Select the report name you wish to display from the list. When you click on a report name, a brief description about that report will be displayed in the Description box. Click the view button to see the report on your screen



Printing Standard Reports

To print the report displayed, click the printer ICON. Printing to your printer is controlled by the printer drivers loaded by Windows. If you are having difficulty with the quality of printing, you should investigate whether there might be an updated printer driver available from Microsoft or manufacturer.

primpfcrpt

1 of 1+ Total: 100%

Primary Prefix Database
12/25/96

<u>PREFIX</u>	<u>LATITUDE</u>	<u>LONGITUDE</u>	<u>DELETED</u>	<u>FIELD-CHECK</u>	<u>QSL-BUREAU</u>
1A	+41.9	-12.4	False	False	False

Exporting Standard Reports

DXbase provides many different exports for storing reports for use in other software. These include formats such as Word, Excel, Text, and so forth.

Create your report as normal and while viewing the report on your screen, click the Export ICON that is the one that looks like an envelope.

Choose from the available export choices and follow the prompts.

NOTE: The quality and format of an exported report is controlled by many factors including the other software that you are using to load an exported report. Because of the many factors that control the results you achieve, we cannot guarantee that all formats will work properly for your installation. As a suggestion, if you have difficulty with a particular format, check to make sure that you are using the latest Windows .DLLs and printer drivers available.

QSOs with Same Manager

DXbase includes a feature that allows you to obtain a listing of QSOs that use the same manager. Use the DXbase Wizard to create this report. The logic uses the contents of the internal DXbase QSL manager databases to make this determination.

In the [Wizard](#), one of the available options is QSOs with same manager. By choosing this option, only QSOs with the same manager will be selected. You can apply any of the other filter choices to further define the contents of your report.

After running the Wizard to extract this information, use the Print User Defined List option to print the report. The source will be Wizard data. The project title can be any of those listed that produce the format that you want, but we suggest trying some of them to see which one meets your needs. If you prefer, you can create your own user designed list and place only the fields of interest to you on the report.

Worked/Confirmed Summaries

DXbase includes a number of summary reports which create a matrix that shows the country, IOTA, State, etc. and for each band that identifies if it is worked, not worked, or confirmed. These reports are available as standard reports and you should access the standard reports module for these. A separate report is available depending if you are interested in HF or VHF, and also a separate report for CW, PHONE, RTTY, and MIXED.

We have not listed the names for these reports here because the names were subject to change; however, in the standard reports selection box, open the category of interest such as HF Countries, and then click on the names of the available reports. You will be able to easily identify them this way.

Need Lists

Need List Reports

There are two types of Need Lists contained in this product. **General** (non detailed) need lists can be created directly in the HF and UHF/VHF statistics dialogs. For a more detailed need list report, you can select from the reports outlined below.

DXbase includes a wide variety of specialized reports which detail countries, CQ zones, IOTA, and US states. These reports display the number of QSOs in your database for each band/mode combination for both worked and confirmed. Entries of zero indicate that this mode/band combination is not worked or confirmed. Entries greater than zero indicate the number of actual QSOs that qualify for the band/mode combination entry. The entries are color coded with red indicating zero QSOs for categories that have no QSO records that qualify.

To access Need Lists, from the application menu select TOOLS/PRINT REPORTS and select one of the titles listed below:

Name Description

COUNTRIES

HFMXPFXL	Countries worked/confirmed for HF frequencies mixed mode
HFPHPFXL	Countries worked/confirmed for HF frequencies phone mode
HFCWPFXL	Countries worked/confirmed for HF frequencies CW mode

HFRYPFXL	Countries worked/confirmed for HF frequencies RTTY mode
UVMXPFXL	Countries worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies mixed mode
UVPHPFXL	Countries worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies phone mode
UVCWPFXL	Countries worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies CW mode
UVRYPFXL	Countries worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies RTTY mode

US STATES

HFMXUSAL	US States worked/confirmed for HF frequencies mixed mode
HFPHUSAL	US States worked/confirmed for HF frequencies phone mode
HFCWUSAL	US States worked/confirmed for HF frequencies CW mode
HFRYUSAL	US States worked/confirmed for HF frequencies RTTY mode
UVMXUSAL	US States worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies mixed mode
UVPHUSAL	US States worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies phone mode
UVCWUSAL	US States worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies CW mode
UVRYUSAL	US States worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies RTTY mode

CQ ZONES

HFMXCQL	CQ Zones worked/confirmed for HF frequencies mixed mode
HFPHCQL	CQ Zones worked/confirmed for HF frequencies phone mode
HFCWCQL	CQ Zones worked/confirmed for HF frequencies CW mode
HFRYCQL	CQ Zones worked/confirmed for HF frequencies RTTY mode
UVMXCQL	CQ Zones worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies mixed mode
UVPHCQL	CQ Zones worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies phone mode
UVCWCQL	CQ Zones worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies CW mode
UVRYCQL	CQ Zones worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies RTTY mode

IOTA

HFMXIOTL	IOTAs worked/confirmed for HF frequencies mixed mode
HFPHIOTL	IOTAs worked/confirmed for HF frequencies phone mode
HFCWIOTL	IOTAs worked/confirmed for HF frequencies CW mode

HFRYIOTL	IOTAs worked/confirmed for HF frequencies RTTY mode
UVMXIOTL	IOTAs worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies mixed mode
UVPHIOTL	IOTAs worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies phone mode
UVCWIOTL	IOTAs worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies CW mode
UVERYIOTL	IOTAs worked/confirmed for UHF/VHF frequencies RTTY mode

Need Lists from Statistics Modules

General need lists can be created from within the HF and VHF/UHF statistics screens. These lists contain the entries that are present in the five list boxes. You can view them on the screen or print to the printer.

To create a need list report, follow these steps:

Click the BAND category.

Click the MODE category.

Click the COMPUTE need list button.

Click the category of need list you want.

Click the PRINT need list button.

Rotor Interface

Rotor Operation

The DXbase interface to popular rotor control boxes is quite simple to use. After configuring user options for the rotor interface, you can use the Rotor Toolbar to easily turn the rotor with the click of a button. There are several modules in DXbase that give access to rotor control:

1. From the Rotor Toolbar
2. From the [Cities module](#)
3. From the [DX Summary window](#).



This is the rotor toolbar. The buttons on this toolbar provide the following functionality:

- Push in for rotor 2 and push out for rotor 1
- Stop rotor if your rotor supports this command
- Turn rotor to the short path indicated in the HF statistics window
- Turn rotor to the long path indicated in the HF statistics window
- Turn rotor left by five degrees from the last rotor position that was set with DXbase.
- Turn rotor right by five degrees from the last rotor position that was set with DXbase.
- Enter the degrees and point the rotor to this position.

Rotor Selection

Two rotors can be controlled by DXbase. The button on the rotor toolbar controls which rotor will receive rotor commands. When pushed, all rotor commands are sent to rotor 2. When not pushed, all rotor commands are sent to rotor 1.

Precautions:

1. Only click a button one time to turn the rotor.
2. If DXbase was not used to set a rotor direction, the right and left buttons will have no effect.
3. If your rotor does not support the Stop command, clicking this button will have no effect.
4. The SARTEK rotor requirement to adjust the degrees to be within the range of 0 to 255 is automatically computed by DXbase. Entering degrees you should use the normal 0 to 360 range and DXbase will automatically make the conversion when setting this rotor.
5. **User options** must be set correctly and activated in order for the buttons on the toolbar to work properly.

NOTES:

1. Some rotor control units such as early versions of Sartek turn the rotor backwards. If you are using such a rotor, you can enter 180 in the offset portion of DXbase user options to overcome this issue.
2. Some rotors do not use stops and instead allow the rotor to continue turning without any mechanism to stop the rotor. Be careful with these units to avoid any problems.
3. The interface to the ARSWIN rotor does not use serial ports in DXbase. The interface sends a command directly to the ARSWIN application and it performs the process of turning the rotor. You must have the ARSWIN application running in order for this interface to work. In some cases, the ARSWIN application must be started before DXbase.

Automatic Rotor Selection

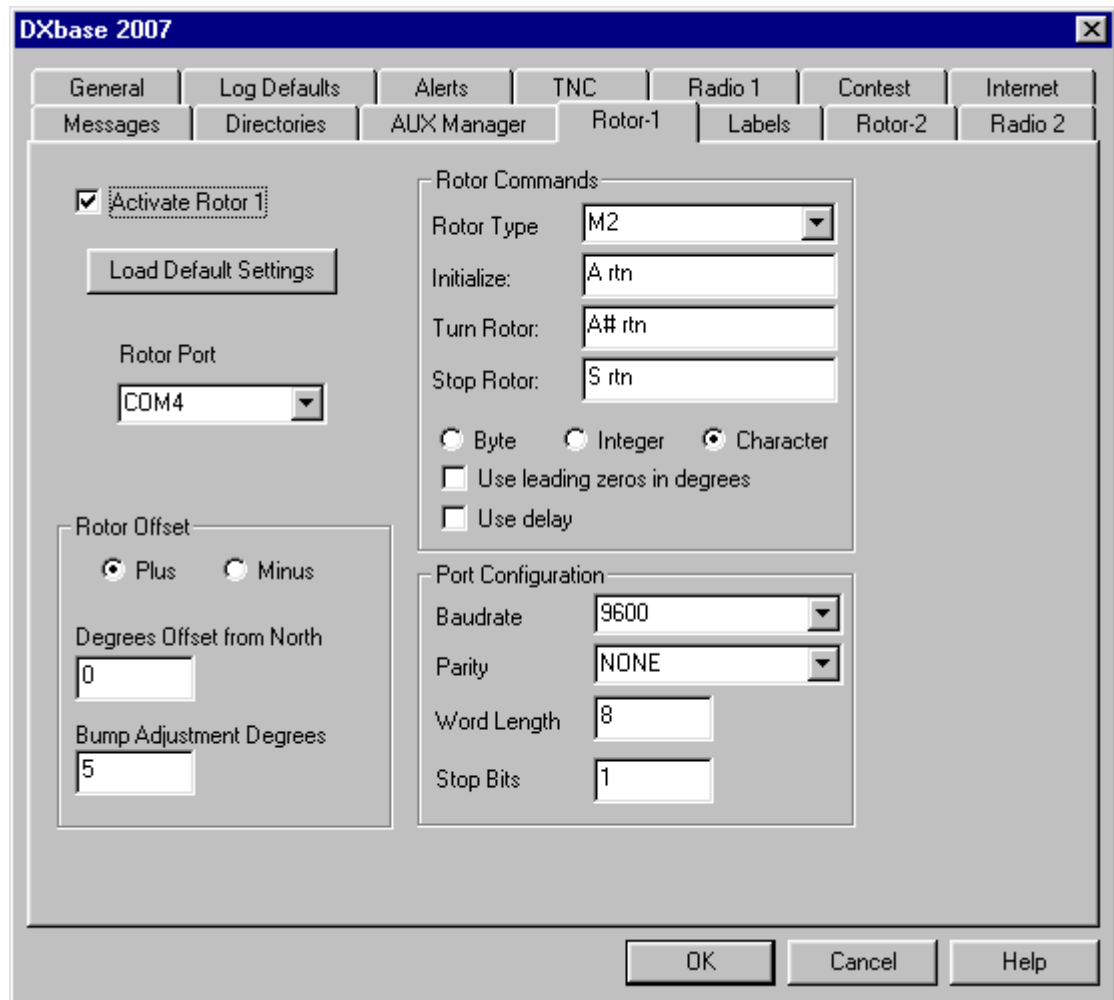
As DX spots arrive, and you click the QSY columns, DXbase will automatically select whether to use rotor 1 or rotor 2. This feature is controlled entirely by the Band Plan Mapping tables. Essentially, DXbase looks up the frequency of the DX spot in the Band Plan mapping table. It then selects the rotor entry for that frequency range and automatically makes it the current rotor.

For users who only have one rotor interfaced with DXbase, they should modify the Band Plan Mapping table to show only rotor 1 for each entry in the Band Plan Mapping table.

Rotor Interface-User Options

DXbase provides a one-way serial port interface to some of the common rotor control units that provide for RS232 interface control. DXbase will allow you to set the rotor position. DXbase does not read data from the rotor. You may have two different rotors. DXbase provides a push button on the rotor toolbar that controls which rotor is active. If you only use one rotor, then it should be assigned Rotor 1 and you should leave Rotor 2 inactive.

NOTE: There are two tabs for rotor options. These are marked Rotor 1 and Rotor 2. Be careful that you select the correct tab for the rotor that you are configuring.



Activate - Place a check in this box to turn the interface functionality in DXbase on.

Rotor Port - Select the comport that is to be used for your rotor interface. This must be a dedicated serial port and cannot be shared with any other device.

Rotor Commands - These entries are automatically selected based on the type of rotor interface that is selected. The only entry that should be used under normal operation is the Rotor type. The other command entries are those that will be sent to rotor to control its operation.

Port Configuration - The port configuration is automatically selected based on the type of rotor that is chosen under the Rotor commands option.

Rotor Offset - These options allow you to indicate any adjustments that are to be used by DXbase when determining the degrees that will be set.

Load Default Settings - In the event that you have modified any of the fields that are normally rotor specific, clicking this button will reload the default values for the rotor that is listed in the rotor command section.

Use leading zeros in degrees - Some rotors require that the degrees be sent with leading zeros when the degrees is less than 100. Place a check in this box if your rotor requires this functionality. Some rotors do not require leading zeros and will not work properly if leading zeros are used. To the best of our knowledge, only the Yaesu rotors require leading zeros.

Bump Adjustment Degrees – Two buttons are provided on the rotor toolbar, left arrow and right arrow. This option specifies how many degrees will be added or subtracted from the current rotor position when you click either of these toolbar arrows. For example, if this option is set to 5, then when you click the left arrow, the rotor will be positioned to the current position minus 5 degrees. Or if you click the right arrow, the rotor will be positioned to the current position plus 5 degrees.

Using the ARSWIN rotor

The ARSWIN rotor interface does not use the serial port information in DXbase. DXbase sends a command directly to the ARSWIN application and performs the activity of turning the rotor. In DXbase user options, you should select the ARSWIN rotor type, check the activate box and that's all that is necessary. You can ignore the serial port related entries. The ARSWIN application must be running in order for this interface to function.

Screen Customization

Toolbar Customization

The toolbars in DXbase were designed to provide maximum flexibility for users to configure them the way that meets your needs best.

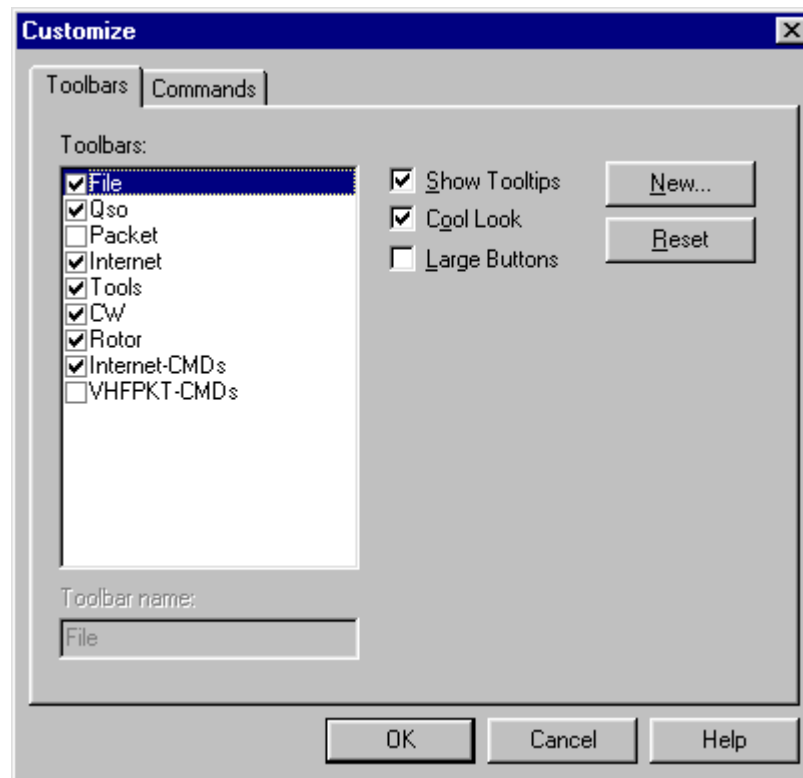
All toolbars are dockable, floatable, and can be positioned anywhere on the screen. To position a toolbar, simply click on the toolbar and drag it where you want it to appear. This can be performed at any time and it is not necessary to have the Customize dialog box displayed to perform this kind of change.

The toolbars in DXbase can be customized by the user in many different ways to satisfy your particular needs. For example, you can hide the toolbars that are not needed, you can add or remove buttons from a toolbar, you can create a new customized toolbar and place your own

choice of buttons on this new toolbar. To perform the operations described below, the Customize dialog box must be displayed.

To access this feature, select TOOLS/CUSTOMIZE.

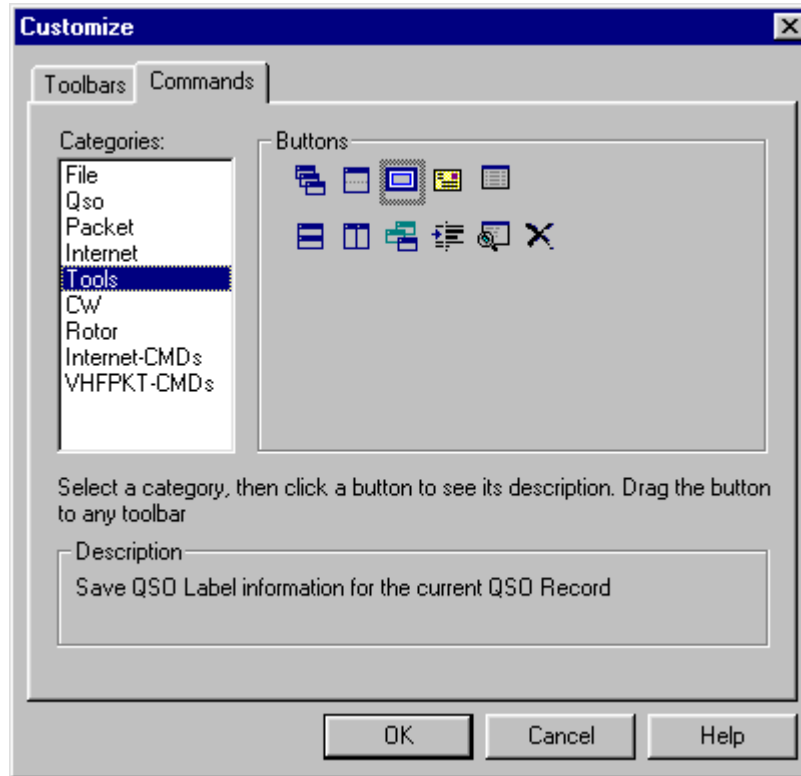
Changing general appearance of toolbars



1. To hide or unhide a toolbar, simply check or uncheck the toolbar you wish to change. Your change will be automatically reflected on the main screen so that you can see the result. Click OK to make the change permanent.
2. The "Cool Look" option enables the Office 97 flat toolbar look. Uncheck this if you prefer the button look.
3. The "Show Tool tips" options enables or disables the tiny popup tool tip display when you position your cursor over a button on the toolbar.
4. The "Large Buttons" option is not used and will have no effect. Leave it unchecked.
5. The reset option restores the toolbars back to the DXbase defaults as originally shipped.
6. The "New" option activates the toolbar designer feature that allows you to create your own new toolbar and to place buttons on the new toolbar. You will be asked for a name to assign to your new toolbar that can be anything. Give a name that you will recognize and do not use any spaces in the name. Use a short descriptive name. Once established, you can drag buttons onto your new toolbar as described below.

Add or Remove Toolbar Buttons

This feature allows you to drag and drop buttons on a toolbar. Select the COMMANDS tab.



Remove a button

You can remove an individual button from a toolbar by simply dragging the button off of the toolbar.

1. Display the Customize dialog, choose the Command tab, and click the toolbar you wish to change..
2. Use the left mouse button and click on the button of the actual toolbar you wish to change and drag the button off of the toolbar then release the left mouse button when the button is off of the toolbar anywhere on the screen. **NOTE:** You do NOT click on the button displayed in the dialog, but instead you click on the “real or actual toolbar itself to drag the button off.

Add a button

You can add a button to a toolbar by simply selecting the button you want to add and drag it to the toolbar where you want it to appear.

1. Display the Customize dialog, Click the Toolbar name which contains the button you wish to add.
2. Click on the button you wish to add. This will be one of the buttons displayed in the dialog box.
NOTE: You can select a button from any category and place it on any toolbar. A button can be used on several different toolbars simultaneously. Just drag the same button to each toolbar where you want it to appear.

3. Hold the left mouse down and drag the button to the “Actual toolbar where you want the new button and release the left mouse button.

Change the position of a button on a toolbar

You can change the location of a button on a toolbar by simply dragging it to the relative position on the toolbar where you want it to appear.

1. Display the Customize dialog.
2. Click on the button of the “Actual toolbar you wish to change.
3. Holding the left mouse down, drag the button to the new location where you want the button to be located.

Definition of Terms

The term “Actual as used above refers to the existing toolbar that is displayed on your screen and NOT to the toolbars that appear in the Customize dialog box.

Changes to toolbar buttons can only be made while the Customize dialog box is displayed.

Floatable means the toolbar can be dragged away from its docked position and left floating anywhere on the screen.

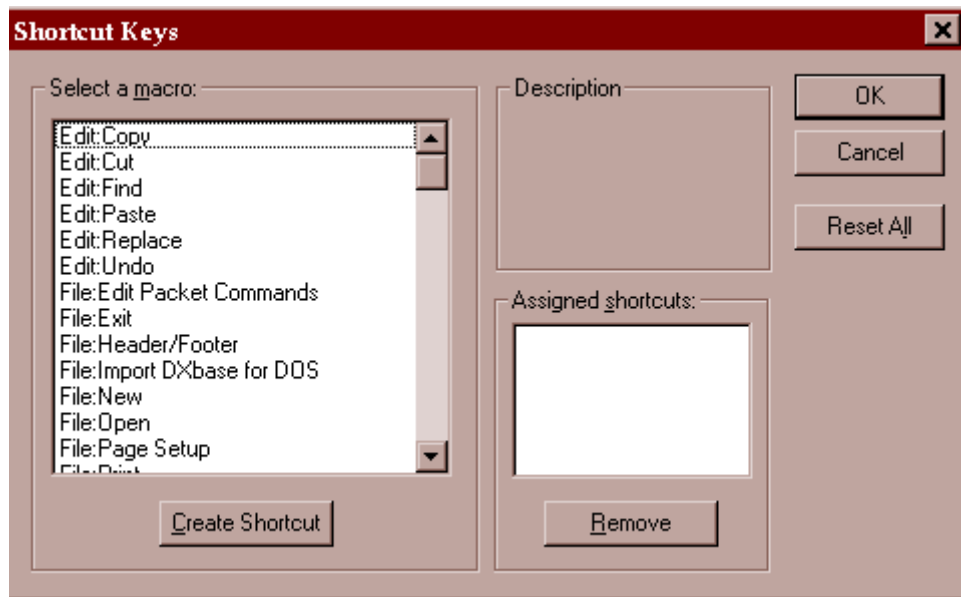
Dockable means the toolbar can be “attached to a fixed position on the screen.

Program Shortcut Keys

DXbase is shipped with many shortcut keys already established. Shortcut keys are the keyboard combinations that activate a menu selection. For example, the default for the F3 key will activate the Previous QSO module.

The Shortcut Keys module provides the capability for the user to add, change, or delete a shortcut key to meet your needs. Any changes you may make will be automatically reflected on the menu items so that you will easily be able to see the shortcut key assignment you have made on the menu item itself.

To access this module, select TOOLS/SHORTCUTS from the main menu bar.



Adding a shortcut

1. In the “Select a macro window, click on the menu item for which you want a shortcut key assigned.
2. If there are any shortcut keys already assigned, they will be displayed in the “Assigned shortcuts window.
3. You may wish to remove an assigned shortcut key before adding a new one; however, this is not required and you can have multiple shortcut keys that each perform the same function.
4. Click the Create Shortcut button.
5. Press the key combinations that will comprise your shortcut. For example, press a Function key button, a control key plus another key simultaneously, or the ALT key plus some other key simultaneously. Whatever key(s) will become your shortcut.
6. DXbase will generally validate your selection and not allow an assignment that might conflict with predefined Windows “hot keys. However, there may be some cases where this validation fails to detect a conflict. If you discover a conflict, use a different shortcut key in DXbase. We strongly recommend that Windows predefined shortcut keys be left alone because many other applications will expect the default Windows behavior for certain keys.
7. Click OK to save your changes.

Removing a shortcut

1. In the “Select a macro window, click on the menu item you wish to change.
2. In the “Assigned shortcuts window, click the shortcut key you wish to remove.

3. Click the Remove button.

The “Reset All button will remove all shortcut assignments which you may have made. Don’t use this unless you want ALL shortcut assignments to be removed.

Navigating the Screen

DXbase contains a number of individual windows or views that provide detailed information about specific topics. These include:

Summary Window - This is a tabbed window that statistics and headings for Country, IOTA, CQ Zone, US States, Grid, and WPX based upon the category that is chosen. It also provides easy access to view and edit callsign notes.

QSL Info Window - This is a tabbed window that provides for lookups of address and manager information. It allows you to view the address information contained in both the internal DXbase manager database and an address CDROM if you use one. The AUX Mgr tab provides easy access the third party product Windows QSL Manager Pro.

DX Info Window - This is a tabbed window that contains a separate tab for DX spots and Talk related messages.

QSO Log - This is the main log. Individual fields can be hidden or resized to suit your needs. Field order can also be configured.

DXbase 2007

File Edit Record View Tools Output Window Programs Help

AA4LU 09-NOV-1985 01:38z LSB 80 CARD GA CHEROKEE EM74RC 03-SEP-1994 Jack T
 AA4LU 13-JAN-1992 17:40z USB 15 NCF GA CHEROKEE EM74RC 13-JAN-2005 Jack T

Summary

SPath 89.8 Distance 32.7 Sunrise 10:56
 LPath 269.8 Local Time 09:26 Sunset 00:29

HF-COUNTRY Lock
 LAT LON Callsign
 +34.10 +84.51 AA4LU

Test notes for DXbase made by me.

USA GEORGIA K

DX Info

NET	QSY	Need	KHz
NET	✓	DX MODE	14000.4
NET	✓	DX BAND	21031.0
NET	✓	DX ALL	21021.1
NET	✓	DX ALL	21021.2
NET	✓	DX BAND	21008.6
NET	✗	B/M	

Spots Messages

QSO Log for AA4LU.MDB

Date	Time	Callsign	RSTs	RSTr	Name	QTH	Notes	Prefix
2006-08-08	13:01:56	YU6AO	59	59	Gojko			YU6
2006-08-12	14:26:21	AA4LU	599	599	Jack	Woodstock		K

Record 5466

Internet Cluster

CHDS	QSY	ALERT	Messages
467	✗	DX	DX de G0ORC: 14012.8 DM5EL
468	✗	DX	DX de F5JNX: 144370.0 EM5U/P TNX QSO K040-JN37
469	✗	DX	DX de K0JPL: 14031.5 F6KAR TEST
470	✓	DX	DX de K2QMF: 14027.9 9A3OS
471	✗	DX	DX de DH8BQA: 144370.0 LY80 cq 388 gl old chap ;)
472	✗	DX	DX de W1TO: 14021.0 ES1A WAE
473	✗	DX	DX de IT9LWP: 21026.5 IO3P
474	✗	DX	DX de AA3B: 21023.4 GW3NJW
475	✗	DX	DX de OK2KKW: 144370.0 EA2AGZ cr jo60jj-in91dv tn timer
476	✗	DX	DX de I6GFX: 14240.0 IY6GM MARCONIAN STATION LH
477	✗	DX	DX de VE9DX: 14043.9 DJ9AO

Record 477

VHF Packet Internet Packet CW Line Out CW Char Out

For Help, press F1 Rise 10:56 Set 00

Moving/Resizing Individual Windows

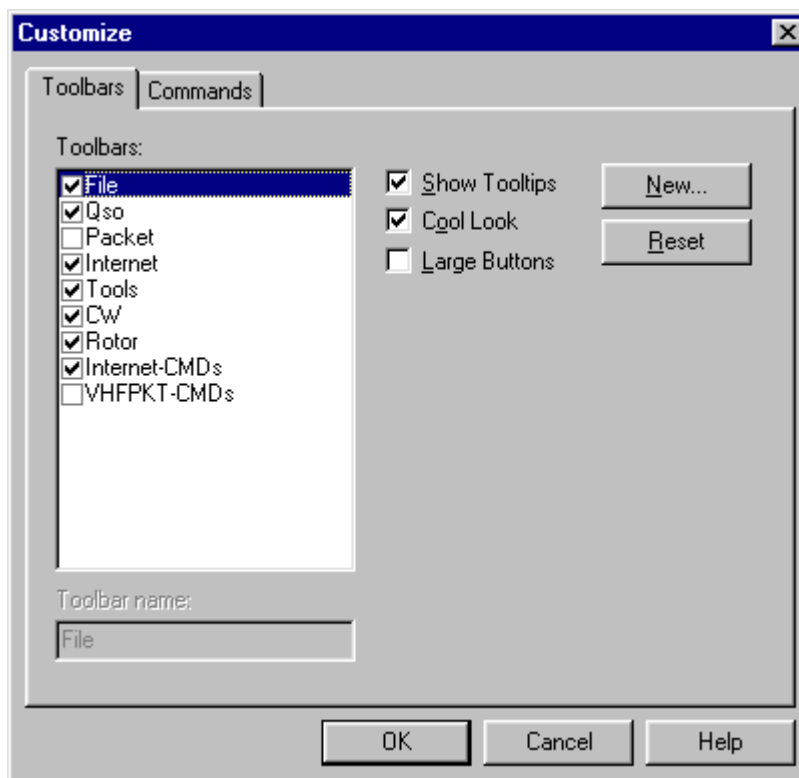
You can decide which of these views you wish to have displayed on your screen. You can close a particular window or you can **minimize it**. If you minimize a view, an ICON bar will be displayed

at the bottom of your screen. Even though you may minimize a window, it will be constantly up to date so that if you restore it, it will contain the current information. If you close a window and then decide that you want it back, from the application menu choose Windows/New (and whatever view you want back).

You can move windows anywhere on your screen by simply “grabbing the window and drag it to the desired location. Individual windows can be resized to suit your needs and screen dimensions. Coordinates and sizes of all windows are saved in the Windows Registry when you exit the application and will be used the next time you run the application.

Toolbars

There are many toolbars available. In addition, you can customize existing toolbars and you can create your own toolbars. Toolbars can be turned on or off for display by selecting VIEW from the main menu. The button toolbars can be turned on or off by selecting TOOLS [customize](#) .



Toolbars are floatable and dockable. You can position them anywhere you like. In this example, there are five independent button toolbars displayed and also the Previous QSO toolbar. Each toolbar contains a double vertical column. In Windows terminology, this is the “grabber and is used to grab the toolbar and position it wherever you want. Toolbars can be docked or attached to any side of your screen and can even be docked or attached to each other.

You will notice that the two toolbars on the lower right look nearly identical except for the color of the arrows. These are the Internet and VHF Packet toolbars. The Internet toolbar can be recognized by the aqua color arrows on the buttons. The VHF toolbar contains red arrows

Previous QSO Toolbar

The Previous QSO Toolbar is a resizable and dockable list box that will automatically display any previous QSO with a callsign which is current in your log or which was just received over the Internet or VHF Packet interface. It can be made a large or as small as you want. The miniature X on this toolbar will cause it to automatically expand in size. Notice the entry on the bottom of this toolbar is highlighted. This represents the latest Previous QSO with this station when more than one previous QSO exists.

NOTE: The Previous QSO Toolbar is completely different from the [Previous QSO Dialog](#) .

Tool Tips

DXbase provides pop up tool tips for toolbars. When you position your cursor over one of the buttons, DXbase will automatically display a pop up window with a brief description of what the particular button is for. These tool tips operate independently of the tool tips associated with the QSO log and other database grids. These tool tips cannot be turned off.

Status Bar



The status bar is the information window located at the bottom of the screen. Choose VIEW from the application menu to hide or display the status bar. In this example, the Transmit window is docked to the status bar just above it.

The status bar contains the following predefined fields:

Left most section describes the purpose of a menu item that is highlighted

Local sunrise and sunset

Database name in use

QSO Log sort index currently in use

YL status

Mixed status

Satellite status

Master Sound Switch (speaker icon)

Local clock with current time displayed in UTC

You can turn all sound on or off by simply clicking on the Master Sound Speaker. As your cursor moves over this icon, it will change into the shape of a hand. Just click to turn the switch on or off.

Customizing the QSO Log Display

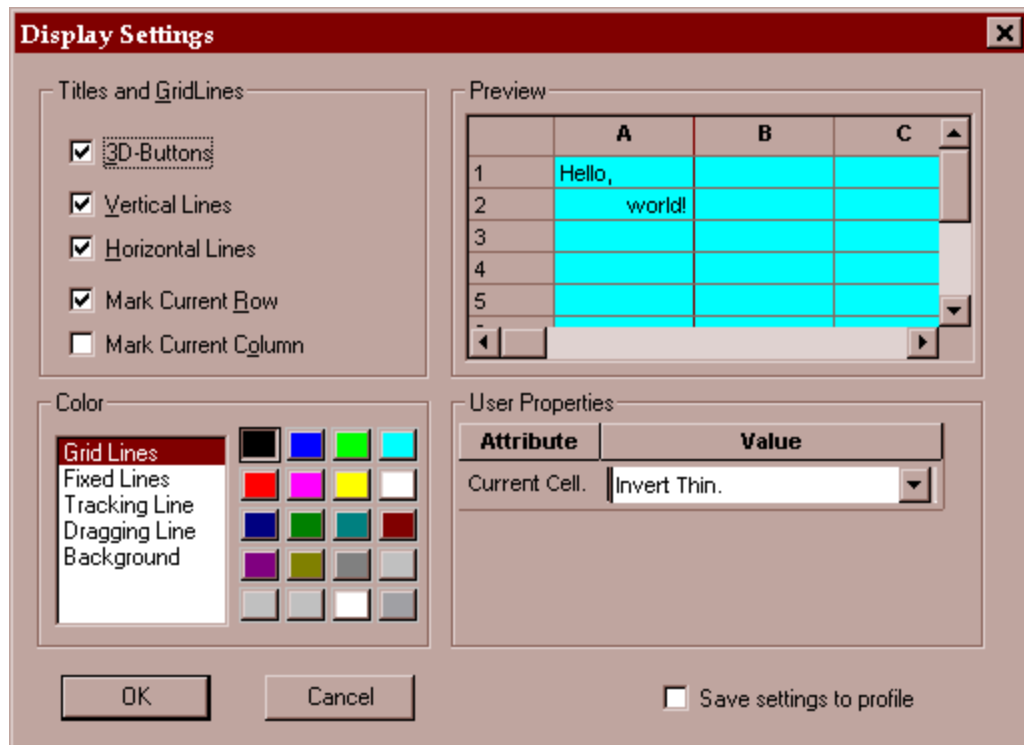
The QSO Log display may be customized in many different ways:

1. Colors
2. Font types
3. Font sizes
4. Hide columns
5. Hide grid lines
6. Hide row and column buttons
- 7.

NOTE: There are other QSO Log customization options available which operate in a manner similar to the Excel Spreadsheet by Microsoft Corporation.

Properties

The properties dialog allows the characteristics of the grid lines to be customized. Settings in this dialog control the grid format such as vertical line colors, horizontal line colors, etc. You can choose to have grid lines hidden or change their color. Select the **View | Styles** option to change characteristics of the cells and text.



The VHF packet window, Internet Window, and QSO Log can each have their own individual settings. When setting these options, which ever window had the focus will be the one that is changed. Therefore, be sure to set the focus to the appropriate window before activating this dialog.

Check the Save settings to profile if you want your changes to become the default each time you start DXbase. Otherwise, your changes will only remain in effect until the next time you start DXbase.

Restoring a Window

DXbase allows you to click on the small X in the upper right corner of the various windows to destroy it. In order to obtain a window after you have clicked on the X, you can select from the main application menu WINDOWS/NEW and the particular window that you want to create. Only those windows that are presently in a destroyed state will be available for selection. BUT, please do NOT use this method. Closing a sub window will cause certain features to stop working. For example, if you close the QSL Info window, your HF Summary window for statistics will be impacted and will stop working.

The preferred and ONLY recommended way to remove a window from view is to use the minimize button on the window. To do this, you click the minimize button on the upper right corner of the particular window you want minimized. Your window will be minimized and automatically placed at the lower portion of your screen. To return it to its original position, click the restore button on the window ICON. By following this method, your screen will be returned to this state the next time you run DXbase. If you destroy a window, it will be created automatically the next time you run DXbase and will be placed on the screen in a somewhat random position.



Fonts with Slashed Zero


At the time you installed DXbase, an attempt was made to install several new fonts that contain the slashed zero. If this installation of fonts was successful, you will see the new fonts available when you review your available fonts in any of the normal dialog boxes that allow you to select a font. On some systems, fonts are not installed during the installation. For your convenience, the font files are contained in the Fonts folder in your DXbase folder group. You can follow the Windows instructions for installing fonts and install these yourself if needed.

For comparison purposes, this is the standard Windows Arial Font:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GW0TXS

Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This is the same Arial font but with slashed zero:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

Date	UTC	MHZ	RST	Mode
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE


PSE
QSL

This is the Slashed Zero Andale Mono Font:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This is the Ham font:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This the Dot Andale Mono font:

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



PSE
QSL

This is the Vag Round font (VRB):

WA6AXE confirms QSO with
GWØTXS

<u>Date</u>	<u>UTC</u>	<u>MHZ</u>	<u>RST</u>	<u>Mode</u>
05 OCT 1998	0001	10	559	CW

73 de Joe WA6AXE



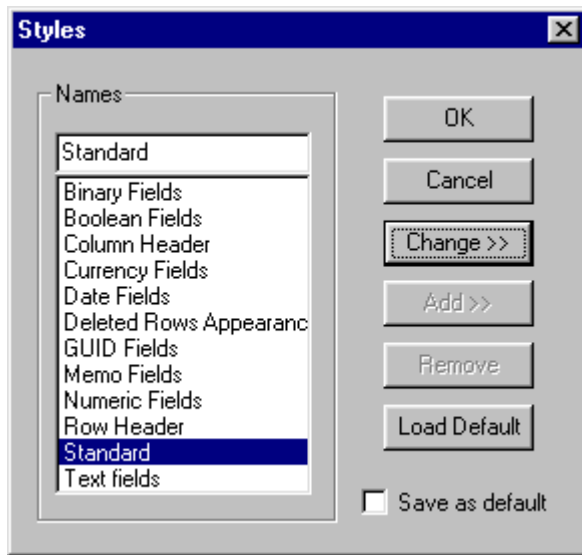
PSE
QSL

Colors and Fonts

Screen Colors

Any of the sub-windows in DXbase that contain a grid format can have their own colors. To change the colors of a particular sub-window, first click in the window you want to change. This let's DXbase know which window to change.

Select VIEW/STYLES from the main menu. You will the following dialog box:

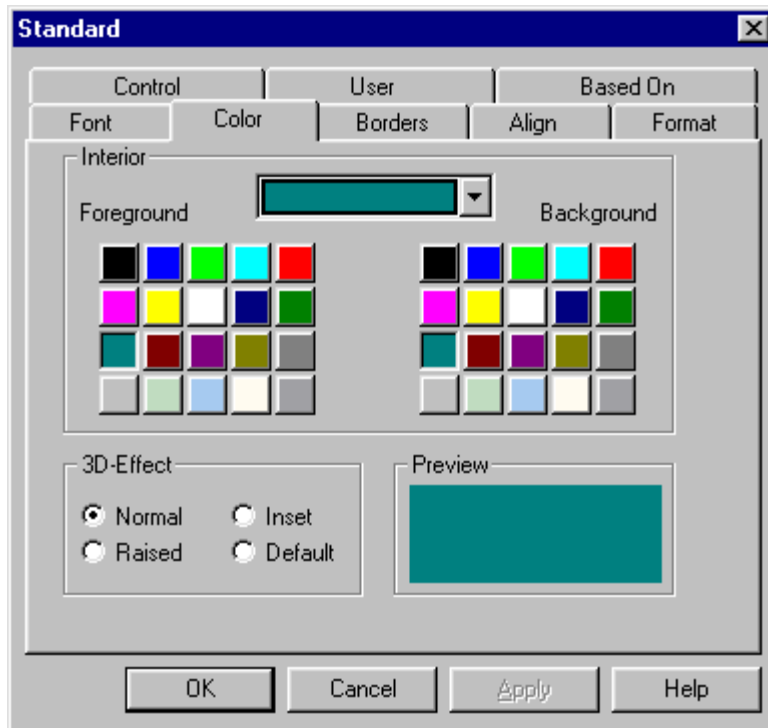


Select STANDARD from the list box.

Click the CHANGE button.

Click the Color tab.

You will see this screen:



Set both the foreground and background colors to the new color such as aqua. You can set the text color from the [Font tab](#).

Click OK

Click the SAVE AS DEFAULT if you want this change to become permanent. Otherwise, the change will only be valid until the next time you start DXbase.

Click OK to complete the changes, or click ABORT to cancel the changes.

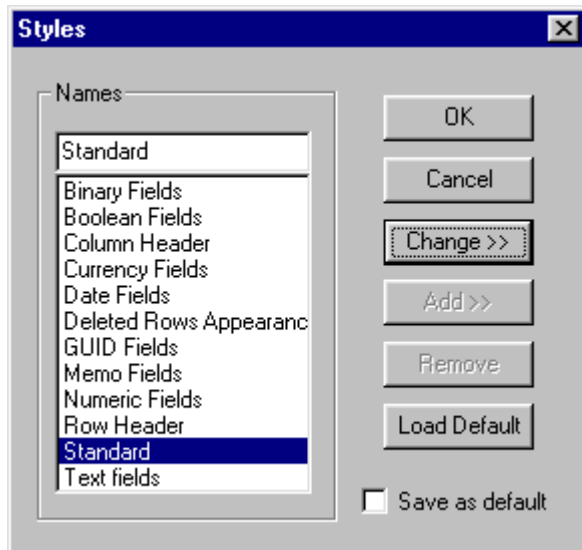
Repeat this process for other windows.

NOTE: Sub windows that do not contain a grid display use the Windows system colors defaults. To change these, you must change the colors of the Windows default through Windows Control Panel.

Screen Fonts

Any of the sub-windows in DXbase that contain a grid format can have their own font. To change the font of a particular sub-window, first click in the window you want to change. This let's DXbase know which window to change.

Select VIEW/STYLES from the main menu. You will the following dialog box:

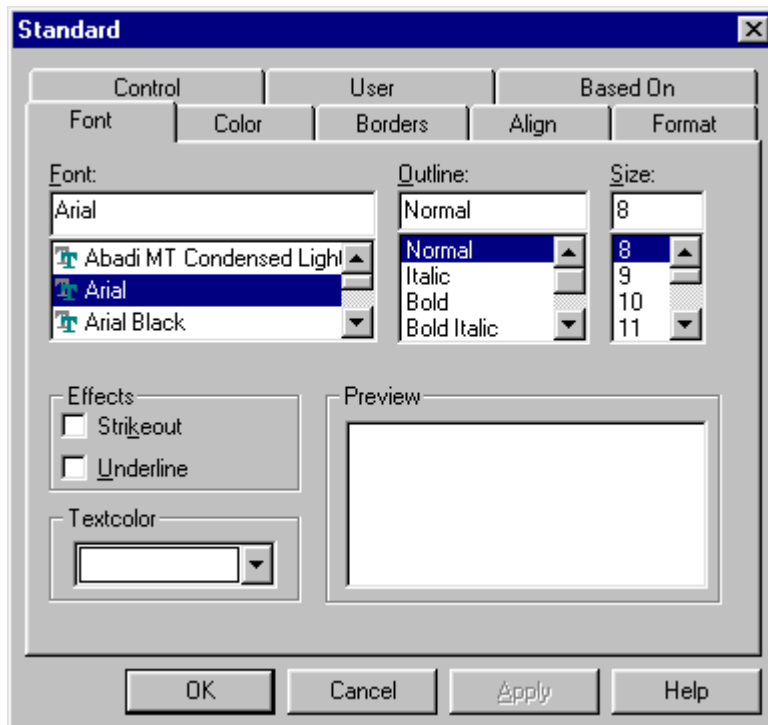


Select STANDARD from the list box.

Click the CHANGE button.

Click the Font tab.

You will see this screen:



Select the Font details that you want. We recommend only True Type fonts. Notice also that you set the text color from this screen.

Click OK

Click the SAVE AS DEFAULT if you want this change to become permanent. Otherwise, the change will only be valid until the next time you start DXbase.

Click OK to complete the changes, or click ABORT to cancel the changes.

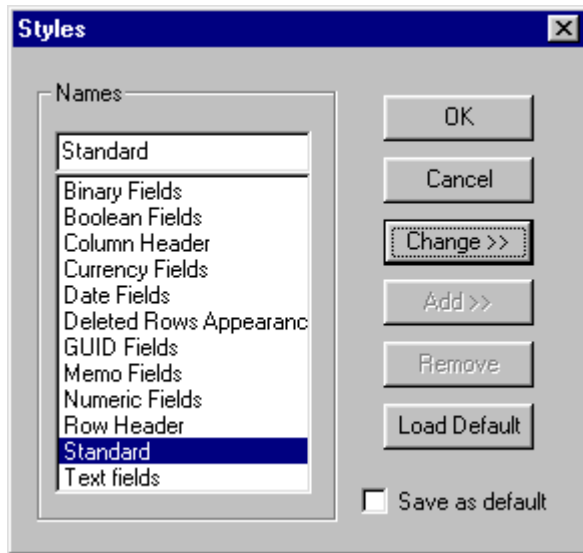
Repeat this process for other windows.

NOTE: Sub windows that do not contain a grid display use the Windows system colors defaults. To change these, you must change the colors of the Windows default through Windows Control Panel.

Borders of Cells

Any of the sub-windows in DXbase that contain a grid format can have their own individual cell borders. You can even remove a border completely and you can change its color. To change the border of a particular sub-window, first click in the window you want to change. This let's DXbase know which window to change.

Select VIEW/STYLES from the main menu. You will the following dialog box:

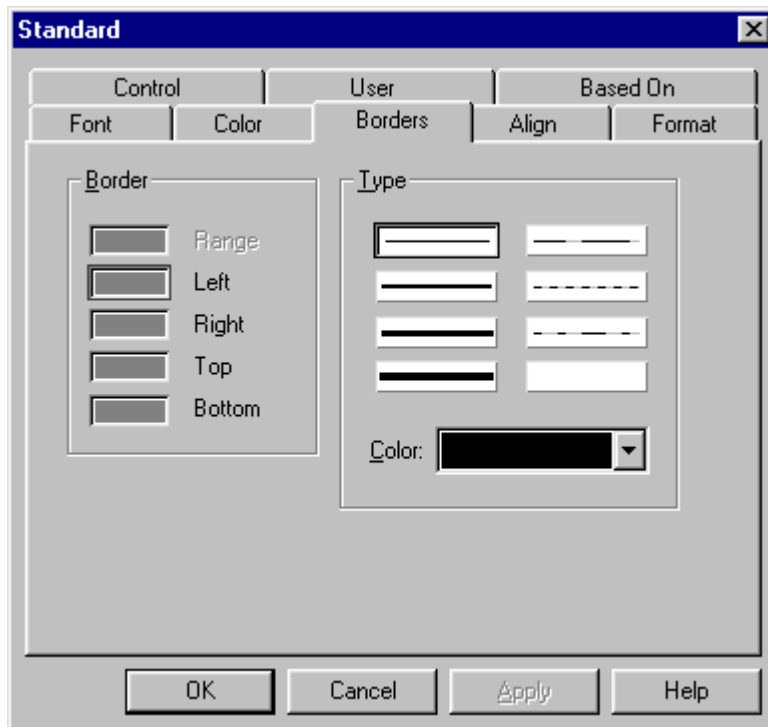


Select STANDARD from the list box.

Click the CHANGE button.

Click the Border tab.

You will see this screen:



Select the Border that you want. Notice also that you set the color of the border from this screen. But if you do this, care must be taken that it is compatible with the overall color scheme that have selected for this window.

Click OK

Click the SAVE AS DEFAULT if you want this change to become permanent. Otherwise, the change will only be valid until the next time you start DXbase.

Click OK to complete the changes, or click ABORT to cancel the changes.

Repeat this process for other windows.

Other Style Options

In the View | Styles dialog, there are some tabs that are not generally used or required in DXbase. They are included just in case a use is identified in the future. We recommend that you leave the following tabs set to the default:

Format

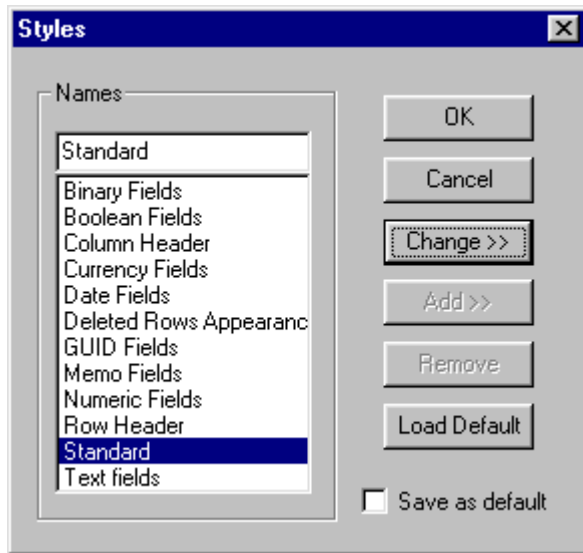
Control

Base On

Alignment of Cells

Any of the sub-windows in DXbase that contain a grid format can have their own individual cell alignment. You can set both the vertical and the horizontal alignment. To change the alignment characteristics of a particular sub-window, first click in the window you want to change. This let's DXbase know which window to change.

Select VIEW/STYLES from the main menu. You will the following dialog box:

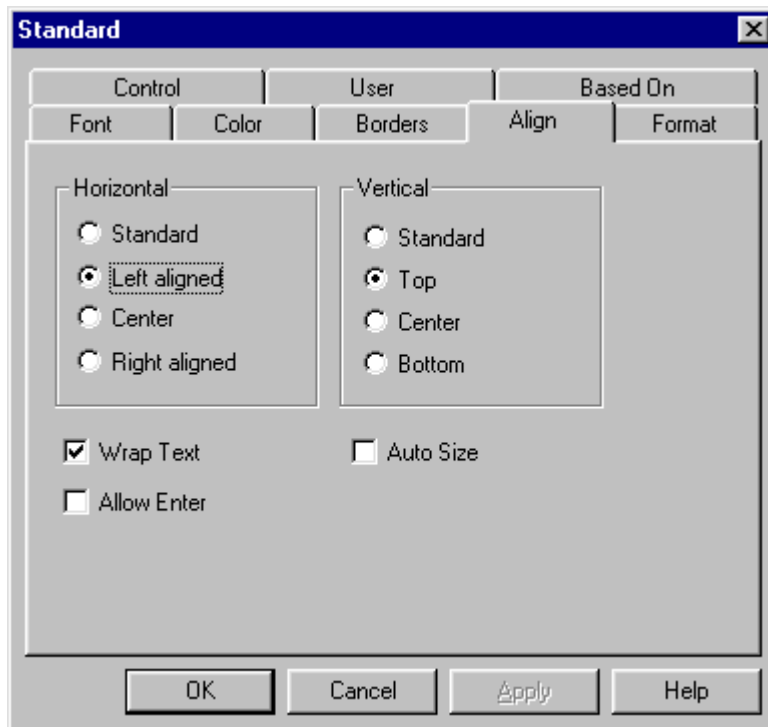


Select STANDARD from the list box.

Click the CHANGE button.

Click the Align tab.

You will see this screen:



Select the alignment that you want.

Click OK

Click the SAVE AS DEFAULT if you want this change to become permanent. Otherwise, the change will only be valid until the next time you start DXbase.

Click OK to complete the changes, or click ABORT to cancel the changes.

Repeat this process for other windows.

QSO Field Order

Field Order Overview

The order that fields appear in the QSO log and the Previous QSO module can be defined by the user. The use of a user specified field order differs slightly depending on whether you are viewing the QSO log, or the Previous QSO module.

QSO Log field order can only be specified at the time DXbase is started. Each time you start DXbase you will be optionally asked to select the field order configuration file. Once selected, it must NOT be changed while DXbase is running. If you do attempt to change the field order, your configuration file may become corrupted because DXbase will attempt to overwrite the configuration when it is closed. To select a different field order, exit DXbase and restart again selecting the new field order to be used.

Previous QSO Module field order can be specified each time you enter this module. Optionally, you will be asked to select the field order each time this module is activated.

General Procedure

Close DXbase

From the DXbase program group, run the FLDORDER utility program

Enter the order for each field and put a check for those fields that should be hidden

Save the configuration file. We strongly recommend you save files into the DXbase folder

Start DXbase and select the field order configuration previously saved.

The same configuration file can be used for both the QSO log and the Previous QSO module. Or, you can create separate configuration files for each. If you use the same configuration, be aware that any changes you may make to the field width or hiding/unhiding fields in one module will be reflected in the other.

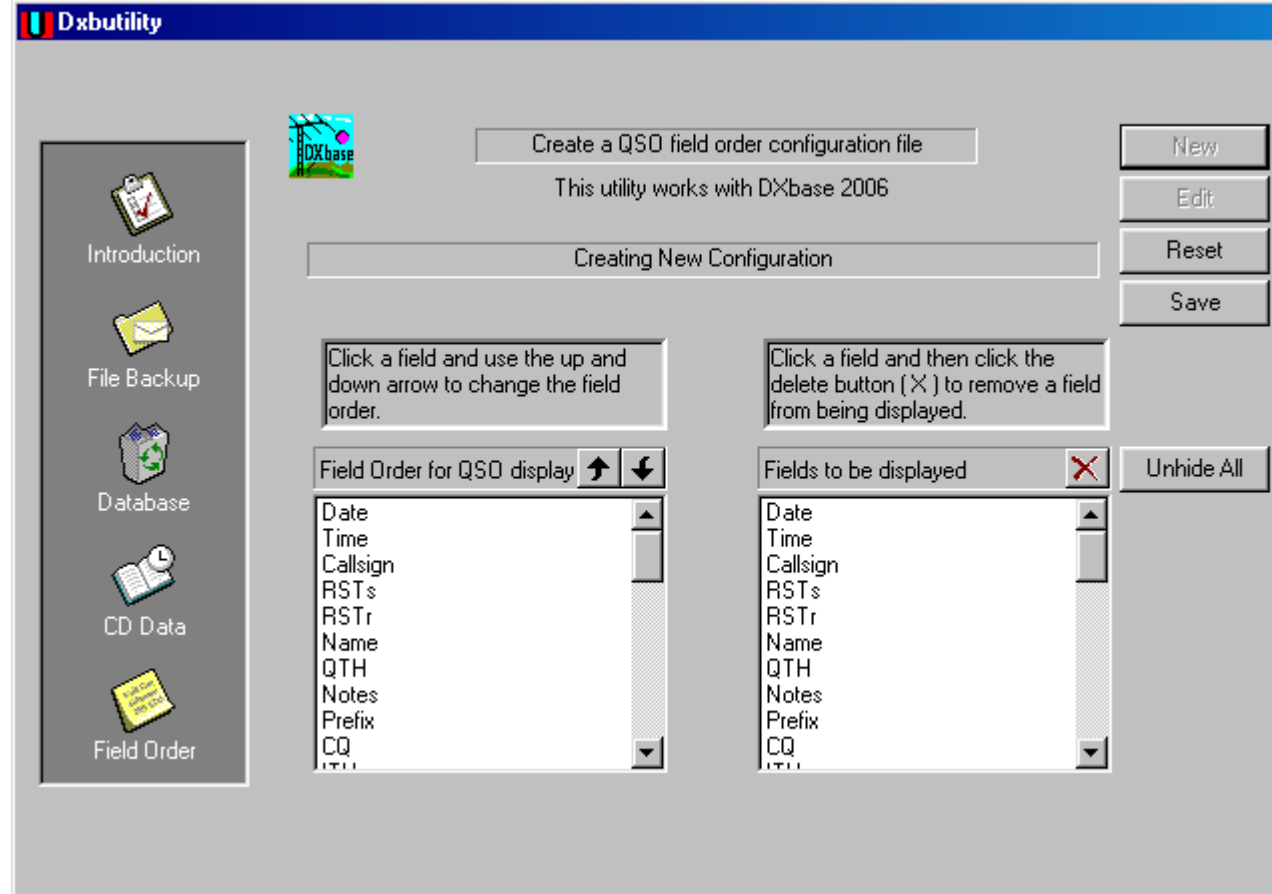
DXbase does not allow editing an existing field order configuration. Therefore, we recommend that you plan your field order in advance thereby making it less likely that you will want to make changes. If you desire a new configuration, you'll need to create one from scratch.

Creating a Field Order Configuration

This process allows you to specify the numeric order in which fields will appear in either the QSO Log or the Previous QSO Module. From the DXbase Program group, execute the DXbase Utility program. Click the Field Order ICON on the left side of the screen. If you are going to create a new configuration file, select new. If you are going to edit an existing field order configuration file, then select edit and then choose the name of the configuration file you want to modify.

To change the order of fields, click the field name you want to move and then use the up and down arrow button to move the field.

To hide a field from being displayed in your log, click the name of the field you want to hide and then click the delete button.



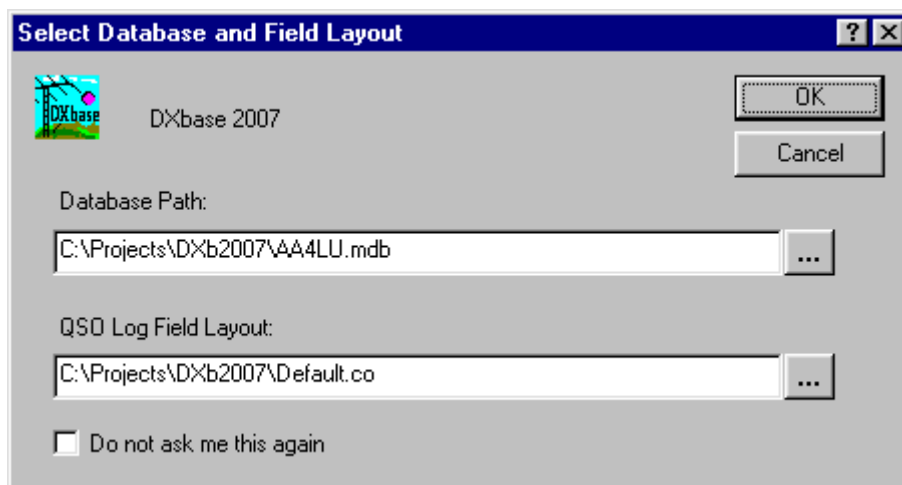
When you have finished making your selections, press the Save button. When prompted to save the configuration file, provide the name of the configuration that you want to use. Also, navigate to the DXbase folder so that the file you save will be stored in the DXbase folder. This will make it easy for you to remember where you put the file. Configuration files use the file extension of .CO Do NOT attempt to use a different file extension.

There are some default configuration files installed by DXbase. Do NOT overwrite these files. Leave them alone and select new names for any configuration files that you create.

Selecting a Configuration File

QSO Log

When starting DXbase, you can be optionally asked to select the field order configuration file to be used for the QSO Log. If you want the capability to make this selection, you must turn on the [User Option in the General tab](#) for "Prompt for database name and column order". If this option is not set, run DXbase and set this user option. Then, you can restart DXbase and make your configuration file selection.



You can select a default configuration file as furnished by us, or you can select a configuration file that you have already created. Click the button located to the right of the path entry under QSO Log Field Layout to activate the file selection box. The configuration that you select at program startup will only apply to the QSO Log.

Previous QSO Module

While DXbase is running, you will have the opportunity to select a different configuration file when you enter the Previous QSO Module. If you do not see a prompt, then put a check in the option on the Previous QSO screen when it is displayed, close the window, and access it again.

When prompted, navigate to the folder where your configuration files were stored. Once there, you will see any files that end in the .CO file extension. Select the configuration file that you wish to use and click the open button.

Hide QSO Columns

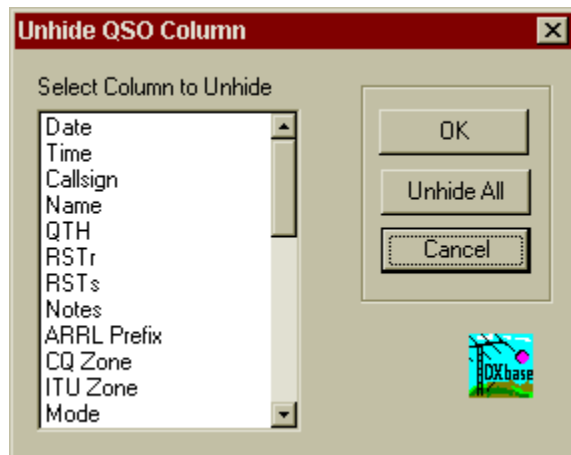
You can hide a field in the QSO log or in the Previous QSO window. In the column header, click the left mouse button on the vertical bar on the right side of the field that you want to hide and while holding the left mouse button down, drag it to the left until the field is hidden. Your changes will be saved and used each time you start the application.

Unhide a Column

There are two ways to unhide a column:

1. Position the cursor on the vertical bar in the column header and double click the left mouse button. Any hidden column for this location will be unhidden.
2. Use the Unhide window.

To use the Unhide Window, click the right mouse while the cursor is located inside the log window. Choose the Unhide option. In the dialog below, select the field that you want to unhide and click OK. To unhide all fields, choose Unhide All.



Selection Wizard

Selection Wizard Overview

The Selection Wizard provides an easy to use, yet powerful, tool for automatically extracting QSO information and creating pending QSO and Address labels, as well as a subset of the QSO log database. By using this feature, DXbase can automatically search your QSO database to find QSOs for which you want pending labels or a temporary QSO Report database to be automatically created.

When you start the selection process, DXbase will warn you if records already exist in your temporary database. You can elect to erase the existing records, or you can leave them and simply

append the new records to the existing database. From the application menu, choose TOOLS/Selection Wizard or click the Wizard ICON from the toolbar.

When initially displayed, the Selection Wizard sets the "simulation" mode on as the default. In this mode, no records are actually created and no databases are changed. DXbase goes through the selection process so that you see what the numeric results would be, but it does not actually create any records. This is useful for testing the selection criteria that you have chosen.

Test Only

If this box is checked (the default) DXbase will merely perform a count based on the filter criteria you selected. No records will be stored in any database. This is useful to verify that the choices that you have made extract the expected number of records before actually allowing the records to be saved.

Output Category

You must choose whether you want Label Records, Report Records, or ADIF Records to be the output format. If you select labels, then the output will be written to the pending QSO and Address label database. In addition, the special options applicable to labels located in the lower right hand section of the Selection Wizard box are available.

If you select Report Records, the output is written to the temporary Reports Record database. This database is available for use when producing User Designed Reports. NOTE: Each time you use the Selection Wizard and choose the output to be Report Records, the Selection Wizard will ask you if you want to erase any existing records that are already contained in the Report Records database. You can choose to first empty the Report Record database, or you can elect to simply append to what already exists.

If you select ADIF File, output will be sent to a file ending in the .ADI file extension and records will be formatted in accordance with the ADIF specification 1.0. All of the filter options are available to limit the type of records that are produced in the output. If you want to view the .adi file, you can use normal Windows Notepad or Wordpad since the ADIF file is a simple text file. Be careful that if you use Wordpad that you do not save the file as anything except plain text.

QSO Record Selection Filters

This is an optional section. By selecting any of the **QSO record filter choices**, DXbase will ONLY include records that meet this filter condition. To activate a filter, place a check mark in the appropriate box and where available, enter the filter value for the category you have marked. You can set as many filters simultaneously as you want. Notice that there are some default values already set when the Selection Wizard is displayed. Modify these to suit your needs.

Auto Detect New Ones

The Auto Detect New Ones section provides the capability for the Selection Wizard to automatically identify records that will result in a new band or mode for the Active Category that you select. You must select whether the Selection Wizard should look for Mixed mode or Individual modes, and also, whether or not Individual Band or Mixed Band should be used while searching for new ones. NOTE: That if you have selected any of the Filter categories in the QSO Record Selection Filter section, ONLY records which meet this filter condition will be available for use in the Auto Detect New Ones process. For example, if you have placed a check in the YL checkbox, then only QSOs which are marked as YL will be used.

Filtering Records

The Selection Wizard module provides powerful filtering options that will allow you to extract user defined sets of QSO records for use in making User Defined Lists, ADIF files, or for creating QSO and Address labels.

Selection Wizard

Results

Log Records Read QSO Labels Address Labels QSO Records

Output Type: **ADIF File** ☐ Test only - Don't save output

Optional Configuration Usage

Select Existing Configuration File

C:\Program Files\Scientific Solutions\DXbase 2006

Clear CFG Load CFG Save CFG

Auto Detect New Ones

☐ Active Category = **IOTA**

☐ Individual Mode ☒ Mixed Mode

☐ Individual Band ☒ Mixed Band

☒ Save Address Label

☒ Use CD Adr if no DXbase Adr. found

☒ QSOs with same Manager = **W3HNK**

☐ Over ride User Option Group Settings **1**

☐ Opr. Call **AA4LU**

☐ Update Date Sent Field

☐ Exclude QSL Via = None

Start Abort QSO Filters

QSOs with same Manager

If this filter is selected, DXbase will only include records that have the same manager entered, based on the DXbase manager databases.

Special Label Features

As label records are selected, DXbase allows some additional activity to be made. For example, you can also choose to have the QSL Sent field updated with the current date for all QSO records selected for labels. You can have DXbase automatically store an address label if address information is contained in the DXbase address database. You can also specify a label group designator. The Label Group field is defaulted from user options, but you can change it in the Wizard to have your labels saved with a different designator.

Some combinations of filters may not make any sense and would lead to records being selected or ignored. For example, if you checked the AWARD box and selected DXCC, AND, you also selected Not Confirmed QSOs, this wouldn't really be logical. By definition, QSOs credited for DXCC must have been confirmed. Otherwise you couldn't have submitted the QSL card. DXbase allows for maximum flexibility but it's the user's responsibility to choose logical filters.

Exclude QSL Via = None

Select this option if you want to exclude any QSO records that contain a QSL Via field where it is set to none. This option may be desirable when the output type is for labels, but you may wish to uncheck this option when producing report records and ADIF file outputs.

Opr. Call

This filter allows you to only include QSO records that contain a specific call sign in the Opr. Call field of the QSO record. To activate this filter, enter a check mark for this option and also enter the call sign that is to be included. All records that do not have this call sign in the Opr. Call field will be excluded. Only callsigns that have been registered can be used in this field. If you enter a callsign that is not registered, it will be ignored.

Over ride User Option Group Setting


User options in the Label tab identify the group number that will be assigned to QSO and Address labels. This option allows you to ignore those options and instead assign a specific group number to the labels that are created by the Wizard. To use this option, check this box and enter the group number that you want to have assigned.

QSO Record Filters

This section provides filtering for nearly all of the available fields in the QSO log. Turning a filter one may require a two step process. For example, many fields contain a checkbox directly to the left of the field where you enter the filter data. If the checkbox is not checked, DXbase will ignore the filter completely for this field even though you may have entered some filter data in the field provided. In short, the checkbox must be checked if you filtering by that field to be applied. Some fields do not require any data to be entered and these only require a check in the box provided for the filter to be applied. For example, to include only YL QSO records, you would simply check the YL box.

You can have as many different filters activated as you want.

Select QSO Record Filters

 ☐ QRP ☐ User1 ☐ Satellite ☐ Valid DXCC ☐ No QSL Sent
☐ YL ☐ User2 ☐ No LOTW Submitted

OK Cancel

QSO record selection filters

<input type="checkbox"/> Band = 40	<input type="checkbox"/> GRID =	<input type="checkbox"/> QSL Rec. < 20030131
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mode = CW	<input type="checkbox"/> Notes =	<input type="checkbox"/> QSL Rec. > 20040322
<input type="checkbox"/> Submode = MFSK16	<input type="checkbox"/> WPX =	<input type="checkbox"/> QSO Call = VP6DI
<input type="checkbox"/> CQ Zone = 01	<input type="checkbox"/> QSO Date < 20040322	<input type="checkbox"/> Award = DXCC
<input type="checkbox"/> US State = AK	<input type="checkbox"/> QSO Date > 20030101	<input type="checkbox"/> Select = DXCC
<input type="checkbox"/> IOTA = AF001	<input type="checkbox"/> QSL Sent < 20030131	<input type="checkbox"/> Special - 1 =
<input type="checkbox"/> Country = K	<input type="checkbox"/> QSL Sent > 20030131	<input type="checkbox"/> Special - 2 =
<input type="checkbox"/> Confirm = Card	<input type="checkbox"/> 10/10 =	<input type="checkbox"/> LoTW Rec. < 20030131
<input type="checkbox"/> Power < 100	<input type="checkbox"/> QSL Via = Manager	<input type="checkbox"/> LoTW Rec. > 20030315

Date Filters

You will notice that the fields that allow filtering by date are pre-populated with the current date for your convenience. These fields are not used as filters unless you place a check in the box to the left of the date fields. It does no harm to leave the default date populated. It is only used if you mark it as a filter. You can change the date default by clicking on the button and selecting a new date from the drop down calendar box. Dates must be formatted in the YYYYMMDD format. DXbase automatically populates this format when selection is made from the drop down calendar.

ADIF Export

Your QSO log data can be easily exported to the ADIF format. To export your data, simply choose ADIF as the output type in the [selection wizard](#) window. To export your entire log, remove any feature conditions that might be set in the selection wizard. If you prefer, you can set filters and thereby only export selected records from your log.

The ADIF export also provided an automated of marking the QSLs field of a QSO record as being submitted to the [ARRL Logbook of the World](#).

Support

Technical Support

Technical support is available for a period of thirty days following your purchase of a license for DXbase. After this point, support is available on a per incident basis at prevailing fees. You must be a registered user to be entitled to receive technical support. Your first choice for free support should be our Web site. Here you will find a description of any problems that others may have experienced along with a description of the resolution. All technical support requests must include the following information:

Your name

Your callsign

Your date of purchase

Your registration number

A detailed description, step by step, of how to reproduce the problem

A description of the trouble shooting activities that you have tried to resolve the problem

A description of the computer hardware you are using.

The first step in solving a problem is to determine what is causing the problem. Only then will you know the proper course of action to take. Consider these guidelines:

If you have been using DXbase and it suddenly does not work

1. Analyze whatever changes you have made to your hardware or other software because chances are that whatever you changed has caused DXbase to stop working. This is particularly important to consider if you have recently installed some other software. DXbase includes a number of .DLL files that are sometimes used in other products. If some other software has installed a version of a .DLL file that is different than what was installed with DXbase, there is a chance that this is causing a problem.
2. Check your hard drive to insure that it has not become damaged. Have you recently found lost or damaged sectors or clusters? Are there lost or damaged sectors or clusters now? If any of this has happened, then you probably have corrupted files and will need to reinstall DXbase. Your databases may be damaged, and you may need to load from your backup database. If you do not have a valid backup, then you are probably "out of luck. And by the way, if you don't have a valid backup, "Why not? This is like playing with bee hives. Eventually you are going to get stung!

If you are just beginning to use DXbase

1. Use the help file system. Answers to nearly all your questions about “How do I do this are contained in the help files.
2. Make sure you have set user options correctly, especially hardware affecting options.
3. Look carefully at any error messages that are produced. They usually tell you what the problem is.

Support NOT provided by Scientific Solutions, Inc.

We regret that we cannot provide technical support for other products. Questions pertaining to other products should be referred to the manufacturer of that product in accordance with their instructions. We also cannot replace the tech support services of other manufacturers just because DXbase provides a software interface to their product. Scientific Solutions will provide assistance in “How to set options in DXbase to work with these other products. But we cannot offer free support in troubleshooting your individual system or analyzing your configuration for each device you intend to use with DXbase. Such as HF radio, TNC, CD-ROM to identify what the options should be. If you require this kind of support we recommend that you contact the manufacturer of the equipment in question so that you can avoid tech support expenses. If you prefer to call us, we will provide fee based consultation as time permits if we feel that we can help solve the problem. Fees must be paid by credit card at the time of the call and are based on 15 minute increments. A minimum 15 minute charge will apply. For example:

1. I just purchased a new computer or hard disk drive and now DXbase won't work. Usually this indicates that your new hardware is not installed or configured properly. If hardware and configuration are set up properly, the installation program in DXbase will work. Any known problems or bugs identified in DXbase will be listed on our Internet Web Page.
2. I used to be able to access data on my favorite Address CD-ROM purchased from XXX company and now I received an updated version which does not work in DXbase. If a previous version used to work and a new version does not, this usually indicates that the other product has changed and is no longer compatible with DXbase. At the time DXbase is released for sale, it is tested with the current version of any third party products for which we provide an interface. We assume no responsibility for changes that might be made to third party products that cause them to no longer operate with DXbase. We expect manufacturers of third party products to keep us informed well in advance of any changes they plan to make. We will discontinue support for any third party products where the manufacturer fails to extend this simple courtesy.
3. I used to be able to import my favorite contest database but version XXX which just came out does not work. This usually indicates that the database format in your contest program has changed. Contact the manufacturer of the contest program for resolution.
4. I had a hard disk crash, power failure, or something, and now DXbase can't seem to find all my QSO records, prefixes, etc.. If your database becomes corrupted for whatever reason, load your working backup. If you do not have a working backup, then you will need to hire someone who has database experience and knows how to attempt to repair a damaged database file. Be prepared, because this kind of specialized work is expensive.
5. Most serial communications issues (if not all) are the result of not having the TNC, HF Radio, and DXbase user options set correctly. For example, the baud rate specified in DXbase for your HF radio must be correct based on what is set in the HF radio or it will not work. Likewise,

the baudrate set in the TNC must be the same as user options set in DXbase. The address and IRQ of a serial port are set in Windows serial port configuration and must be correct for the device that is using that port.

6. Questions regarding how to configure or use Microsoft Windows 95 or NT. These are best handled by calling Microsoft or their designated representative.

Technical support is only provided to registered users for the current release of DXbase.



Why all the exclusions you might ask?

It's really very simple. Experience has shown that people who need help tend to contact those who have either helped before or who they believe are most likely to be able to help. By default, since we designed DXbase and all of the interfaces, it's only natural to assume that we know all the answers. Often times that assumption is correct when it comes to our product and how to make it work with other products. We therefore have found ourselves in the unwanted position of taking on technical support calls for every product associated with DXbase including general hardware configuration since the configuration must be correct in order for DXbase to work. We deliberately do not price DXbase with the expectation that we will be staffed to handle technical support for anything but DXbase itself. We designed DXbase in such a manner that it is easy and intuitive to use thereby reducing the likelihood that anyone will ever need to call us with a question about our product. In order for us to provide unlimited support regarding all of the above, the price we charge for DXbase would have to be substantially higher. Our goal is to keep the cost of DXbase as reasonable as we can. Therefore, we instead have put in place a method where customers can get the support they want, but if it is for issues not directly involving DXbase, then there is a charge for this kind of consultation for those who use the service.

Contacting us for help

Be sure you have reviewed the [Frequently Asked Questions](#) section of the help file. Many common questions and answers are described in this section.

Check our Internet Web Site. We will maintain an up to date description of any confirmed problems and any commonly asked questions. This is the place to find the latest information about DXbase.

In addition, we intend to maintain a DXbase Newsgroup where DXbase customers can easily exchange information with each other. Check our Web for information on using this service.

The preferred method, and most efficient, is to send us e-mail via the Internet addresses provided. We check these messages and try to respond to them frequently during each day. Email allows us to respond anytime during the day and it is usually free of expense for all concerned.

Internet Email address: support@dxbase.com

Internet Web Site : <http://www.dxbase.com>

You can send us written correspondence. Please provide a clearly defined description of the problem including a step by step explanation of what actions you take which can reproduce the problem. Our mailing address is:



Scientific Solutions, Inc.

ATTN: DXbase Technical Support

736 Cedar Creek Way

Woodstock, GA 30189



We will accept telephone calls for support as time and availability permit. This method is the least preferred because it is costly for you and because we are unable to assure you that someone will be available to take your calls. Why you might ask, after all, I paid my money and I expect this? Well, yes in a manner of speaking, you did. However, telephone support is very costly to a software manufacturer. If a manufacturer intends to provide full time telephone support, they must hire employees to answer the phones. They must be trained and an internal support tracking system must be purchased. All of these costs are added to the cost of the purchase price you pay for the license to use the software. We have deliberately not put this kind of support structure in place and thus we are able to keep the price you pay at its lowest possible level. Telephone calls will be returned only if you indicate in your message that you will accept a collect call from Scientific Solutions. Our phone number is 770 924-2210 and any changes to this number will be posted on our Internet Web Page.

Enhancement Requests

Scientific Solutions, Inc. welcomes your ideas for enhancements to this product. Any ideas that you may submit which are later used in our product are the intellectual property of Scientific Solutions, Inc. In other words, if we use your idea, we won't be sending you any royalties! Sorry!



All requests for enhancements must be sent in writing preferably via email. If you happen to speak with us on the telephone, please do not tell us about enhancement requests at that time. Write your ideas, in all their beautiful detail, and mail them to us or forward them in electronic mail. Please do NOT post enhancement requests to a public forum such as the DXbase Reflector. All requests should be sent in direct email to Scientific Solutions, Inc.

Be very specific about what you are asking for. If possible describe step by step how you want a particular proposed feature to operate. If you can predict whether or not your idea would be of value to others, please describe what universe of customers might benefit from your idea. This is important since we attempt to provide new features that would appeal to the widest possible universe of customers.

In the event that your idea does not show up in a future release, please don't take it personally. It may be that your idea was great but the impact on hardware may have been greater than what we desired or maybe the idea would only appeal to a small number of users.

Remember that we are in "Windows Land. As such, multiple programs can be active simultaneously and the functionality you want may already exist in some other application. For example, if you wanted a robust text editor function in DXbase, we would not consider this an enhancement because there are many superb word processor programs already available.



A lot of non DXbase users and competitors monitor the DXbase Reflector. We don't want your great ideas to tip off the competition, so please do not post your suggestions to the DXbase Reflector. We prefer that they sent in direct email to us at support@dxbase.com

Please remember that our development efforts and the things that we plan to do in the future are proprietary. We don't advertise to our competition or paint a roadmap for them to know what we plan. Therefore, be discreet about your postings to the DXbase Reflector. **The DXbase Reflector is not the place to request enhancements and we will generally not respond to those kinds of postings. Send your requests in private, direct email to us.**

Thanks for your understanding!

Frequently Asked Questions



I wanted to choose a menu item but it was "grayed or not present. I know the menu item exists, what's wrong?

Some menu and toolbar buttons are only active for a particular view or window. The view that has the focus, as evidenced by the title bar of that window being highlighted, will control what menu items are available to you. To give a window focus, simply click in that window.



I installed DXbase and everything appeared to be fine, except I cannot access my TNC comport even though DXbase for DOS and some other programs can. What's wrong?

There are only a few settings contained in DXbase which have any effect on the ability to talk to a comport. These are limited to the settings in User options. Review these and make sure they are correct. If they are, then the problem **MUST** be in your hardware or Windows configuration.

DXbase for Windows uses Hardware flow control. In your Windows configuration you must set the comport to use hardware flow control and if your TNC has an option for flow control, it must also be set for hardware.

DXbase for Windows requires a properly wired RS232 cable. Some programs do not require all the leads in the cable to be connected. But DXbase for Windows will require this. Many software packages use software flow control that does not require all leads to be connected, but with hardware flow control, as used in DXbase, these leads are required. In a number of cases, we have found that the user just would not accept the fact that a cable could be defective or non-standard so they ignored this possibility only to discover much later that the problem was indeed the cable.

When you installed Windows 95 or NT, if you were performing an upgrade from Windows 3.x, you may have some invalid entries left over in your Windows system.ini file. Use Notepad or Wordpad to view your system.ini file and look for entries such as:

```
device = pbewd01s.vxd
```

If you find this or similar entries, try commenting them out one at a time, and restart Windows. Entries such as this are generally not removed by the Windows 95/NT installation and they can cause comport problems. We do not recommend deleting these entries until you determine if their removal will have no ill effect on some of your other programs.



When I start DXbase with a lot of packet spots stored in my TNC, DXbase seizes control until they are processed. Why?

If you have all the sound features of DXbase turned on, Windows will automatically assign a high priority to playing the sound files. When there are a lot of sound files in line to be played, the effect will be that you are unable to perform functions in DXbase. Once the sound files are played, you will regain control of the screen. To reduce this problem, you could eliminate whatever is stored in your TNC by turning it off and on before starting DXbase, thus emptying its buffer. Alternatively, you could set "Disable Sounds on Exit in User Options for TNC. We recommend setting this option for both VHF and Internet. After DXbase is started, you can then turn all sound on by simply clicking the speaker ICON located on the DXbase status bar at the bottom of your screen.



I sometimes receive a message that says HF radio failed to respond. Why?

DXbase will wait approximately one second for the HF radio to respond to a query. If no response is received, it will cancel that pending request and display the error message. As the saying goes, "All radios are not created equally. In our testing, we have found that the RS232 interface in some radios sometimes gets confused. We have no explanation except to say that they are not yet as robust as they probably should be. We don't completely rule out the possibility that our software may be able to better deal with this, but so far, we have not found any additional improvements that will eliminate the radio's failure to respond. Some radios have an internal option that causes them to automatically write status information to the RS232 port. This constant output by the radio may interfere with the interaction between DXbase and the port. When using DXbase, this feature should be turned off in the radio if you experience trouble.



I entered an invalid entry into one of the fields of a record and I receive an error message and cannot get out of the field. What do I do?

DXbase attempts to validate most entries. Sometimes our validations are dependent on what may have been entered in some previous field of the record. For example, if you have entered the mode of a QSO as CW but you try to enter an RST for phone, DXbase will complain. There are several ways to deal with this. You could try the undo ICON on the toolbar or, select from the application menu Record/Cancel Record or, if you are in one of the dialog boxes, position your cursor on the title bar of the dialog bar and press the right mouse button then select Cancel.



I entered a new record but when I looked later, the record was not there?

Adding or changing a record is a two step process. First you enter the new data in each field or you change existing information. You must save your changes. You can save a record in two ways. You can simply click on a different record that will cause your changes or new record to be automatically saved, or, you can choose from the application menu Record/Update. If you are in one of the dialog boxes, position your cursor on the title bar of the dialog box and press the right mouse button then select Update.



I tried to print the QSO Log by selecting FILE/Print or Print Preview and the display and print is all dark and distorted. What's wrong?

Some combinations of fonts and colors may appear fine in the Log window but they do not print properly. Select some standard fonts and colors and try again.



How will I know about the availability of upgrades and other information about DXbase?

The most up to date information about our products will be found on our Internet Web Site:

<http://www.dxbase.com>



DXbase seems to run slow?

This application is very complex in design and uses the latest Windows Programming Technology. It's like having four serial communications programs and a nine database programs all running at the same time. It assumes that you are using up to date hardware. We recommend a Pentium processor with 16 megabyte or more of RAM. It will operate on any system capable of running Windows 95/NT but this is what we recommend to achieve reasonable performance. If you have a limited amount of memory, this will dramatically impact performance. If you hear your hard drive thrashing a lot, chances are you need more memory to efficiently run DXbase and the other applications that you want to run simultaneously. There are a couple tricks we have discovered which will provide some performance improvements:

The default registry entries for the Microsoft Jet Database Engine allocate a small amount of memory for the DAO buffer. You can increase this value which will improve the speed at which some database operations are handled:

Shut down ALL applications except for Windows or NT itself.

Click the Program Start Button

Click Run

Type regedit and run this program

You should see a display of the keys in your system registry.

Navigate the tree on the left of the display to get to the following registry entry:

`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Jet\3.5\Engines\Jet3.5`

Look for an entry on the right side of the display called MaxBufferSize. You may find that the value for this key is something like 0x00000000 that is the default.

Double click on this entry and a dialog box will appear which allows you to change this value. The hex button should be the default selection and a value of zero will appear in the edit box. Overtyping the 0 in the edit box with 400 and close the dialog box. Now the MaxBufferSize should have 0x000000400 and (1024) displayed to the right. Close the registry and restart Windows.

NOTE: If the value of MaxBufferSize was already 0x000000400 or higher, do not make it any smaller. Do NOT change any other entries. If your computer has a large of memory, you might consider making the MaxBufferSize even larger.



My HF Transceiver is not supported. How can I get support added?

In order for us to consider adding programming support for a particular HF transceiver, it must be one that is used by a lot of amateurs and one that provides for a computer interface. You will need to provide us with all of the technical programming details for the transceiver. If this information was not included with your owner's manual, you can obtain it from the manufacturer. We may require that the manufacturer furnish us with a "loaner transceiver for testing and development purposes. You should ask the manufacturer if they are willing to provide this service.



DXbase won't talk to my serial port for my transceiver or TNC?

There are many possibilities to cause problems:

1. Make sure the cables and connections are all correct.
2. Make sure the radio or TNC is working properly.
3. Make sure that you have DXbase user options set correctly.
4. Make sure that your Windows hardware configuration for address and IRQ are set correctly.
5. Make sure the address is in sync with your transceiver.
6. Make sure your serial card is configured correctly for IRQ and Address.
7. Is the serial card Windows 95/NT compatible?
8. Does Windows 95/NT recognize your hardware as being in "working state in hardware configuration?
9. Does someone else use the same radio or TNC with DXbase without trouble? If so, it's probably your hardware.
10. Make sure you have not assigned your HF radio and TNC to the same serial port.
11. Is some other program also trying to use the same serial port simultaneously?
12. Do you have an internal modem that might be sharing the same IRQ?
13. Are you trying to use the same port for CW? Perhaps your hardware won't allow sharing DTR for CW.



When I try to add or change a record, I get an error message?

It may be that you have some invalid data in one of the fields that you have entered. Usually an error message will tell you this. It may be that your database has become corrupted and you may need to restore the database from your backup. Exit all applications and run ScanDisk or some other utility program and find out if you have lost or damaged sectors on your hard drive. Have you made any changes to the database from outside DXbase such as directly in Microsoft Access? If so, you may have entered invalid data and you will need to correct the mistakes.



My numeric statistics are not accurate?

Numeric statistics are controlled by a number of factors:

1. Perhaps the internal link is out of sync and you need to **initialize tables**.
2. Perhaps you have marked some QSOs as satellite.
3. Perhaps you have marked some QSOs as not being valid for DXCC.
4. Perhaps you have marked some QSOs as not being valid for the mode of the QSO.
5. Perhaps you have changed the associated database table for prefix, iota, etc. and need to initialize tables.
6. Perhaps you have assigned the wrong prefix to some QSOs.
7. Do you have “include deleted set in user options when you really only want current countries?”



I can send data out over packet but I cannot see what I sent?

You must have the TNC option ECHO set to ON in the TNC so that it will echo what is sent and DXbase will use this to display the characters.



I can send data out over packet but I cannot receive even though I am connected to the cluster

You may have a TNC or comport which requires that DTR be set high. Try setting user options for TNC with the Default DTR high option checked. Note: If you set this option, you cannot use this comport for CW.



The characters I type do not go out over packet?

Assuming you have the TNC properly configured and you are connected to your local packet network, this probably occurs when you type characters but forgot to first set the correct Packet Transmit window tab to the Packet interface you are using (VHF or Internet). Your characters typed are processed by whatever window has the focus.



DXbase logs the wrong time?

This is a Windows configuration problem. DXbase does not perform any computations for time. It merely queries Windows for the current system time and DXbase uses what Windows provides.

Make sure your system clock is set correctly. If you are using UTC/GMT, make sure you have followed the instructions under the [Options section](#) of this help file.

Make sure you do not have any settings in your autoexec.bat or config.sys that may be left over from previous installations of some other software. For example, the following entry would cause the time to be incorrect:

TZ = cst5cdt



DXbase does not seem to recognize any DX alerts?

1. Make sure the TNC is not set to convert all characters to upper case.
2. Make sure User Alert Options are set correctly.
3. Make sure the User TNC options have set DX de as the DX spot key.



If I turn my HF transceiver off, DXbase appears to lock up?

There are some comports, particularly newer ones which share the same IRQ and provide multiple comports, which seem to require that DTR be set high even though DTR is not used to interface with your HF radio. Try setting options for the HF radio to have Default DTR high checked.

NOTE: If you set DTR high you cannot use this port for CW. If this fails to help, try choosing a comport which is not associated with this special serial card.



There are some buttons not showing up on my toolbars. Instead, I see a blank button without a bitmap picture on it?

Settings are contained in your DXBxxxx.INI file where xxxx is the version number of Dxbase located in your Windows directory. Try deleting all sections in the .INI file that have the [DT...] section title. There are approximately twelve such sections. You should delete all of them including all entries within each of these sections. Save your changes and restart DXbase. You will now have to reposition your various toolbars since their screen positions were deleted.



There are some toolbars missing and I can't find a way to get them back even though I have them turned in VIEW/CUSTOMIZE options. What do I do?

Settings are contained in your DXBxxxx.INI file located in your Windows directory where xxxx is the version number of Dxbase you are using. Try deleting all sections in the .INI file that have the [DT...] section title. There are approximately twelve such sections. You should delete all of them including all entries within each of these sections. Save your changes and restart DXbase. You will now have to reposition your various toolbars since their screen positions were deleted.



DXbase Reflector

One of the best resources for obtaining assistance is by subscribing to the DXbase Reflector. The procedure for joining the reflector is described on the DXbase web site. It's very easy to do, and once you join, you will be able to exchange questions and answers with all the other DXbase users who have joined. In most cases, you can get an answer to question within hours or less.

The reflector works as an automatic email delivery system. When you join, you will automatically receive an email that contains any messages that were posted to the reflector by others. As you post messages addressed to the reflector, everyone else who is subscribed will receive an email containing your message.

Rules of Use

The DXbase Reflector is provided for the sole purpose of helping users to obtain answers to their questions and thereby enjoy the software and learn about its features. It is also the primary means by which Scientific Solutions communicates any update information to our customers. Please use the reflector as much as you want and be as helpful toward others as you can. If you are asking a question, be sure you state your question in a clear and concise manner. Most people will not take the time to try and figure out what you mean, they will just ignore the question if it is not obvious what you are asking. Try to avoid the temptation to phrase your comments or questions in a negative manner. Keep things professional and you are sure to be treated in a professional manner too.

The reflector is a public forum. Therefore, please do not make enhancement requests, complaints, etc... here. The best place for this is in direct email communication with the vendor in question.

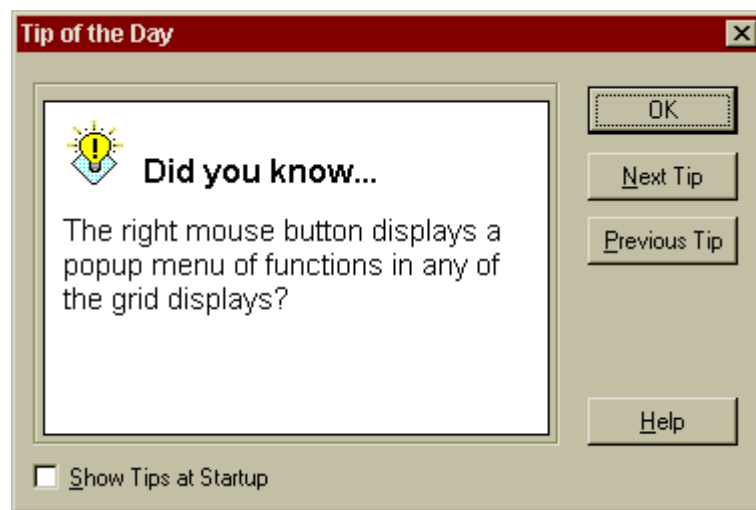
Tip of the Day

For your convenience, we have included the standard Microsoft Tip of the Day feature. Each time you run DXbase, you will be presented with a new tip. Our developers have attempted to include

a tip for many aspects of the program that might not be self-explanatory. You can turn this feature off by simply clicking in the check box, but we recommend you leave it enabled and take a look at the absolutely free advice it offers.

Think about this!

Some users automatically turn this option off when they first install the software. It's always puzzling why someone would do this so quickly. There is a lot of useful information contained in this feature which you may not know about. We encourage you to leave this feature turned on at least until you have seen all the tips that are available. Why pass up the opportunity to learn something new?



Remove the check mark from the Show Tips on Startup box to prevent this dialog from being displayed when DXbase is started. You can access the tip of the day at anytime by selecting HELP/TIPS from the application menu. If you want to re-enable Tip of the Day at startup, simply mark the checkbox before you close the dialog.



Using Winkey Speed Pot

There is a limitation in the ability to use the speed pot located on the Winkey and also use the speed controls provided within DXbase. We regret the issue but have not completely solved this. Some users have been successful in being able to use the Winkey speed pot by setting options as follows:

In DXbase Winkey user WPM settings:

1. 10 MIN
2. 49 MAX
3. 0 speed
4. 255 Port Range

With these settings, some users report that the speed pot on the Winkey will now function. BUT, you CANNOT use the speed controls in DXbase without disrupting the ability to use the speed pot. So, you will need to decide where you want speed to be controlled and operate accordingly.

The information provided here may change without notice and may not prove satisfactory for all users.

Install and Uninstall DXbase

Reinstalling DXbase

If you wish to reinstall DXbase on a machine where DXbase is already installed, there are certain precautions that you must take in order for the reinstallation to be successful:

1. Make a temporary folder on your machine and copy your QSO and REFDATA files from your DXbase folder into this temporary folder. These will be the files named yourcall.mdb (where yourcall is your callsign or whatever name you have to your QSO database) and also refdata.mdb.
2. From control panel, use Add/Remove programs and remove DXbase completely.
3. Using Windows Explorer, delete the DXbase folder and everything in it.
4. Using Windows Explorer, delete the dxbase.ini file in your Windows folder. This filename will appear in the format of Dxb2007.ini (where 2007 is the version of DXbase). Be sure you delete the correct file.
5. Reboot your machine.
6. Run the setup.exe to install DXbase.
7. After the installation is complete, reboot your machine.

8. Restore your files from step 1 above by copying them with Windows Explorer from the temporary folder you created in step 1 above into your DXbase folder. At the time DXbase is installed, it will create an empty QSO database file called yourcall.mdb and it also installs a file called refdata.mdb. So, when you copy your files back into your DXbase folder, it will ask if you want to overwrite the existing files. You can answer yes.

Please note that if you are performing the reinstall due to some problem you have encountered, it may be due to corruption in yourcall.mdb or in refdata.mdb. You may have to repeat the steps above and leave out the step 8 just to try DXbase using the original files that are installed.

Installing DXbase on a second machine

In some cases, you may wish to install DXbase on a second machine and copy your database files into the second machine. It is a violation of the license agreement to install DXbase on a machine that you do not own.

There are some precautions that you must take for this to be successful:

7. If you intend to copy your label or report/list design project files, do NOT copy the project files ending in the .lbp or .crp file extensions. These files contain printer and video driver configuration information and are specific for the machine on which they were created. They will be automatically created if they are needed on the second machine. If you copy these files to a second machine, your labels and list reports may not appear correctly on the screen or when you print them because the driver information in this file may not be correct for the second machine.
8. When copying your database file, be sure that you copy both your QSO database (this will be the one that you probably named yourcall.mdb) and also, you must copy the refdata.mdb file (this will be in your DXbase folder and it contains the synchronized tables of country prefixes, IOTAs, manager data, etc.... Both files will be needed.
9. If you are copying your database files by way of using a CD, remember that when you copy data from a CD, it will be automatically set to read-only permission. You must use Windows Explorer to locate the files after you copy them to the second machine. Right click on the filename in Windows Explorer and select properties. Remove the read-only check mark. If you fail to do this, you may receive an error message when trying to run DXbase on the second machine that says something like, "The Jet Database cannot open the file xxxx because it is in use by another application.
10. Do NOT attempt to use your DXbase INI file from your Windows folder on the primary machine by copying it to the second machine. The DXbase INI file contains pixel specific screen information and will not work correctly on a different machine. You must set user options on the second machine and allow DXbase to automatically create the screen configuration information on the second machine.
11. Be careful to keep a copy of your .mdb databases stored somewhere in a safe place. This is a precaution because in the haste to copy files back and forth from one machine to another, you may confuse yourself about which .mdb file contains the full QSO database. Unless you have taken steps to insure that you always have a "safe and "complete copy of your full database, your precious data is at risk.
12. Copy [your registration file to the second machine](#) and using Windows Explorer, double click it so that Windows can register your copy of DXbase on the second machine.

Uninstall DXbase

DANGER

CAUTION

BEFORE YOU RUN THE UNINSTALL PROGRAM YOU MUST INSURE THAT YOU HAVE SAFEGUARDED YOUR DATABASE! WHEN YOU UNINSTALL, YOUR DATABASE MAY BE DELETED BY THE UNINSTALL PROCESS.

At the time you install DXbase, information is recorded in your Windows Registry and the Un-install capability is available. Follow the Windows User Guide for Add/Remove programs. DO NOT simply delete the DXbase directory. Use the Un-install program because many of the files installed by DXbase were registered in your Registry. These files must be properly noted as to which applications still require them to remain on your system.

Make sure you have saved a copy of your REFDATA.MDB to a safe place along with your QSO database. The REFDATA.MDB file will be deleted during an uninstall. Therefore, it is critical that you save a copy of this file so that when you restore your databases, the reference data and your QSO data will be in sync. If they are not, you will have problems using the software until you recreate the changes that were lost when the REFDATA.MDB file was removed.

One other precaution to take involves a file called HOSTS that is located in your Windows directory for Win95/98, or, WinSystem32/drivers/etc directory for NT. At the time you installed DXbase, if no such file existed, DXbase would have installed one that contained the default IP address information for various Internet sites. DXbase will remove this file during an un-install. If you wish to keep this file, or if you have made any additions or changes, you will want to either temporarily rename your HOSTS file to some other filename and then rename it back after the uninstall.

After you have taken steps to preserve your database files, use this procedure to uninstall DXbase:

1. From control panel, use add/remove programs and remove DXbase.
2. Using Windows Explorer, delete the DXbase folder for your release version and all files in it.
3. Using Windows Explorer, delete the dxbXXXX.INI file in your Windows folder where XXXX is the version number for the release of DXbase you are using.
4. Reboot your machine.

Upgrade Information

Upgrade Policy

From time to time, Scientific Solutions, Inc., at its option, may offer revisions and improvements to the original software. These “upgrades will be offered to registered users of the original

product. Registered users of the current version of DXbase will be offered special pricing to obtain the upgraded software.

Special pricing will ONLY be offered to registered users of the last version released. This means that if you choose to “skip an upgrade, you will not be entitled to discount pricing when you purchase a license for the new upgrade. Part of the benefit to an upgrade is the right to receive any special pricing that may be offered later for another upgrade. Those who have previously “skipped an upgrade will be offered a later release at full price.

At the time that an upgrade release is made available, all technical support for previous versions is void except for those who are still within the warranty period of the earlier release. This means that if you choose to “skip an upgrade, you lose the benefit of technical support including access to file download area of the Scientific Solutions, Inc. Web site.

During the development of improved features for inclusion in an upgrade release, the database format of a previous release may be changed making old versions of the database incompatible. Scientific Solutions will insure that a database format from each successive release is upward compatible; however, it is likely that if you choose to “skip an upgrade, your previous database format may not be compatible with later releases. In effect, upgrades are stepping blocks that gracefully take you from one level to the next, but they do not accommodate skipping the intermediate steps.

In accordance with the Scientific Solutions, Inc. End User License Agreement, if you purchase an upgrade, you may NOT sell, rent, lease, or otherwise deliver the previous software release to any other person or entity. All previous versions of the software that you may have purchased must remain in your possession as if all upgrade releases are one composite software package.

Notification about Upgrade Availability

The primary method for notification will be through our Web Site. Current information about our products and availability will be posted there. We may also make direct mail outs to registered users some time after availability has been announced on our Web site.

Upgrade from DXbase for DOS

Upgrading from DXbase for DOS v4.5/v4.6

Data from versions 4.5 and 4.6 can be imported into DXbase for Microsoft Windows. There are several steps necessary for this process that are explained in the [Importing DXbase](#) section of this help file. Essentially, you will perform the DOS upgrade from whatever version of DXbase for DOS you have to the DXbase for DOS version 5.0. Then you will use the import/export utility supplied with v5.0 to export your

data to ADIF. Then, in DXbase for Windows, you will use the Non DXbase import utility from the DXbase program group to import the ADIF file.

Upgrading DXbase for DOS versions earlier than v4.5

We only maintain compatibility with the past two releases of our software. For your convenience, we have included a directory on your DXbase CDROM that contains the upgrade software to upgrade from v2.x of DXbase to V3.x. We have also included a directory to upgrade from v3.x to v4.6. Depending on what version of DXbase for DOS you have, you will need to perform these individual upgrades to get your DOS data into the format that DXbase for Microsoft Windows will read.

Upgrading from DXbase for DOS v5.0

Upgrades from this version of DXbase for DOS requires that you use the ADIF export option in the v5 software. From your DXB50 directory, run the IMPORT command and select the Export to ADIF option. This will result in a file with the .ADI extension being created. This file will be the source file that you select when importing into DXbase for Windows. Use the Import utility in DXbase for Microsoft Windows to read in the ADIF file. Do not use DXB Import for this. The ADIF import option is located in the Import utility from the DXbase for Microsoft Windows program group.

Upgrade from DXbase for Windows

The database format in DXbase the current release is different than past versions of DXbase for Windows. Therefore, after installing the current release, you must use the DXB Import utility to import your data from past versions. Refer to the [DXbase import](#) section of this help file for more information.

Reusing label projects from previous versions

You can reuse your own label project files that were created in a previous version of DXbase. A few precautions should be followed:

The label project files that were used in previous versions of DXbase have been retained and used again in the current release of DXbase. However, the version shipped with DXbase is different and some of the formatting has been updated. You should rename any previous label project files before attempting to use them in the current release. Be sure to rename all project filenames that have the same base name. The current release uses a different format for storing your label projects. If you open a label project created with an earlier version of DXbase, you may be notified that when you resave the project under the current release, it will no longer be usable in earlier versions. Copy your label projects into the labels directory under your current DXbase directory **ONLY** after you have renamed them to some name not used by DXbase.

Refer to the [Sharing Label Projects](#) with others section of this help file for more information on renaming your label projects.

Reusing User Designed List Projects from previous versions

In most cases, you will be able to reuse your User Designed List Projects; however, some of the fields from the QSO log have been removed and others have been added. This may cause your report to fail or in severe cases may even cause DXbase to fail. If this occurs, you will need to redesign your report.

1. Rename your User Designed Projects to a unique name. Be sure that you rename all the files with the same base filename.
2. Copy these into your current DXbase directory under the Reports directory.
3. The date fields have been expanded so you may need to modify your field width for dates.

Refer to the [Sharing User Designed Reports](#) Projects with others section of this help file for more information about renaming project files.

Packet Commands

The packet commands that are displayed when you click the CMDS button in the VHF or Internet packet windows are stored in files called VHFCMDS.TXT and INETCMDS.TXT. You can copy these from a previous version of DXbase into your current release of DXbase if you wish to preserve your old version of these commands.